
Access from the University of Nottingham repository:
http://eprints.nottingham.ac.uk/11370/1/391541.pdf

Copyright and reuse:

The Nottingham ePrints service makes this work by researchers of the University of Nottingham available open access under the following conditions.

This article is made available under the University of Nottingham End User licence and may be reused according to the conditions of the licence. For more details see:
http://eprints.nottingham.ac.uk/end_user_agreement.pdf

For more information, please contact eprints@nottingham.ac.uk
"Revelation, Truth, Canon, and Interpretation: Studies in Justin Martyr's Dialogue with Trypho"

By Craig D. Allert

Thesis submitted to the University of Nottingham for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, May 2001
Table of Contents

Table of Contents ii-lv
Abstract v-vi
Abbreviations vii-ix

Introduction 1-40
I. Revelation, Truth, Canon, and Interpretation 2
   A. Revelation 5
   B. Truth 11
   C. Canon 15
      1. Who is the intended audience of the Dialogue? 18
      2. How much importance should be attributed to Marcion in NT canon formation? 21
      3. Did Justin employ a harmony? 23
      4. Is the singular/plural of εὐαγγέλιον significant? 23
      5. Does Justin reverse the trend of placing Apostolic Writings on par with the prophets? 25
   D. Interpretation 28
II. The Life of Justin 31
   A. Justin's Autobiography 32
      1. Birth 32
      2. Life 32
   B. Justin's Biography 33
      1. Birth 33
      2. Life 33
      3. Death 34
III. The Writings of Justin 36
IV. The Dialogue with Trypho 37
   A. Date 37
   B. Text 39

Chapter 1: The Concept of Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho 41-107
I. Introduction 41
II. Background—Epistemology 45
   A. Platonic Epistemology 46
      1. "Becoming" 48
      2. "Being" 50
      3. Plato's Allegory of the Cave 51
   B. Justin's Platonic Epistemology 53
   C. Toward a Christian Epistemology 55
   D. Concluding Remarks on Epistemology 57
III. Background—Theology Proper 58
   A. Common Staring Point? 58
      1. Justin's Concept of God 60
         a. Pre-Conversion 60
         b. Post-Conversion 61
      2. Trypho's Judaism 66
Chapter 2: The Concept of Truth in *Dialogue With Trypho*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Truth in its Second Century Context</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Truth in Hebrew Thought</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Truth in Platonic Thought</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The Divided Line</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Simile of the Sun</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Platonic Truth</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Truth in New Testament Thought</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Dialogue as a Search for Truth</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Ancient Near Eastern Dialogues</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Pre-Socratic and Socratic Dialogues</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Platonic Dialogues</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Justin's <em>Dialogue</em> and the Genre of Dialogue</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Similarity to Platonic Dialogue</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Divergence From Platonic Dialogue</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Philosophy as a Search for Truth</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Justin's Post-Conversion View of Philosophy</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Ethical Behavior</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Diversification of Philosophy</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Primordial Philosophy</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Primordial Philosophy in Justin Martyr</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. The Writings of Moses (Prophets)</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. <em>Logos</em></td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. καταπέμπω</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Justin's Pre-Conversion View of Philosophy</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. The Spirit</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Justin's Presentation of Truth</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. The Argument from Prophecy</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The Prophets and Jesus</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Argument Proper</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Interpretation of Events and Truth</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Jesus as the New Covenant or Law</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The Problem of the Old Law</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Old Law Inadequate in Motive</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Old Law Inadequate in Content</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Old Law Inadequate in Effect</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Necessity of a New Law</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Supremacy of the New Law</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Abstract

Revelation, Truth, Canon, and Interpretation are four fundamental issues in pre-Nicene Christianity. This dissertation seeks to examine these in Justin Martyr's Dialogue with Trypho.

The INTRODUCTION indicates the impetus for this investigation and reviews the pertinent secondary sources and their contributions to these issues. A review of Justin's life and his extant writings is also included.

CHAPTER ONE examines Justin's concept of Revelation. Justin's conversion to Christianity is placed in the context of his Middle Platonism. From this context we learn that, as a philosopher, Justin's primary goal was knowledge of God. The case Justin builds throughout the Dialogue is that the true philosophy, the incarnate Logos, is witnessed to only in the Prophets and the Apostles. The incarnate Logos is seen as the culmination in God's plan for salvation and is thus revelation.

CHAPTER TWO examines Justin's concept of truth. From the genre that Justin chose and his understanding of the attainment of truth as the goal of a philosopher, we see that Justin saw truth as located in the Logos. Justin is differentiated from the Hebrew and the Platonic concepts of truth and continues the line of argument established in the NT writers. Truth is fulfilled and found in Jesus Christ, through his pre-existence and his incarnation.

CHAPTER THREE examines Justin's concept of canon. Justin did not conceive of a closed collection of Christian writings. While his references to Memoirs are important, they should not be seen as implying a closed collection of Christian writings. Concerns about this belong to an age later than Justin's.

CHAPTER FOUR highlights the foundations upon which Justin interpreted the Hebrew scriptures. The determining factor here is the new Covenant which was
Christ himself. Because of Christ, the old Law has become obsolete and a new Law has replaced it. This is why the Jew and the Christian can use the same scripture yet end up with differing interpretations.

APPENDIX ONE is a listing of Gospel quotations and allusions in the Dialogue.

APPENDIX TWO is a review of the issue of the primary audience of the Dialogue. Here arguments are offered for an audience that is primarily Jewish.
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acad. Pr.</strong></td>
<td>Cicero, <em>Academica Priora</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ABD</strong></td>
<td>Anchor Bible Dictionary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AnBib</strong></td>
<td>Analecta biblica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Apol.</strong></td>
<td>Justin Martyr, <em>First Apology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Apol.</strong></td>
<td>Justin Martyr, <em>Second Apology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BHT</strong></td>
<td>Beiträge zur historischen Theologie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BBR</strong></td>
<td>Bulletin for Biblical Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BETS</strong></td>
<td>Bulletin of the Evangelical Theological Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BJRL</strong></td>
<td>Bulletin of the John Rylands University Library of Manchester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CH</strong></td>
<td>Church History</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CQ</strong></td>
<td><em>The Classical Quarterly</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CQR</strong></td>
<td>Church Quarterly Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CRINT</strong></td>
<td>Compendia rerum iudaicarum ad novum testamentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C. Cels.</strong></td>
<td>Origen, <em>Against Celsus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>de E. ap Delph.</strong></td>
<td>Plutarch, <em>On the E at Delphi</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De fin.</strong></td>
<td>Cicero, <em>De finibus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De Is. Et Osir.</strong></td>
<td>Plutarch, <em>On Isis and Osiris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De mut. nom.</strong></td>
<td>Philo of Alexandria, <em>On the Change of Names (De Mutatione Nominum)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De Platone</strong></td>
<td>Apuleius of Madaura, <em>De Platone et eius Dogmate</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De post. Caini</strong></td>
<td>Philo of Alexandria, <em>On the Posternity of Cain (De Posteritate Caini)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De Sacrif.</strong></td>
<td>Philo of Alexandria, <em>On the Sacrifices of Abel and Cain (De Sacrificiis Abeli et Caeni)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De Somn.</strong></td>
<td>Philo of Alexandria, <em>On Dreams (De Somniiis)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>De soph. el.</strong></td>
<td>Aristotle, <em>De sophisticis elenchis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decr.</strong></td>
<td>Athanasius of Alexandria, <em>On the Decrees of the Synod of Nicaea</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dem.</strong></td>
<td>Irenaeus of Lyons, <em>Proof of the Apostolic Preaching</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dial.</strong></td>
<td>Justin Martyr, <em>Dialogue with Trypho</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Didask.</strong></td>
<td>Albinus, <em>Didaskalikos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DJD</strong></td>
<td>Discoveries in the Judean Desert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DR</strong></td>
<td>Downside Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ECQ</strong></td>
<td><em>The Eastern Churches Quarterly</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Encount</strong></td>
<td>Encounter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Epitome</strong></td>
<td>Albinus, <em>Epitome of the teachings of Plato</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ep. ad Algasiam</strong></td>
<td>Jerome, <em>Epistle to Algasiam</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ep. ad Carpiianum</strong></td>
<td>Eusebius of Caesarea, <em>Epistle to Carpiianum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ep. Afr.</strong></td>
<td>Athanasius of Alexandria, <em>Epistle to the Bishops of Africa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ep. Fest.</strong></td>
<td>Athanasius of Alexandria, <em>Festal Epistles</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ET</strong></td>
<td>English Translation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EvQ</strong></td>
<td>Evangelical Quarterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FS</strong></td>
<td>Festschrift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Frag. Origen</strong></td>
<td>Theophilus of Alexandria, <em>Fragment from the Epistle Against Origen</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gent.</strong></td>
<td>Athanasius of Alexandria, <em>Against the Heathen (Contra</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Gorg.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Gorgias</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Haer.</em></td>
<td>Irenaeus of Lyons, <em>Against Heresies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Hom.</em></td>
<td>John Chrysostom, <em>Homilies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>HTR</em></td>
<td><em>Harvard Theological Review</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>HTS</em></td>
<td><em>Harvard Theological Studies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>H.e.</em></td>
<td>Eusebius of Caesarea, <em>Ecclesiastical History</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Inc.</em></td>
<td>Athanasius of Alexandria, <em>On the Incarnation of the Word</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Int</em></td>
<td><em>Interpretation</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Joh.</em></td>
<td>Origen of Alexandria, <em>Commentary on the Gospel of John</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>JBL</em></td>
<td><em>Journal of Biblical Literature</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>J Early Chr St</em></td>
<td><em>Journal of Early Christian Studies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>JR</em></td>
<td><em>Journal of Religion</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>JQR</em></td>
<td><em>Jewish Quarterly Review</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>JTS</em></td>
<td><em>Journal of Theological Studies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>LCL</em></td>
<td><em>Loeb Classical Library</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>LXX</em></td>
<td>Septuagint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>MT</em></td>
<td><em>Massoretic Text</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>MGWJ</em></td>
<td><em>Monatsschrift für Geschichte und Wissenschaft des Judentums</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Myst.</em></td>
<td>Pseudo-Dionysius, <em>The Mystical Theology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ns</em></td>
<td>new series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>NTS</em></td>
<td><em>New Testament Studies</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>NovT</em></td>
<td><em>Novum Testamentum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>NovTSup</em></td>
<td><em>Novum Testamentum, Supplements</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Or.</em></td>
<td>Tatian, <em>Orations to the Greeks</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Or.</em></td>
<td>Maximus of Tyre, <em>Oration</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Paed.</em></td>
<td><em>Clement of Alexandria, Tutor (Paedagogus)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Parm.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Parmenides</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phaed.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Phaedo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phaedr.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Phaedrus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Phil.</em></td>
<td>Ignatius of Antioch, <em>Epistle to the Philadelphians</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>P.e.</em></td>
<td>Eusebius of Caesarea, <em>Preparation for the Gospel (Praeparatio evangelica)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Praescrip.</em></td>
<td>Tertullian of Carthage, <em>Prescription of Heretics</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Prax.</em></td>
<td>Tertullian of Carthage, <em>Against Praxeas</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Rep.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Republic</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>RestQ</em></td>
<td><em>Restoration Quarterly</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>RevExp</em></td>
<td><em>Review and Expositor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SJT</em></td>
<td><em>Scottish Journal of Theology</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SecCent</em></td>
<td><em>The Second Century</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SBLDS</em></td>
<td>Society of Biblical Literature Dissertation Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SNTSMS</em></td>
<td>Society for New Testament Studies Monograph Series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>SPCK</em></td>
<td>Society for the Promotion of Christian Knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Soph.</em></td>
<td>Plato, <em>Sophist</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Str.</em></td>
<td><em>Clement of Alexandria, Stromata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>StudEv</em></td>
<td><em>Studia Evangelica</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>St Miss</em></td>
<td><em>Studia Missionaria</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Abbreviation Expansion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StudPat</td>
<td>Studia Patristica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST</td>
<td>Studia theologica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symp.</td>
<td>Methodius of Olympus, Symposium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theaet.</td>
<td>Plato, Theaetetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>Theological Studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Texte und Untersuchungen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim.</td>
<td>Plato, Timaeus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VC</td>
<td>Vigiliae christianae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virg.vel.</td>
<td>Tertullian, On the Veiling of Virgins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WTJ</td>
<td>Westminster Theological Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZKG</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für Kirchengeschichte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZNW</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für die neutestamentliche Wissenschaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZWT</td>
<td>Zeitschrift für wissenschaftliche Theologie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

It is not uncommon to hear Justin Martyr referred to as the most important of all the second century Apologists.¹ A main reason for this judgment may be the sheer volume of Justin’s extant writings as compared to other second century writers. But volume of writings without substance would be little reason for such a judgment, and to judge Justin’s writings as being without substance would be to misjudge them.

In Justin we have a man who sought to commend Christianity as the only true and pure philosophy to the contemporary Greek mind.² This is clearly exemplified in Justin’s Apologies. In the Apologies, Justin attempts to answer those misconceptions about Christianity that were floating around the popular understanding of the movement.³ Yet in the midst of this defense, Justin also presents the gospel in a way that, in his mind, would commend itself to this Greek mind.

But Greek philosophy, as influential as it was, was not the only mode of thought to which Justin sought to communicate the uniqueness and utter importance

---

² The contemporary Greek mind of which I speak here is explained in more detail on pp. 45-74; 108-118; 125-145.
³ By their refusal to worship state deities Christians were accused of being atheists. Their gatherings for worship, instruction and participation in the eucharist were being construed as gatherings for incest, child murder and cannibalism. See L. W. Barnard, Justin Martyr: His Life and Thought (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1967) 2-4; H. Chadwick, “Justin Martyr’s Defense of Christianity,” BJRL 47 (1965) 279. Justin himself alludes to these popular misconceptions in Dial. 10.1. Trypho agrees that they are, indeed, misconceptions.
Introduction

of Christ. The Jewish mind, out of which Christianity grew, also garnered the attention of Justin in his writings. This is exemplified in his *Dialogue with Trypho*.4 Granted, the Jew to whom Trypho directed the *Dialogue* was a Hellenistic Jew, meaning he was influenced by the Greek thought of the second century. Justin's desire was to communicate to the Jew the centrality of Jesus in the economy of God.

Just as every individual, Justin is a child of his times. He was influenced by his culture and made decisions, both consciously and unconsciously, from within that culture. The *Dialogue with Trypho* was written from within an era that was influenced, on the one hand, by the prevailing Greek philosophic thought of the day. This mode of thought is seen in the *Dialogue* as influencing not only Justin, the author, but also Trypho and his Jewish companions. Yet, on the other hand, as a Christian Justin was also influenced by Jewish scripture. This is fundamentally seen in his desire to remain faithful to the Jewish scriptures interpreted through the event of Jesus Christ. Thus, we see a situation in the *Dialogue* which is unique to it when compared with Justin's *Apologies*.

I. Revelation, Truth, Canon, and Interpretation

The purpose of this introduction is five-fold. First, I will briefly explain the foundation upon which this thesis rests and the rationale for its title. Second, past works on Justin Martyr and their contributions to the study at hand will be examined. Third, a biography of Justin will be provided in order to place him in his proper context. Fourth, Justin's extant writings will be reviewed. And finally, *The Dialogue with Trypho* will be introduced as it fits into this corpus of writings.

Justin Martyr is a Christian. As a Christian, he was seeking to make the message of Christ applicable to all of humanity—both Jew and Greek. Justin's extant

4 I am fully aware of the discussion concerning the intended recipients of the *Dialogue*. My position is that the primary recipients are neither primarily Christians, nor pagans, but Jews. A summary
Introduction

A corpus of writings reveals this by their very existence, written as they are to the Greek and to the Jew. I have chosen herein to focus on Justin's communication of the gospel message to the Hellenistic Jew. And it is from within this context that an introductory explanation of the title of this dissertation is necessary.

Christianity is based on a person. "But to me the charters are Jesus Christ, the inviolable charter is his cross, and death, and resurrection, and the faith which is through Him." Ignatius of Antioch states well the understanding that must accompany any study of Christian theology in the patristic age. Difficulties with this foundational understanding begin to appear, however, when Christianity is described as a "Religion of the Book." This designation, while not altogether inaccurate, tends to "cook the books" in favor of a position with which Justin, and other Fathers, may not be entirely comfortable. That position centers on the relationship between Jesus Christ, revelation, and canon.

Here is where the impetus for this dissertation stems. Justin resides in his thinking with the Greek Fathers who "did not lose sight of the fundamental point that Christianity is the religion not of a book but of a Person, that the Bible has its unique and irreplaceable authority in the Church because the prophets and apostles bear witness to him."

What follows in this dissertation stems from that foundational concept and grows to form what may be called the four pillars of the development of Christian

discussion of the intended audience is presented in Appendix II.

3 Chadwick, "The Bible and the Greek Fathers," in D. E. Nineham (ed.), The Church's Use of the Bible (London: SPCK, 1963), 39. This, of course, must be understood in the context that Justin did not know of a closed New Testament canon. Thus, when we speak of a Justin in this regard we must understand his relationship with Christian writings that were later to be part of the NT canon. See Chapter 3.
theology in the patristic age. Everything stems from the revelation of Jesus Christ as truth. "The supreme end to which Christian theology is directed is to the full intellectual expression of the truth which was manifested to men, once and for all, in the person and life of Jesus Christ." Thus, the revelation of truth was manifest in Jesus Christ. At first, traditions and teachings about Jesus Christ were spread orally—through the kerygma. But as time and distance separated that revelation a more reliable form of teaching became necessary—written documents. But even this more reliable form of teaching is subject to differing interpretations.

Thus, we may at once see the relationship and the tension that is present within these four concepts of Revelation, Truth, Canon, and Interpretation. If Jesus is revelation and the embodiment of truth, how did the early church regard the writings about Jesus? Further, what norms were in place to ensure a unified understanding or interpretation of these writings? Justin Martyr provides a good case study of these issues.

These concepts represent and exemplify something that is fundamentally essential to the faith known as Christianity. It is certainly not my intention to force this schematic upon the conscious thought of any writer in patristic Christianity. It is, however, my intention to show what Justin Martyr's understanding of these concepts
was. In so doing, it is my desire to show how Justin contributed to the development of Christian theology in the second century.

A. Revelation

By investigating a particular writer's concept of revelation one is really asking some pertinent foundational questions. In order to understand revelation, therefore, it is important to understand who is doing the revealing. The concept of revelation also requires an understanding of the very nature of revelation—what is it? When these questions are answered we are then in a position to examine where a writer presents this revelation as being available. Thus, revelation is a foundational concept because it is here that a basic understanding of a writer's concepts of God, epistemology and the message are found.

Surprisingly little has been said about Justin Martyr's concept of revelation in Justinforshung. This is not to say that a concept of revelation has been ignored. In fact, the very opposite is true—most commentators on Justin Martyr simply assume a certain concept of revelation with no meaningful discussion concerning how Justin came to this concept of revelation or even what it is, i.e. its relationship to epistemology. For example, Goodenough makes the blanket statement in reference to Justin that "not by the efforts of man's own reason, but through revelation... is the truth to be had by men." The type of assumption is also made by Shotwell who claims that Justin "had no need to state a concept of revelation, for both he and his opponents [in the Dialogue] used the Old Testament as the basis of their

Council of Nicaea was to combat Arianism using purely scriptural terms. But this was precisely where the problem lay—with the interpretation of scriptural terms. See Athanasius, Ep. Afr. and Decr.

13 J. C. M. van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher. Justin Martyr's Dialogue with Trypho Chapters One to Nine (Philosophia Patrum 1; Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1971) 1. "The works of Justin have already been the object of intensive study. The list of books and articles is so great that one rightly speaks of a Justinforshung."

discussion. Shotwell does maintain that revelation for Justin was two-fold in nature (the Logos and the Prophets), but this assertion gets lost in the unexplained claim that Justin has a verbal theory of inspiration. While Goodenough makes no such claim to verbal inspiration for Justin, both he and Shotwell assume a concept of revelation without really explaining what it is.

A detailed examination of Justin Martyr's concept of revelation has, in fact, been a neglected aspect of the study of his theology. But herein it will be shown that Justin's concept of revelation is the result of his conversion from Middle Platonism to Christianity. The prologue to the Dialogue with Trypho (Chaps. 1-9) is important in this regard. Two monographs have appeared in the last 40 years that have examined this section of the Dialogue in great detail. Van Winden claims that he and Hyldahl are in basic agreement in their examination of the text, but thinks that Hyldahl is overly influenced by theological presuppositions. This being the case, van Winden offers a philological investigation of the prologue, in addition to an inquiry into Justin's philosophical ideas and their internal cohesion. Both commentators have contributed much to the understanding of the prologue to the Dialogue. However, the relationship between it and revelation has been overlooked. Both do recognize the fact that the aim of the prologue is to bring philosophy to the fore, but the relationship of

---

20 Hyldahl is intent on minimizing the influence of Platonism on Justin before his conversion because of his underlying assumption that the prologue is literary fiction. This is based on the fact that the Dialogue was written some 15 to 20 years after the initial conversation with Trypho. Hyldahl sees the prologue as an idealized conversion story of Justin, not necessarily grounded in fact. Thus Hyldahl claims that Justin is refuting the philosophers of his time through this prologue. But van Winden claims that Justin is refuting nothing here, but rather, he is claiming that most philosophers are not concerned with the proper task of philosophy.
philosophy to the epistemological question and to Justin’s concept of revelation is not addressed.

The fact that van Winden fails to address the epistemological significance of revelation is puzzling in light of some of his findings. He states, "The problem of God had, indeed, a central place in the Middle Platonic philosophy, the most important system in Justin’s day. God, the ideas which are his thoughts, and the human soul in kinship with Him are precisely the main problems of this philosophy." If this is so, it appears to me that the connection between Justin’s concept of philosophy as a search for God and his concept of revelation needs to be examined. Both van Winden and Hyldahl overlook this important aspect of Justin’s thought.

This is not to say that Justin’s connection to the Middle Platonic philosophy of Justin’s day has not been examined. There has been little doubt among Justin commentators that Justin was influenced by the Platonism of his day. "There seems to be no mystery about where Justin derived his ideal of philosophy that was so important to him and prominent in his writings. He was a Platonist and these were Platonic ideas." The various opinions concerning Justin’s Platonism can be grouped under one of three categories: total assimilation, total rejection, or assimilation with a critical reserve. Those who put forth the total assimilation view aim to show

---

21 van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 23.
25 See e.g., H. Dörrie, Platonica minora (München, 1976); Hyldahl, Philosophie und Christentum; van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher.
that Justin's attempt to preach the message of Jesus Christ resulted in a disintegration of the Christian message into existing Greek philosophical categories of thought. In reaction to this there arose the total rejection theory. The proponents of this view claimed that Christianity and Platonism were incapable of dialogue or assimilation because they were diametrically opposed to one another. Most recently, however, a mediating position has largely won the day. This being that the most likely description of Justin's post-conversion Platonism is that of partial assimilation. In this position it is stated that certain Platonic categories of thought were adopted as theological tools that did not override the pure Christian message. The Platonism of which this position speaks, however, is that of Middle Platonism. In fact, Goodenough has been credited with being the first commentator on Justin who recognized that the Platonism of the Middle Platonic period was an eclectic blend of Platonism, Aristotelianism, and Stoicism.27

The influence of Middle Platonism on Justin should not be overlooked. But Goodenough appears to do just this when he claims that Justin says very little about the world of Ideas, except to say that he had been thrilled by the contemplation of them (Dial. 2.6).28 Goodenough claims that they appear to have played no essential part in his system and that he is puzzled about why Justin would be confused on where to find truth after his conversation with the old man.29 Surely Goodenough misses the point here. I contend that Justin makes a great deal out of the Platonic Ideas. In fact, the entire prologue hinges on the differences between the Platonic theory of epistemology, which is represented by Justin the Platonist, and what may be

---

27 This thesis was significantly carried forward by C. Andresen, "Justin und der mittlere Platonismus".
considered as a Christian theory of epistemology, which is represented by the old man.

For Justin epistemology centers on the question of how one may know God. And this is the very point of the prologue. While this is recognized by many commentators, they fail to make a connection between it and revelation, which is the connection that Justin himself (through the old man) wishes to make. Osborn comes closest to recognizing the significance of this connection. He explains that in the prologue Justin is, in fact, relating a theory of knowledge. Thus, Christianity is recognized by Justin to be the only sure philosophy because through it one may receive knowledge of God. But again, Osborn falls short in explicitly relating this to a concept of revelation in Justin.

Writings about Justin's theology are replete with the assertion that the Logos is God's revelation to humanity. But Justin also places a great deal of emphasis on the writings of the Prophets and the Memoirs of the Apostles. Are these revelation as well? Much discussion has surrounded the Prophets and Memoirs, but there has been a lack of attention to this simple question.

Van Winden claims that writers on Justin Martyr generally fall into two groups: theologians and philologists, and their specialized points of approach are a constant threat to a correct understanding of the text. Thus, theologians usually start from an actual theological problem, rather than from within his historical context.

On the other hand, philologists tend to place Justin in the shadow of the classical era

---

27 Dial. 7.
31 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 66-73.
33 Van Winden specifically mentions the problem of the relationship between Christianity and philosophy. In this case he states that this approach causes theologians (usually Lutherans) to blame
and see him simply as a second rate author and a plagiarist. Perhaps van Winden would object on these grounds that the approach I take herein distorts the true picture of Justin. But the attempt has been made to approach the Dialogue with Trypho from an historical perspective that is sensitive to both approaches while avoiding the pitfalls of each. This, in fact, is what van Winden himself attempts to accomplish.

In this light, I would assert that Justin’s prologue must be taken seriously. It is an attempt, whether literary fiction or factual event, to espouse a certain theory of knowledge. It has a logical sequence that posits philosophy as a search for God based on an understanding of a progression from a Middle Platonic epistemology to a Christian epistemology. Thus, Justin’s epistemology informs us as to his concept of revelation.

In Chapter One of this dissertation I ask how Justin’s Middle Platonism affected his concept of epistemology, that is, how does one know God or how does God reveal himself? This is important background in understanding why he chose Christian revelation over Middle Platonic. It is concluded that Justin has two witnesses to revelation, or two places where the ultimate revelation of the Logos is predicted (the Prophets) experienced (the Apostles). It is, however, ultimately in the incarnate Logos that revelation resides. Piper claims that the Memoirs are valuable merely for historical data about the life of Christ. But on the basis of my examination of the Dialogue I claim in Chapter One that the Memoirs must in fact be considered a witness to the Logos, and thus a witness to revelation. This aspect of

Justin for an alliance between philosophy and faith and distort a balanced historical approach to the text (pp. 1-2).


Justin’s theology seems to have been missed by most, if not all, commentators on Justin Martyr.

B. Truth

Investigation into the concept of truth is the logical step taken after an understanding of revelation simply because truth is based upon revelation. The message of truth is fundamentally related to revelation because the message of truth is that which is revealed. Understanding what that message of truth entails is the ultimate goal of investigation into the concept of truth.

The above statement may seem obvious. But the situation with Justin Martyr needs some clarification at the point of where his Middle Platonism comes into contact with his Christianity. Justin Martyr’s connection to Middle Platonism has been seen as influential upon his theology. His theology is the result of revelation, in other words, he believes it to be truth. This being the case, it is surprising to see commentators neglecting the Justin’s pre-conversion concept of truth. As it was with the study of Justin in relation to his concept of revelation, so it is with Justin’s concept of truth—it is simply assumed by most.

Barnard’s investigation into Justin’s concept of truth can be summed up in the undeveloped statement, “Only by revelation can we find truth—and this revelation is enshrined in the teaching of the Prophets and Jesus Christ.”36 When this statement is placed into the context of second century Greek thought37 it becomes a powerful argument against those who would argue that Justin was unduly influenced by Middle Platonic philosophy. But Barnard fails to do this and his statement lacks the significance it should truly have.

36 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 80. Also, “Christianity was, for him, truth itself and this he served with unswerving devotion and courage” (p. 169).
37 As I do below on pp. 108-123.
Similarly, Osborn has failed to do justice to the concept of truth in Justin. He recognizes the fact that Justin believed that truth can only be directly known. And that it is not an abstract thing but a loving person. Osborn has two chapters devoted to the theme of truth which do a fine job of multiplying references in Justin to his love of truth as argument and truth being the best argument, but they never really explain the OT, NT, and Hellenistic concepts of truth in relation to Justin Martyr.

In Chapter Two I argue that it is entirely necessary to relate the differing concepts of truth that were prevalent in Justin's day. Certainly, this is not a new thing. It is, however, attended to in relation to Justin Martyr only sporadically. Thus, Piper recognizes the important distinction between Plato and Christianity. In Plato no historical fact can be interpreted as the manifestation of truth. Plato is dominated by the ontic contrast between Idea and historical event. This is a very important statement because it illustrates the extreme difference between the manifestation of truth (Christian) and Being as truth (Plato).

Richard Norris's valuable book entitled *God and World in Early Christianity* includes a section on Justin. But its limited scope (in connection with the topic at issue here) still leaves the important connection untouched. Norris's first chapter does an excellent job of explaining the importance of Plato's doctrine of Forms and Middle Platonism. This informs his treatment of Justin in relation to his concept of God and world. But it is certainly asking more of this work to relate the issue to Justin's concept of truth.

---

38 Osborn, *Justin Martyr*, 70; 80.
39 Chapter 5, "The Knowledge of Truth" (pp. 66-76); Chapter 6, "The Love of Truth" (pp. 77-86).
41 J. Zizioulas recognizes the importance of this distinction in *Being as Communion: Studies in Personhood and the Church* (Crestwood, NY: St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, 1997 [1985]) 67-122. I summarize the importance of Zizioulas for this study below, pp. 115-118.
42 "Greek and Hellenistic Cosmology," pp. 8-32.
Story, in the promising monograph, *The Nature of Truth in the "Gospel of Truth" and in the Writings of Justin Martyr*, offers a similar, if not longer, explanation.\(^3\) Ostensibly the book is a comparison between two mid-second century authors concerning their concepts of truth. While we are not concerned here with the Gospel of Truth, the work does give us a good picture Justin’s concept of truth in the Dialogue. He thus makes the important statement that truth is manifested in the realm of divinely ordered events.\(^4\) But, unlike Barnard, Story recognizes some of the necessary background to properly understand this statement. Accordingly, in a very important part of his monograph, he discusses the idea of truth in the OT, the Intertestamental period, and in the NT.\(^5\) Contained in the section on the NT concept of truth, Story contrasts it to the Greek concept to conclude that “Whereas Plato viewed truth as the dialectical process leading from real existence to the ideal, Paul understood truth to be the historical process leading from the provisional event (God the redeemer of his people Israel) to the final consummation (Christ the redeemer of the world).”\(^6\) Later Story correctly transfers the Pauline understanding to Justin. He continues, however, to claim that as both a Christian and a philosopher, Justin attempts to do justice to both the NT (Pauline) conception and the Greek conception. He thus claims that by expressing truth in a static or propositional format, Justin is trying to do justice to the Greek concept of truth.\(^7\) This is a puzzling statement. Simply because Justin expressed truth in propositions does not mean that he is trying to justice to the Greek concept of truth. Story himself has expressed the fact that Plato had no room for truth as a historical manifestation. This simple fact should indicate that, by claiming that truth is manifested in Jesus Christ, Justin has radically altered

---

\(^3\) Story, *The Nature of Truth in "The Gospel of Truth" and in the Writings of Justin Martyr*. 
his previously held Middle Platonic conception. This is pivotal, and it is something which Story fails to recognize. Thus, this promising and very informative monograph somehow falls short in placing Justin’s concept of truth in its proper second century context.

The present dissertation thus makes the important distinctions between the OT, NT, and Hellenistic concepts of truth. This is nothing new. However, in relating these conceptions to Justin with the result that Justin’s conception of truth as a manifestation radically altered his Middle Platonism is something that has been missing from other treatments of Justin. Justin simply could not have remained a Middle Platonist and accepted the manifestation of truth in the person of Jesus Christ.

Further, the dialogue genre that Justin chose to express the truth he found in revelation is important. Hirzel makes the claim that Justin wrote the Dialogue with Trypho in an unsuccessful attempt to imitate Plato’s Phaedrus. But he does not pursue the issue with any great fervor. The only commentator to pursue this aspect of the Dialogue with Trypho in any depth is Sarah Denning-Bolle. While Denning-Bolle’s purpose was not to relate the genre of dialogue to Justin’s concept of truth, it actually dovetails with that very issue.

Denning-Bolle briefly traces the history of the dialogue genre through the Ancient Near East and then moves right into the Platonic dialogues. She concludes that Justin’s dialogue and Plato’s dialogues display some astonishing similarities. But they also reveal some important differences. She concludes that in the hands of Justin the dialogue becomes a tool for apologetic. With this conclusion I cannot

---

disagree. But, as I shall point out in the second chapter, Denning-Bolle does not explain the significance of pre-Socratic and Socratic dialogues in her brief history of the dialogue genre. If this is done one may see that the dialogue genre was instigated as a way to search for truth. But Justin goes beyond the normal purpose of the dialogue genre because he believes he has actually found truth. So, Justin actually uses the Platonic dialogue genre to eventually discredit Middle Platonic doctrine. This is something that has not been addressed in Justinforschung but which is seen as an important underlying raison d'être in choosing the dialogue genre. In other words, by choosing the dialogue genre, Justin was claiming to say something about truth.

C. Canon

Understood as “rule” or “standard,” this concept is perhaps more of a modern preoccupation which is deemed necessary in light of the development of the NT canon of writings.52 The pivotal point here is discerning a particular author’s views of documents of the era that are becoming more and more useful to Christian churches. The wider context of the development of the NT canon must be kept in view here, for if the canon of NT writings was not fully developed at the time of Justin Martyr’s contribution to theology, it is anachronistic to think of him as conceiving of a written canon. This is important because, in the absence of a defined collection of Christian writings, there must be some standard to which that particular author turned for direction.

52 I mean here that in looking back at Justin with our written canon in hand, we tend to force questions about canon directly in the category of writings. This neglects the important aspect of Rule of Faith. The Greek term kanon originally meant “reed”. Especially a reed as a tool for measurement or alignment, and therefore acquired the basic sense of “straight rod”. From this literal sense there arose a metaphorical sense where it came to mean a “norm” or “ideal” or “standard” a firm criterion against which something could be evaluated or judged. In this broad sense, the word was used in a variety of contexts including art, music literature, ethics, Law, and philosophy. Early Christians first took up the word in the sense of a “norm” but not in connection with written materials, but rather with the Rule of faith. We find the substantive first applied to the Sacred Scriptures in the fourth century by Athanasius of Alexandria. See B. M. Metzger, The Canon of the New Testament: Its Origin, Development, and Significance (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1987) 289-293.
Justin's references to the ἀπομνημονεύματα (τῶν ἀποστόλων) and their relationship to the developing NT canon have long been a lively topic of research, as witnessed by the plethora of books and articles, whether in whole or in part, which are devoted to that topic.53 In the present study I am not purporting to add new research to this somewhat crowded field. Rather, I am dependent upon many of the works

---

mentioned above to provide a foundation upon which I build an argument regarding Justin's relationship to the state of the developing NT canon.

Central to Justin's relationship to the developing NT Canon is his use of the term έυαγγελιον. The scholarly consensus concerning Justin's references to the έυαγγελιον is that he is indeed referring to a written document. Further, the Memoirs of the Apostles are probably synonymous with this designation. Recently, however, this assertion has been challenged by C. H. Cosgrove who believes that Justin is actually reluctant to call any writing έυαγγελιον.

According to Cosgrove, this reluctance can be seen in the predominance of the term "Memoirs" over against the use of the term "gospels". He states that it is inconclusive to what gospel (if any) Justin refers in Dial. 100. Further, Cosgrove believes that this statement should be understood in light of the preceding statement of 10.2 where Trypho speaks of the precepts that are written in the "so-called gospel". This suggests, to him, a certain reticence on the part of Justin to apply έυαγγελιον to any writing.

The position advocated by Cosgrove is subtly arrived at through an investigation of some particularly salient points. At the outset, Cosgrove states the position that he will defend,

This general consensus that Justin regards certain apostolic writings as Scripture or 'almost Scripture' must be given up in light of what will be shown to be the probable purpose and audience of the Dialogue with Trypho, the primary document upon which judgments concerning Justin's 'canon' are based. It will be argued that not only are the apostolic writings not esteemed as

---

54 Dial. 10.2; 51.2; 100.1; 136.3; I Apol. 66.3.
57 This is a reasonable argument, but the fact remains that these are Trypho's words in 10.2, not Justin's.
Scripture by Justin, but that he is in fact moving in an opposite direction from regarding them as such. Indeed, Justin represents a reversal of the trend of the church in the second-century toward regarding apostolic writings as canon.  

Evaluation of Cosgrove's position is best done under five main headings. I believe that the weakness of his position is seen in every point thus leading to a faulty foundation and conclusion to the issue of whether Justin actually calls the Memoirs "Gospels." In the form of questions, the five main headings are: 1) Who is the intended audience of the Dialogue?; 2) How much importance should be attributed to Marcion in NT canon formation?; 3) Did Justin employ a harmony?; 4) Is the use of the singular/plural of εὐαγγέλιαν significant?; 5) Does Justin reverse the trend of placing apostolic writings on par with the Prophets? 

1. **Who is the intended audience of the Dialogue?**

   In pursuing the proof of his position Cosgrove opens the discussion with a section entitled, "The Legitimacy of Joining the Canon Question with Respect to Justin". The issue of the intended audience of the Dialogue is examined in considerable detail. This is so because for Cosgrove the intended audience will reveal whether Justin intended to address the issue of canon in the document. In this respect, it is often assumed that because the Dialogue with Trypho was written to non-Christians, we should not expect Justin to address the internal issue of canon. On the other hand, if it can be shown that the Dialogue was, in fact, written to and for Christians, then we should expect the issue of canon to be present in the document. 

   Thus, according to Cosgrove, the implications of a non-Christian destination of the Dialogue are: 1) Statements about canon gain more weight by virtue of the fact that the global context militates against their introduction; 2) Absence of statements regarding canon are not an argument against the importance of the concept for the

---

author. We simply do not know his views on the matter. But, if the Dialogue is written to Christians, different implications result: 1) Statements regarding the author's conception of the canon tend to reflect more accurately his own opinions on the subject; 2) Absence of reference to the question of canon, where it would be expected in light of the audience, does suggest something about the author's thinking on the topic.

At this point Cosgrove goes into the necessary examination of the destination of the Dialogue. He summarizes the history of the discussion well and argues for a strictly Christian audience. Thus, because of his understanding that issues of canon will be addressed in a writing to Christians, Cosgrove believes he has good reason to proceed to the second part of the article entitled, "Justin's Canon". He states, "The results of the foregoing suggest that Justin writes for Christians, and we may expect that he does so with the special problem of canon at least to some extent in mind."

Cosgrove admits that his argument depends fundamentally upon the assertion that the intended audience of the Dialogue are in fact Christians. While he does admit that this answer must be received somewhat guardedly, he still places fundamental importance on the assertion. It is because he believes the Dialogue to be written to Christians that he can then pursue the issue of canon. For if Justin is writing to Christians it would be obvious to speak of a subject so important to the Christian cause. Even silence on the canon, according to Cosgrove, suggests Justin's view on the subject.

---

60 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 211.
61 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 211, 221.
62 I summarize the history of the discussion and argue for a Jewish/Christian audience below in Appendix II.
64 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 219.
65 I would add that it also fundamentally depends on the issue of whether or not Justin mean to pursue canon questions.
But the question must be asked, "What if Cosgrove is wrong in his assertion of the intended audience?" I argue in Appendix II that the intended audience is primarily Jewish. If this is the case then, by Cosgrove's own admission, it would be illegitimate to ask questions about the canon with respect to Justin. For Cosgrove asserts that if the audience are non-Christian we should not expect Justin to argue for a concept that was unimportant to the audience. But even aside from the issue of intended audience this line of argument is fundamentally flawed.

Attention must be drawn to the way Cosgrove simply assumes that the establishment of a written NT canon was an issue in Justin's day. This not only misrepresents a proper distinction between "scripture" and "canon," but it is also an anachronistic view of the history of the canon. In Chapter 3 of this dissertation I argue that the issue of a closed canon of NT scripture was neither conceived of nor debated during Justin's day. Arguments with heterodox movements were not settled by an appeal to a canon of written documents, but with an appeal to the doctrine of the church, the rule of faith. This was occurring even after Justin's era and on into the third century. It was only with Athanasius in the mid-fourth century that canon was applied to a closed set of apostolic writings.

This must cause revision in Cosgrove's assertion of the legitimacy of pursuing issues of canon in Justin. Cosgrove states that because the Dialogue was written to Christians, Justin's conception of the canon will be accurately reflected, and that silence on the issue of canon in itself is part of this reflection in that it speaks of a pattern in Justin to relegate the apostolic writings to a position of merely historic

---

67 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 210-211.
68 See below, pp. 210-215.
70 See e.g., Irenaeus, Haer. 1.8.1; 1.9.1-4; Tertullian, Praescrip. 8-9; Eusebius, H.e. 6.12.3-6.
documents. But if a written canon was not a conception in the thought of second and even third century writers how can Justin’s silence on the matter be manipulated to form an opinion? Approaching Justin with questions of the NT canon may only be done in the proper historical context. Failure to do so results in an anachronistic view of the history of the NT canon, and leads one understand second century writers to speak of a written NT canon when the concept was not even part of the contemporary thought.

2. How much importance should be attributed to Marcion in NT canon formation?

Cosgrove supports the presupposition that issues of canon will be addressed in the Dialogue by an appeal to the effect that Marcion had on the Roman church around the height of his anti-Jewish program. This assertion, of course, assumes a date for the writing of the Dialogue with Trypho sometime after 153. The appeal to Marcion proceeds on the contention that he was the first to promulgate a fixed written canon. Because of this Justin would have found it necessary to deal with the question of canon as posed by Marcion. In stating this, Cosgrove has placed definitive importance on Marcion as the main motivation in the development of a new canon to counter Marcion’s “canon”.

The idea that Marcion was definitive in the decision of the church to form a NT canon is somewhat overstated by Cosgrove. Certainly no one can dispute the chronological priority of Marcion’s “canon”—nothing like it precedes him. But this chronological precedence must be distinguished from the question of its influence on

---

31 See Athanasius, Ep. Fest. 39. Irenaeus argued for a four Gospel collection in Haer. 3.1.1-2. While this shows a conscious attempt in the year 180 toward a fixed Gospel collection it is decidedly less developed than Athanasius's list in the year 367.

72 Cosgrove, “Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon,” 221-223.

73 This proper historical context is presented below, pp. 210-219.

74 See below pp. 37-39 for a discussion on the date of the Dialogue with Trypho.
the church. The fixation of a canon by Marcion did not lead to an immediate or concerted effort in the church to delimit its own literature. In fact, the number of writings valued by the church remained fluid for a long period after Marcion posited his collection. The fact that the church catholic eventually decided upon a larger canon is adequately explained on the grounds that these documents were the ones which the church found most useful to their purposes.

The influence of Marcion on the formation of the NT canon continues to be debated among scholars. By and large, the view promulgated by Harnack, Goodspeed, and Campenhausen, that Marcion's collection virtually forced the church to form its own canon, has, to varying degrees, been revised. The revision to see Marcion more modestly, as perhaps not the crucial factor, but nevertheless hastening the canon's development causing the church to do what it would have done already seems to be the general tone of the revisions. But Gamble believes even this judgment unjustified "since it is not possible to know whether the process of canon formation would have moved at a different pace had there never been a Marcion. In the absence of stronger evidence, it is gratuitous to see in Marcion a decisive factor in the history of the NT canon." Thus, with his dependence on Campenhausen's

---

Footnotes:

77 This point is emphasized as the ultimate criterion of canonicity by McDonald, The Formation of the Christian Biblical Canon, 246-249.
83 Gamble, The New Testament Canon, 62. G. M. Hahneman (The Muratorian Fragment and the Development of the Canon, 90-93) even argues that it is a misnomer to call Marcion's collection a "canon" and certainly misleading to credit him with creating a NT canon.
overstated view of the influence of Marcion on the NT canon Cosgrove has similarly overstated his case.

3. Did Justin employ a harmony?

Cosgrove now moves into a discussion on Justin and the Gospels. Two of Cosgrove’s conclusions must be challenged here. First, he states that the singular εὐαγγέλιον cannot refer to a Gospel harmony since Tatian’s Diatessaron had not yet been produced. But it is incorrect to posit Tatian’s Diatessaron as the first Gospel harmony. While the Diatessaron may be the first extant Gospel harmony, W. L. Petersen has clearly shown that the harmonized tradition antedates Tatian and probably even Justin. Second, in light of the first point, it is highly probable that Justin employed a harmony as a source for his quotations in the Dialogue with Trypho.

4. Is the singular/plural of εὐαγγέλιον significant?

Still in the context of the previous point, Cosgrove believes that the singular εὐαγγέλιον in Dial. 10.2 is best explained as reflective of Justin’s disinclination to equate the “gospel” with the apostolic writings themselves. "The singular connotes a certain element of abstraction as regards the idea of the gospel itself over against discrete Gospels." In other words, Justin’s avoidance of applying the term εὐαγγέλιον to the Gospels is because of the dynamic sense in which the gospel is conceived by him.

65 The probability that Justin did employ a harmony is more fully discussed below, pp. 191-201.
67 This point is also emphasized by O. A. Piper (“The Nature of the Gospel According to Justin Martyr”). “This whole activity of announcing the saving work of God is what Justin calls τὸ εὐαγγέλιον, and of it Jesus is both proclaiming agent and subject matter” (pp. 162-163).
Cosgrove seems to argue here for more than Justin himself states. Of the five instances where εὐαγγέλιον is used, only one is plural. Cosgrove asserts that the plural is used there as an accommodation to a pagan audience. This is possible, but it does not necessarily follow that Justin does not accept the appellation himself. The singular uses of the noun also do not support Cosgrove's assertion. The fact that the statement in 10.2 is uttered by Trypho should at least warn us of placing the statement in Justin's realm of understanding. But, aside from the fact that Trypho is a Jew and would not accept Christian writings, we cannot conclude from the statement alone that Trypho did not accept the appellation, for accepting the appellation does not necessarily imply acceptance of the teachings and narrative contained therein. The remaining use of the singular noun in Dial. 100.1 contains a possible quotation of the Gospel of Matthew or Luke, or a harmony of the two. The probability that Justin is quoting from this type of source can thus explain the use of the singular here.

The point here is that the uses of the singular and/or plural forms of εὐαγγέλιον are little support for the conclusion that Justin did not accept the appellation "Gospel" for a written source. Cosgrove appears to making too much out of a rather insignificant point. The fact is that each time Justin uses the term it is in reference to a written source, and in 1 Apol. 66.3 he equates the memoirs, Gospels, and that which was handed down (παραδιδομένου).

---

88 1 Apol. 66.3. It should be noted here that two of the five references are clearly not references to written documents—Dial. 51.2; 136.3. Cosgrove agrees.
90 This point must, of course, be seen in the context of the previous one which argues that Justin did, in fact, employ a harmony.
5. *Does Justin reverse the trend of placing apostolic writings on a par with the Prophets?*

After explaining that the gospel is conceived by Justin in a more dynamic sense than simply apostolic writings, Cosgrove relates Justin's view of the OT to his view of apostolic writings. In this respect he employs Campenhausen's discussion of Justin's view of the OT. Cosgrove states, "Von Campenhausen demonstrates how in Justin's response to Marcion's prediction fulfillment, inspiration by the 'prophetic Spirit,' non-contradiction, the appellation 'the Scriptures,' the doctrine of the Logos, and a salvation-history solution to the problem of the Mosaic law combine in what may be called a 'doctrine of holy scripture'." To Cosgrove the remarkable thing is that Justin employs no similar defense of the apostolic writings, even though they were equally endangered by Marcion. This is accentuated by the fact that Justin has adopted the general church practice of reading the OT writings together with the apostolic writings at worship services. According to Cosgrove this, in essence, represents the church's general trend toward placing the OT writings on the same level as the apostolic writings.

In light of this Cosgrove asks why Justin then refrains from reinforcing this tendency by constructing for the Memoirs a doctrine of scripture commensurate with or approaching that which he formulates for the OT. "Why does he neglect to rescue Matthew, Mark, Luke, and Paul from Marcionite rejection or unorthodox editing? Although the genre of 'dialogue with a Jew' may have put some restraints on Justin's presentation, he does not hesitate to introduce considerations which are relevant to his Christian audience but not to a debate with a Jew." This is then understood to mean

---

92 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 222.
93 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 223.
94 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 223.
that there is no reason why Justin could not have developed some theory of "canon" for the Gospels. But, according to Cosgrove, Justin does less than fail to defend the Apostolic writings, he actually dethrones them from what actual status they may have attained by calling them "Memoirs". The widespread use of the term "Gospel(s)" in the church during Justin's time and his own appellation "Memoirs," suggest that he conceives of them as purely historical documents.

The idea that Justin actually "dethrones" the apostolic writings ignores a very important aspect of Justin's view of the Apostles and their writings. It is true that Justin employs the Memoirs in an historical manner. But I will show in Chapter One that the apostolic writings were not in any sense viewed by Justin as inferior to the Prophetic writings. The Apostles themselves were held in very high esteem by Justin. It is significant, in this respect, that following closely on the heels of the section which contains the concentrated references to the Memoirs written by the Apostles, that Justin claims that the Gentiles repent of their sins as a result of hearing and learning the doctrine preached by the Apostles. The esteem with which the Apostles are held by Justin is clearly transferred to the documents that were written by them and their associates. This is shown in the fact that both the Prophets and Apostles possessed the qualifications for communicating God's revelation because of the fact that they had both seen and heard God. So rather than "dethroning" the apostolic writings, Justin views them as valuable. In fact, it can be

---

95 See below, pp. 81-86.
96 See below, pp. 81-86.
97 Dial. 42.1; 110.2; 119.6.
99 Dial. 109.1. See also Dial. 114 where Justin claims that the words uttered by the Apostles of Jesus circumcise Christians from idolatry and sin.
100 See below, pp. 81-95.
stated that Justin actually views them as going hand in hand with the Prophetic writings in salvation-history.101

Cosgrove's assertion that Justin himself did not employ the term εὐαγγέλιον as an appellation for Christian writings has many foundational and conceptual faults. As shown above, these include the following: a misunderstanding the chronology of canon formation which results in an anachronistic context in his discussion on Justin addressing the canon issue; an overstated understanding of the importance of Marcion in the formation of the NT canon; an apparent incognizance of Justin's use of a harmony; an inconsequential stress on the use of a singular noun and; a misunderstanding of the high esteem in which Justin held the Apostles and their writings. But even in light of the problems with Cosgrove's thesis it must be asked if the question of whether Justin accepted the appellation εὐαγγέλιον is almost irrelevant in the grand picture. For even Cosgrove admits that some in the Christian community are using the appellation of Christian writings.102

The issue of canon in Justin cannot be pursued without the proper historical and chronological context in full view. Cosgrove has failed to do this in many ways. By attempting to argue for a "dynamic" Gospel Cosgrove wants the reader to place the understanding of canon in his misunderstood context. Certainly the gospel of Jesus Christ is a concept that steps outside the boundary of mere writings, but in attempting to relate this dynamic Gospel to the question of canon Cosgrove has placed the question in a context to which it does not belong. This is his major fault and the one which renders his perceived problem moot for our discussion.

In many ways, Cosgrove is a good illustration of the misunderstandings that Chapter Three is attempting to correct. He represents a tendency of some scholars to

101 See below, pp. 146-178.
equate the use of scripture with canonical status in the 2nd century. But canon issues must be understood within a certain historical process that avoids an anachronistic view of the state of the canon in the second century. Foundational to this is proper historical context within which the relationship of the Rule of Faith and Canon functioned. Further, there must be a proper distinction between Canon and Scripture. This is all taken into account in Chapter Three to conclude that Justin’s contribution to the NT canon is best seen as a process toward a fixed collection rather than an example of a fixed collection.

D. Interpretation

Early Christianity claimed the Jewish scriptures as their own. In so doing, they were claiming that the message brought by Jesus fulfilled what the Prophets proclaimed. This certainly appeared presumptuous to the Jew. Thus, the Christians’ task in claiming the Jewish scriptures as their own was to show how they spoke of Christ, and to convince the Jew that the Christian interpretation of the Hebrew scriptures was the true and proper interpretation. This necessitates explanation of the reasons why Christians thought they had the right to usurp the Hebrew scriptures as their own.

There have been many studies on Justin Martyr that attempt to locate background influences on his interpretation. But the concern in Chapter Four is

---

motivated by the question, "How is it possible that two different interpretations (Trypho's interpretation vs. Justin's interpretation) can arise from the same scriptural passage?" This question must be answered, of course, based on the assumptions and presuppositions that each brings to scripture. This necessitates a contextual examination of the text that is sensitive to the reasons Justin himself gives for his Christian interpretation of the Hebrew scriptures.

In 1975 Theodore Stylianopoulos stated that one of the most distinctive aspects of Justin's contribution to the ongoing Christian interpretation of the Law was his historical conception of the purpose of the Law. But Stylianopoulos bemoans the fact that the Law in Justin has received little attention in secondary literature. This is not to say that there has been a complete disregard for the Law in Justin Martyr. But still, even Goodenough, who produced arguably the most important monograph on Justin this century, says virtually nothing about the problem of the Law.

Since the publication of Stylianopoulos's monograph the scene has changed little. Barnard's standard on Justin Martyr does contain a chapter on the Apologist's

---

**References**


relationship to Judaism but offers nothing on his interpretation of the Law. Pierre Prigent offers a brief analysis of the problem of the Law in Justin, but his main purpose was not a study of Justin’s interpretation of the Law, but rather the discovery of a foundational document behind the Dialogue and the Apologies. Stylianopoulos’s work filled a much needed gap in Justin studies by answering three foundational questions: 1) Why is the Law a problem for Justin?; 2) What is Justin’s conceptions of the Mosaic law?; 3) What arguments does Justin marshall to demonstrate the invalidity of the Law, on the one hand, and its purpose on the other?

The fourth chapter of this dissertation recognizes the debt owed to Stylianopoulos in formulating the above questions and providing answers. I would be cautious, however, and assert with Stylianopoulos that Chapter 4 is not a study of the scriptural exegesis of Justin, nor of his use of the OT as such. Rather, it is an analysis of his theological foundations for christological interpretation of the OT.

Central to the discussion is the “pattern of twos” which I suggest are the hermeneutical key to Justin’s OT interpretation. The two Laws and the two advents are the two most important concepts with which Justin deals.

Following the examination of these pattern of twos Chapter Four then moves into a key, and much discussed, concept in Justin’s interpretation of scripture—illumination. My discussion here seeks to relate Justin’s doctrine of illumination to the centrality of Christ. It is Christ who is the illuminator and any Christian possesses this illumination.

109 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 39-52.
111 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 3.
112 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 4.
113 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 4.
114 See below, p. 224-244.
The above four concepts are seen as foundational because they get to the heart of the issues in early Christianity. Who is God? How do we know him? What is his message? Who is Jesus? What writings are authentic expositions of the faith? To what standard do we look for direction in belief? How are the Jewish scriptures Christian if their message is different than the Jewish writings? Is the Law still valid? These and many other questions are paramount as Christianity attempted to establish itself as the one true religion. They are represented and answered within this schematic of the four pillars.

This is the reason why I have approached Justin Martyr's *Dialogue with Trypho* with a view to discerning his concepts of revelation, truth, canon, and interpretation. They are windows into a larger world—a world which explains Justin’s theology as it is presented in the *Dialogue*.

II. The Life of Justin

The details of Justin Martyr’s birth, life, and death are relatively obscure and sketchy. Any understanding of the life of Justin must be examined from two types of sources. First, we can piece together a rather skeletal amount of autobiography from Justin’s extant works, *1 Apology, 2 Apology*, and *Dialogue with Trypho*. Second, events of Justin’s life can also be gleaned from a few ancient writers who mention Justin in their own writings. These include mainly Eusebius, but Justin is also mentioned by Irenaeus and Tatian. In this vein, we will first examine Justin’s autobiographical sections and then move on to these other writers. In this fashion a summary “life” of Justin can be constructed.
A. *Justin's Autobiography*

1. *Birth*

Justin offers no hint to the date of his birth. Most have been satisfied with the simple and broad conclusion that he was born near the end of the first century or the beginning of the second.\(^{115}\) He does state that he is the son of Priscus and the grandson of Bacchius.\(^{116}\) His grandfather's name is thus Greek, while his father's, as is his own, is Latin. In the same passage in *I Apology* Justin states that he was born in Flavia Neapolis in Palestine. Flavia Neapolis, which was not far from Shechem and was established by the Emperor Vespasian as a colony in 72 AD,\(^{117}\) was in Samaritan territory.\(^{118}\) Today the town is known as Nablus, Israel.

2. *Life*

Justin claims that he is a Gentile convert to Christianity,\(^{119}\) and is thus uncircumcised.\(^{120}\) *Dial. 2* indicates that he received a Greek education while the entire prologue to the *Dialogue* (chaps. 1-9) shows that he lived the life of an educated pagan. Also, in the prologue we see that he showed intellectual vigor in his investigation and successive rejection of most of the established schools of philosophy.\(^{121}\) Justin certainly considered himself a philosopher. The prologue clearly indicates that he was a follower of the philosophy of Plato,\(^{122}\) and that after his

---

\(^{115}\) H. Chadwick ("Justin Martyr's Defense of Christianity," 276) simply asserts a second century birthdate. E. F. Osborn (*Justin Martyr, 6*) claims that Justin was born in the early second century. L. W. Barnard (*Justin Martyr, 5*) states that because we only know that Justin taught at Rome during the reign of Antoninus Pius and that he was martyred under Marcus Aurelius, we can infer that his birth occurred either in the late first century or the early second.

\(^{116}\) *I Apol. 1.1.*

\(^{117}\) Barnard, *Justin Martyr, 5*; Osborn, *Justin Martyr, 6*.

\(^{118}\) Chadwick, "Justin Martyr's Defense of Christianity," 276. This is probably the reason why Justin refers to himself as a Samaritan in *Dial. 120.6.*

\(^{119}\) *I Apol. 53; Dial. 41.3.*

\(^{120}\) *Dial. 28.2; 29.*

\(^{121}\) Osborn, *Justin Martyr, 6*.

\(^{122}\) Cf. Also 2 *Apol. 12.1.*
conversion he still considered himself a philosopher. In fact, Justin, even after his conversion, wore the philosopher’s cloak.\textsuperscript{123}

Justin actually gives two reasons for his conversion to Christianity. The first, as seen in the prologue to the Dialogue, is because of the arguments of the respectable old Christian man whom he met by the sea. The man recognized Justin’s Middle Platonic leanings and proceeded to refute Justin’s Platonism and convince him of the necessity of the Prophets and Apostles in the true philosophy. The second reason for his conversion to Christianity is that even though he had seen the Christians slandered and persecuted, he saw that they had fear neither of death nor of terrible harm. In this fearlessness Justin saw that it was impossible that they could be living in the wickedness that was so often portrayed of them.\textsuperscript{124}

B. Justin’s Biography

1. Birth

No ancient writer even mentions an approximate date of Justin’s birth.

2. Life

As for Justin’s life, however, more is stated in the ancient writers. But the information about Justin’s life, which is found mainly in Eusebius’ Ecclesiastical History\textsuperscript{125} is largely what we have already learned from Justin himself. From the passages in Eusebius it is confirmed that Justin was converted from philosophy to Christianity. He thus became a lover of the true philosophy. After his conversion he continued to wear the philosopher’s cloak and was still involved in the study of Greek literature.

\textsuperscript{123} Chadwick (”Justin Martyr’s Defense of Christianity,” 277) states that during this time the philosopher’s cloak possessed something of the significance of the modern clerical collar and provoked the same kind of mixed reaction in the public mind.

\textsuperscript{124} 2 Apol. 12.1.

\textsuperscript{125} H.e. 4.8.3-5; 4.11.8-11; 4.16.1-4.18.10.
In addition to these details that are mentioned by Justin himself, Eusebius also tells us that Justin was especially prominent during the days of Antoninus Pius (reigned 137-161). Further, we learn that Justin lived at Rome. This is confirmed in *The Martyrdom of the Holy Martyrs*\(^{126}\) which states that, at the time of Justin’s trial, he was in Rome for the second time. From this, Barnard posits that Justin appears to have stayed in Rome for some time. The fact that Justin resided in Rome twice is consistent with what is known of the various schools of thought which were established by Christians in Rome. Thus, while Valentinus used Rome as a base, he also had connections with Alexandria and Cyprus. Marcion’s nickname, “sea-captain,” suggests that he made a number of voyages away from Rome. And Greek philosophers such as Lucian of Samosata taught in province after province. It is therefore more probable that Justin did not establish a permanent school in Rome, but that he was more of an itinerant teacher who traveled while using Rome as more of a base.\(^{127}\)

3. *Death*

Justin’s martyrdom, as stated above, is recorded in *The Martyrdom of the Holy Martyrs*. It is a rather short account of the beheading of Justin and six others after being questioned by the prefect Junias Rusticus. The account relates how decrees were passed against Christians in Rome to force them to offer libations to idols. The men are questioned and subsequently asked to offer sacrifice to the gods. Each refuses and each is therefore decapitated.

---


\(^{127}\) Barnard, *Justin Martyr*, 12.
The account of Justin’s death is consistent with various statements of Eusebius, Tatian, and with the mind of Justin himself. Because the account clearly states that Justin was martyred during the reign of Junias Rusticus as prefect (162-168), this gives us a fairly narrow window for the actual date of his death.

Justin was martyred while Antoninus Pius was Emperor (161-169). Eusebius claims that he was martyred as a consequence of a plot by the Cynic Crescens, whom Justin is said to have publicly refuted on a number of occasions. This piece of information is also related by Tatian. But Eric Osborn believes that Eusebius has “exceeded the evidence for the cause of his death.”

Osborn accepts the fact that Justin himself claimed that he expected to be plotted against by someone like Crescens. And Justin’s pupil, Tatian, even claims that Crescens’ plots were directed at him as well. But Osborn does not trust Tatian’s account because of the “wild hyperbole” employed by Tatian in describing Crescens’ character. But in light of this even Tatian does not claim that Crescens is responsible for Justin’s death. Eusebius, argues Osborn, can only have made this claim based on his misinterpretation of Tatian. Besides, even if Tatian were correct in claiming that Crescens plotted against both he and Justin, the fact that he failed in getting Tatian suggests that he also failed in getting Justin.

As proof of his misgivings about Crescens being responsible for Justin’s death, Osborn suggests a closer look at the account of Justin’s martyrdom. In this
respect, Osborn offers two reasons to reject Crescens' responsibility for Justin's death. First, the martyrdom account clearly shows that Justin was condemned with six others in a normal legal process. At the outset of the account a decree is pointed to as the "culprit" of the martyrdom. Second, there is no hint of a suggestion that one particular person had especially accused Justin.

Osborn proceeds to support this argument by calling into question Eusebius' claim that Justin frequently debated with Crescens. On this Osborn suggests that "Justin claims to have interrogated him [Crescens] more than once and to have found him ignorant; but Justin is not sure whether this ignorance is due to a failure of Crescens to read the teachings of Christ or a failure to understand them. If there had been protracted disputations, Justin could not have been uncertain concerning these alternatives."

III. The Writings of Justin

Of Justin Martyr's writings only three are extant, his two Apologies and his Dialogue with Trypho the Jew. This, however was not the extent of Justin's literary activity. Justin himself claims to have written a treatise against all heresies. Eusebius indicates that he wrote at least seven more which have subsequently been lost to us. They include a third Apology, a work against the Greeks, a work entitled

---

139 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 9.
140 H.e. 4.16.1.
141 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 9-10.
142 What are commonly referred to today as Justin's two Apologies are, in fact, one Apology which has been divided into two—the text and the Appendix. This dissertation will retain the accepted titles 1 Apology and 2 Apology for these respective works.
143 In addition to these extant works there are four fragments of Justin preserved in later writers which are almost certainly genuine. See R. M. Grant, "The Fragments of the Greek Apologists and Irenaeus," in J. N. Birdsall and R. W. Thompson (eds.), Biblical and Patristic Studies in Memory of Robert Pierce Casey (Freiberg: Herder, 1963) 182-188.
144 1 Apol. 26.
145 H.e. 4.11.7-11; 4.16.1-9.
Refutation, one under the title *On the Sovereignty of God*, a work entitled *Psaltes*, a "disputation on the soul," and a writing against Marcion.\(^{146}\)

The texts of all our extant writings of Justin are available in the single medieval manuscript, Paris 450.\(^{147}\) Also contained in that manuscript are the texts of nine other documents reputed to be Justinian. Justin became a fairly well-known author and because of this his fame grew in the later church. It is not surprising, therefore, that many writings were either deliberately or mistakenly attributed to him. This is the case with the nine other writings included in Paris 450.\(^{148}\) The arguments against accepting any of these works as genuine have been conclusively stated by Harnack.\(^{149}\)

IV. The Dialogue with Trypho

A. Date

The date of the composition of the *Dialogue* cannot be nailed down with any precision. There is a significant piece of evidence within the work itself where Justin refers to his *1 Apology*.\(^{150}\) Because Justin refers to his previous writing in the *Dialogue* it is therefore certain that he composed the *Dialogue with Trypho* after he penned *1 Apology*. This being the case, it is helpful to ascertain the date of the writing of Justin's *1 Apology*.

The address of *1 Apology* is to Antoninus Pius and to his two sons, Verissimus and Lucius. Antoninus' son Lucius was born in 130, and Antoninus reigned from 137-161. In the address of the *Apology* Justin claims that Lucius was a "philosopher" and a

---

\(^{146}\) Irenaeus (*Haer.* 4.6.2) also mentions Justin's work against Marcion.

\(^{147}\) The date on the manuscript itself is 11 September 1363. It is beyond dispute that of all the extant works attributed to Justin only the *Apologies* and the *Dialogue* are genuine. See Barnard, *Justin Martyr*, 14; J. Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?" *TS* 38 (1977) 539.

\(^{148}\) These spurious writings are: *Address to the Greeks; Hortatory Address to the Greeks; On the Unity of God; A Fragment on the Resurrection; Exposition of the True Faith; Letter to Zenas and Serenus; Refutation of Certain Aristotelian Doctrines; Questions and Answers to the Orthodox; Christian Questions Asked to the Greeks.*

\(^{149}\) See Barnard, *Justin Martyr*, 172.
"lover of learning." Barnard thus reasons that allowing time for Lucius to attain this description, the writing of the Apology cannot be placed earlier than 145.151

Along with this is the reference of Justin in 1 Apology to Marcion and his following as "spread over every race of men."152 Marcion came to Rome and taught in the reign of Hyginus (139-142). This fits well with a composition date after 145 because sufficient time needs to be allowed for Marcion’s teachings to receive such a wide audience.153 Further, Justin states154 that he is writing 150 years after Christ’s birth.

Finally, Justin makes reference to a petition recently presented to Felix, the governor of Alexandria.155 Cullen Story explains that a number of papyri establish the date of the prefecture of this Felix with considerable certainty.156

(1) In 1896, Frederick Kenyon157 identified the Felix of 1 Apol. 29.2 with a Munatius Felix who succeeded Honoratus.

(2) The Berlin Papyrus 265 shows Honoratus to have been prefect in 148 AD.158 But according to another papyrus, Felix’s date of ascension was 151.159

(3) Another papyrus with the date 186 AD mentions a trial held in 151 before the prefect of Egypt, Munatius.

(4) Another Berlin papyrus (no. 448) gives the first name of the prefect Munatius Felix as Lucius.

(5) Kenyon160 cites another papyrus which mentions a prefect Lucius of the reign of Antoninus Pius, probably the same as Felix.

150 Dial. 120.5.
151 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 19.
152 1 Apol. 26.
153 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 19.
154 1 Apol. 46.
155 1 Apol. 29.
157 F. Kenyon, “The Date of the Apology of Justin Martyr,” The Academy 49 (1896) 98.
158 Story, The Nature of Truth in “The Gospel of Truth” and in the Writings of Justin Martyr, XIV.
In light of the above, it is probable that Felix held office between 151-154. Thus, the date of the Apology lies somewhere between these two dates.

If *Apology* lies between 151-154, and because the *Dialogue* mentions the *Apology* it is certain that the *Dialogue* was composed after that date. Any conjecture regarding a more exact date than 155-167 is only that. We must, therefore, be satisfied with an imprecise date for the *Dialogue with Trypho*.

B. Text

As mentioned above, the text of the *Dialogue* comes to us in Paris 450, a medieval manuscript dated 11 September 1363. Unfortunately, the state of the text of *Dialogue* leaves something to be desired. Some have suggested that because there is no introductory dedication preceding the *Dialogue* that this has been lost from the original. But there is more definite evidence of mutilation of the text. There appears to be a lacuna in *Dial. 74.3* which Chadwick believes extended for several pages. There is a further lacuna in *Dial. 73* where the exposition of Ps 96 is suddenly interrupted, never to be resumed again. There is also internal evidence that suggests the discussion between Justin and Trypho lasted two separate days. But the *Dialogue*, as we have it, shows no trace of either the end of the first day or the beginning of the second. In light of this, perhaps the words of Schneider are appropriate, “Solutions in this field are difficult and must be left to the technical experts. While it would be of immeasurable gain if the mutilations of the text could be

---

161 On this point Schneider ("Some Reflections on the Dialogue of Justin with Trypho," 166) expresses his agreement with Goodenough (The Theology of Justin Martyr, 97). Agreement on this point is far from uniform.
162 Chadwick, "Justin Martyr's Defense of Christianity," 278.
163 *Dial. 56.16; 85.4; 95.2*. See also the same assertion by Eusebius, *H.e. 4.18.6-8*. 
resolved, they are fortunately not of such an extent as to make any attempt at
evaluation and interpretation useless or grossly inaccurate."164

Throughout this dissertation the Greek text used for Justin's extant works is
Goodspeed's.165 All English translations of the Dialogue are my own while English
translations of the Apologies are from Roberts and Donaldson,166 unless otherwise
noted.

---

165 E. J. Goodspeed (ed.), Die ältesten Apologeten. Texte mit kurzen Einleitungen (Göttingen:
Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1915).
1994) 1.159-193.
CHAPTER ONE
The Concept of Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho

I. Introduction

"In most versions of Christianity, revelation has served as the epistemological basis for theology; that is, an appeal has often been made to revelation in order to account for knowledge of God." It is my contention that this line of thinking coincides with Justin Martyr's in the Dialogue with Trypho. It must be remembered, however, that because the Dialogue is not a systematic presentation of Justin's theological beliefs, it was not necessarily Justin's intent to espouse his understanding of revelation in the pages of that work. Rather, in the Dialogue, Justin covers topics and issues pertinent to the existing context. The task in this chapter is to examine the context of the Dialogue with the view to understanding how Justin understood revelation.

At its root, the idea of revelation carries with it the disclosure of something which was previously only partly known. For whatever reason something is disclosed that was previously hidden from knowledge or understanding. Knowledge, therefore, appears to be the goal in revelation. Knowledge of something or someone which was previously incomplete or partly known. In what follows, this link between revelation

---

and epistemology take center stage as we discuss Justin Martyr's concept of revelation.

In Christian theology the focus of revelation has been the self-revealing God. As sovereign creator, God is viewed as eternal and without equal, wholly other than humankind's existence. Because of this we are utterly unable to understand God on our own. The need to know who God is, what God does, and our relationship to him therefore rests in God's self-disclosure. In other words, only God can reveal himself.

The OT scriptures are illustrative of this focus. God's self-disclosure can be seen in his activity—his mighty acts. This is emphasized in many ways throughout the OT. The call of Abraham, through whom God would build his nation, showed the Israelites that God revealed his purposes to them. The miraculous provision of Isaac as an heir to the promise further showed his nation that God carried out his promises to them. The deliverance of Israel from Egypt and the conquest of the promised land further strengthened the Israelite dependence on God's self-revealing acts. These, and many other, mighty acts by God on behalf of the nation of Israel revealed God's care and plan for it, they are not only revelations of his power, but are also revelations of his character. God’s self-disclosure can also be seen in his speech. The Prophets were very conscious that the message they were delivering was not their own, it was from God. The Prophets could therefore state, "The word of the Lord came to me,

---


4 Pannenberg, Systematic Theology, 1.1-2.
saying...". God, therefore, was not only revealing himself but also his plan and purposes.

Justin Martyr reflects this focus that views God as wholly other, yet as one who chooses to make self-disclosure through his mighty acts. Concerning Justin’s concept of revelation in the Dialogue with Trypho, W.A. Shotwell has stated, “In the Dialogue with Trypho there was no need for Justin to state a concept of revelation, for both he and his opponent used the Old Testament as the basis for their discussion.”

Shotwell proceeds to explain Justin’s concept of revelation based upon the Apologies with little reference to the Dialogue. As this chapter will show, Shotwell is correct in his statement that Justin considers the OT scriptures as a witness to God’s character. However, he has neglected to mention and give account for two other very important issues that must be discussed in connection with Justin’s concept of revelation in the Dialogue with Trypho. First, the concept of revelation must be placed within Justin’s understanding of philosophy as a search for God. Justin’s background and the influence of Middle Platonic philosophy upon him cannot be disregarded in the Dialogue. Failure to do so oversimplifies the issue to the extreme of misunderstanding it. Second, the importance of the Logos in Justin’s concept of revelation must also be examined, for, it will be shown, the Logos is the glue which holds Justin’s concept of revelation together.

The purpose in this chapter is not to discuss modern views of revelation, or even the general theme of revelation. The task before us here is to discuss Justin’s foundational understanding of God’s revelation as presented in the Dialogue with Trypho. We will see that Justin understands this revelation in terms of salvation history in which the incarnation of the Logos is central. Under-girding Justin’s

---

5 See e.g., Jer 18:1; Ezek 12:1, 8, 17, 21, 26; Hos 1:1; Joel 1:1; Amos 3:1.
understanding here is the belief that God actually breaks into the human situation from beyond—God acts in the human situation. Justin claims that God has acted, and is acting, historically to rescue humanity from its plight.7

This chapter has three main foci. First, by way of background, the foundational issue of epistemology must be discussed with a view toward how Justin believed knowledge of God is attained. In this section, Justin’s connection with the Middle Platonic theory of knowledge will be explained and its significance stated. Second, also by way of background, Justin’s concept of God will be discussed with a view toward seeing the link between it and the Platonic concept of God. Both of these first two main sections will show that even though Justin retained some Platonic categories of thought after his conversion to Christianity, he could no longer call himself a true Platonist.8 This has significant implications for his view of epistemology and its relationship to revelation. The third major section will discuss the implications of Justin’s epistemology and Theology Proper on his concept of revelation. In other words, the Dialogue with Trypho will be examined with a view towards seeing how Justin practically works out his concept of revelation.

7 G. D. Kaufman, Systematic Theology: A Historicist Perspective (New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1968) 13-40, 378-388. Kaufman claims that because man and woman are historical beings, salvation from humanity’s plight must also be historical—it must come through events which further transform history, thus finally healing humanity itself. He identifies several of the most important stages in this salvation history. “The first, symbolized in Genesis by the ‘call of Abraham,’ was the preparation of a certain receptiveness in man to the fact that God’s requirements are distinct from man’s (autonomous) desires” (p. 379). “The second stage or event of salvation-history...is the exodus-covenant complex through which the people of Israel bound themselves in a historical compact to the God Yahweh. Here the totalitarian character of the loyalty claimed by God began to become apparent, together with the genuinely personal character of the relation between God and man” (p. 380). “With this development we are into the third stage or event of salvation-history. Yahweh, it now became evident, is the absolute Lord of all history; the whole course of history, therefore, must be understood as working out his personal purposes” (p. 381). “The fourth stage of this historical movement toward man’s salvation bears the name Jesus Christ...This event includes the actual ‘bridging of the gap’ between God and man, and the broadening out once again of what had seemed to be the particular history of an obscure nation into universal history, with the emergence of a community destined to include all nations” (p. 383).

8 It will be shown that Justin is indebted to the more eclectic form of Platonism of the second century that has been described as Middle Platonism.
II. Background—Epistemology

In the prologue to the *Dialogue with Trypho* (chaps. 1-9) the reader is immediately ushered into the philosophic tone of the treatise. A detailed examination of the prologue will arrive in due course as this chapter progresses. However, the somewhat latent philosophical presuppositions upon which the entire prologue is based must be understood in its relationship to Justin’s conversion. In other words, we must ask how Justin’s philosophical presuppositions affected his conversion and, ultimately, his conception of revelation. This is the foundational issue upon which and from which all thought and argument progress in the prologue.

I have suggested above that the root idea of revelation carries with it disclosure of something that was previously hidden or partly known. We have thus entered into the epistemological question—“How do we know what we know?” In a very real sense, this is Justin’s concern in the *Dialogue with Trypho*. It is my contention that Justin retained certain Platonic presuppositions even after his conversion to Christianity. However, in order to show this, certain aspects of Platonic thought must be explained within the context of its contact with Justin. At the top of the list is Platonic epistemology. Justin’s conversion from Platonism to Christianity cannot be properly understood without understanding the Platonic theory of knowledge. His conversion indicates a fundamental shift concerning how one attains knowledge of God. This shift, in turn, is foundational to the concept of revelation in the *Dialogue*.

\[9\text{As will be shown below, Justin’s Platonic epistemology is radically altered while his Platonic concept of God is, by and large, retained.}\]
A. Platonic Epistemology

It is clear that Justin considered himself a philosopher—both before and after his conversion to Christianity. As a philosopher, he believed it was his task (along with philosophers in general) to inquire about God. In fact, according to Justin, this inquiry is necessary for happiness. Trypho becomes intrigued by this assertion and asks him to define God and philosophy. Justin does so by recounting his trek through the philosophies of his day and through his meeting with a certain respectable old man who would eventually convince him to accept Christianity as the true philosophy. It is by way of Justin's recounting his meeting with the old man that Justin answers Trypho's questions of definition. Justin states that philosophy “is the knowledge of that which is (ἐστὶ), and knowledge based on truth.” In his reply to Justin's definition the old man seizes upon a very important issue for revelation—epistemology. And it is in this reply that we see the foundational importance of epistemology in Justin's concept of revelation.

By replying that philosophy is “knowledge of that which is” or “knowledge of that which exists,” Here Justin is recalling his debt to Middle Platonism. He had already offered an indication of this debt to Middle Platonism thought in Dial. 2.6,

I thereupon spent as much of my time as was possible with one who had lately settled in our city—a sagacious man, holding a high position among the Platonists,—and I progressed, and made the greatest improvements daily. And the perception of immaterial things quite overpowered me, and the contemplation of Ideas furnished my mind with wings, so that in a little while I supposed that I had become wise; and such was my stupidity, I expected forthwith to look upon God, for this is the end of Plato's Philosophy.

---

10 Dial. 1.
11 Dial. 1.3.
12 Dial. 3.4 ἐπιστήμην ἐστὶ τοῦ ὄντος καὶ τοῦ ἐλλειποῦ ἐπὶ γνώσεις.
13 καὶ ἐνεστὶ ἐπιδημήσατο τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ πόλει σωματῷ ἄνδρι καὶ προσεύχοντι ἐν τοῖς Πλατωνικοῖς συνεδρίμβου ὅς τὰ μάλιστα, καὶ προέκοπτον καὶ πλεῖστον ὅσον ἐκάστις ἡμέρας ἐπέδεικτο. καὶ με ἔπεσεν ὅφθαλμα ἡ ἄνωματος ὑπόσχες, καὶ ἡ θεωρία τῶν ἰδεῶν ἀνεπτέραν μοι τὴν φράσιν, ὅλου τοῦ ἐπιστήμης ὁμοῦ συνεφόρησεν, καὶ ἐνέδωκεν ἀμφοτέρων ἀυτής κατάφευξαν τὸν θεόν· τούτῳ γὰρ τέλος τῆς Πλατωνικῆς φιλοσοφίας. 

Cf. Albinus, Didask 2.
Justin's Platonism was distinctly the eclectic Middle Platonism of the second century. He employs the same terms in describing the act of knowing the Christian God\textsuperscript{14} as he uses of knowing philosophical truth. Both passages are based on a passage in Plato.\textsuperscript{15} This text was a favorite among Middle Platonists.\textsuperscript{16} For the Middle Platonic school the experience of the highest good in the intelligible world was central. Thus, Justin's interpretation of Plato here is in line with the Middle Platonic thought of his day when he describes the experience of the Idea as the end of Platonic philosophy. When Justin understands Plato's ontological sentences as theological it is an interpretation that is well-known in Middle Platonism. For example, when Albinus speaks about God being discernable to the mind alone, he is using as his base \textit{Phaedr.} 247C. But he (like Justin) applies the passage which deals with knowledge of the intelligible world of the True and the Good to the knowledge of God.\textsuperscript{17} Celsus uses the passage from Plato in a similar way.\textsuperscript{18} Thus, while it is true that the \textit{telos} of Platonism was not to look upon God, it must be remembered that Justin was not a Platonist in the pure sense of that school of thought. He was a Middle Platonist and his understanding of Plato was an interpretation. The central metaphysical theme for Justin is no longer, as it was for the historical Plato, the doctrine of Ideas, but God. For Plutarch the \textit{δυνάμεις θεός} is God.\textsuperscript{19} But for Plato it was the Ideas.\textsuperscript{20} This fact should not cause surprise since Justin is here recording his own words prior to his conversion to Christianity. By answering in such a way, Justin has exposed himself as espousing, to

\begin{footnotes}
\item[14] Dial. 8.
\item[15] Plato, \textit{Ep.} 7.341D.
\item[16] Albinus, \textit{Didask} 10; Maximus of Tyre, \textit{Or.} 29.5; Plut. \textit{De Is. Et Osir.} 77.
\item[17] Albinus, \textit{Didask} 10.
\item[18] Celsus, \textit{Fr.} 6.64.
\item[20] Plato, \textit{Phaedr.} 247E; \textit{Tim.} 27D; 28A.
\end{footnotes}
Chapter I—Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho

a certain degree, the Platonic theory of knowledge. This, in turn, is important when we look at Justin's Christian epistemology.

Plato presents the world in which we live as a product of the interaction between two distinct principles—“Becoming” and “Being.” Becoming is defined as the visible, tangible reality which is perceived by the senses. Of the two, this kind of reality is lower and inferior to Being. Being, on the other hand, is a higher reality that is found in the intelligible realm, the realm of Forms or Ideas.

I. “Becoming”

Becoming has two essential characteristics: (a) it is physical or material in nature and thus occupies both space and time and, (b) because it occupies both space and time it is always in a state of flux or change. Because nothing is permanent or stable, nothing quite succeeds in being what it is. This is because it is always in the state of becoming something else. The result of this state of becoming is that because of this state of flux or change there is no basis for reliable knowledge of any kind.

The crux of the issue here is that of sensible perception, or knowledge of objects of which we are made aware of by our senses. Plato sets out to show that knowledge gained by perception does not fulfill the requirements of true knowledge at

---


22 Plato states, “Now first of all we must, in my judgment, make the following distinction. What is that which is Existent always and has no Becoming? And what is that which is Becoming always and never is Existent? Now the one of these is apprehensible by thought with the aid of reasoning, since it is ever uniformly existent; whereas the other is an object of opinion with the aid of unreasoning sensation, since it becomes and perishes and is never really existent. Again, everything which becomes must of necessity become owing to some Cause; for without a cause it is impossible for anything to attain becoming” (Plato, Tim. 27D-28A).


24 Plato, Theaet. 181-183.
all, since, according to him, knowledge must be infallible and of what is (Being). As far as knowledge of sensible things go, Plato is quite fond of pointing out how fallible this knowledge is. One such example is found in Theaetetus. Here, Theaetetus has just asserted to Socrates that "knowledge is nothing else than perception." In reply, Socrates points out that sometimes when two men are feeling the same wind blow, one may feel cold while the other does not, or, one may feel only slightly cold while the other is exceedingly cold. "Then in that case, shall we say that the wind is in itself cold or not cold; or should we accept Protagoras's saying that it is cold for him who feels cold and not for him who does not?"

The point here is that for Plato sense-perception is not infallible. This is because one object can be described as being two opposite things. This is expanded upon by Plato (through Socrates) when he states that

...you could not rightly ascribe any quality whatsoever to anything, but if you call it large it will also appear to be small, and light if you call it heavy, and everything else in the same way, since nothing whatever is one, either a particular thing or of a particular quality; but it is out of movement and motion and mixture with one another that all those things become which we wrongly say "are"—wrongly, because nothing ever is, but is always becoming.  

Further, if knowledge must be knowledge of that which is, then sense-perception fails again, because the fact that two people can perceive the same object in contradictory ways proves that the objects of sense-perception are always in a state of change or flux. Since sense-perception is built on opinion rather than knowledge it is not reliable. Opinions are not "real". They may, therefore contradict one another. 

---

25 Plato, Theaet. 152. Other examples of Plato pointing out the fallibility of sensible knowledge include Tim. 48-51; Theaet. 182-188; Phaed. 73-75; Rep. 413, 475-480. See also, F. Copleston, A History of Philosophy (9 vols.; new rev. ed; Garden City, NY: Image Books, 1962) 1/1.167.  
26 Plato, Theaet. 151 E.  
27 Plato, Theaet. 152 B.  
28 Plato, Theaet. 152 B.  
29 Plato, Theaet. 152D-E.  
30 Plato, Rep. 357C; 402C-D; 475-480; 585C; Tim. 53; 121-123.
Thus, perception is not knowledge because it is fallible and is not knowledge of Being but only of Becoming.

2. "Being"

This state of affairs leaves one thinking that any search for a stable knowledge is a vain search. But Plato offers a remedy to this. True knowledge, to Plato, is knowledge that can be comprehended by reason, by the powers of the mind. This higher reality is that of Being, and is described as the realm of Forms or Ideas.

For Plato, Forms (εἶδη) or Ideas (Ιδέαι) are neither physical nor mental—they are outside of space and time. It is the Forms that are real while the physical and material world is but a poor reflection. Plato was here influenced by the methods and achievements of mathematics in his day. The truth of mathematics were of a special sort—they are grasped intellectually, by a process of intuition and deductive reasoning. They are reflected or illustrated in the physical world, but only imperfectly. They can only be truly understood by the mind which abstracts from the unreliable evidence of sense and relies on the capacities of reason alone. And Plato thinks that as it is with the truths of mathematics, so also with other matters as well. Thus, objects of true knowledge must be stable and abiding, fixed, capable of being grasped in clear scientific definition. This knowledge which is attained of the stable is knowledge of universals, of Forms or Ideas.

---

32 Plato, Parm., passim.
33 Plato, Rep. 434D-435E; Theaet. 165.
34 Norris, God and World in Early Christian Theology, 14.
35 Copleston, History of Philosophy, 1/1.174.
Plato's Allegory of the Cave

Plato himself offers an allegorical explanation of how his theory of knowledge should be understood. His allegory of the Cave may thus be seen as a summary of his theory of Forms or Ideas and his mission as a philosopher. If one were to diagram this allegory, it would look like this:

![Cave Entry Diagram]

Plato asks the reader to imagine a cave which has an opening towards a light. In the cave are living human beings where, from birth, their legs and necks have been chained in such a way that they can look neither left, nor right, but only forward to the back wall of the cave. The prisoners have thus never actually seen the light of the sun. Between the prisoners and the mouth of the cave is a fire, and between the fire and the prisoners is a raised way and a low wall like a screen. Along this raised way people pass carrying statues and figures of animals and other objects. They are carried in

---

36 Plato actually related 3 different comparisons to help express various aspects of his epistemology. In addition to the Allegory of the Cave (Rep. 514-519) Plato also used the Divided Line (Rep. 510-511) and the Simile of the Sun (Rep. 505-509). The Divided Line and the Simile of the Sun will be discussed in Chapter 2 as they apply to Justin's concept of truth.

37 Plato, Rep. 514A-519A.

38 Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1/1.185.
such a way that they appear over the top of the screen. Because the prisoners are facing the inside wall of the cave, they neither see one another nor the objects being carried, but only shadows of themselves and of the objects which are thrown on the wall they are facing.

The prisoners represent the majority of humankind who are in a state in which they see only shadows of reality and hear only echoes of truth. It is a distorted view of the world. If these prisoners were to suddenly break free and told to look at the realities of which they had only formerly seen shadows, they would be blinded by the glare of the light, and would imagine that the shadows are far more real than the realities. But if one of the escaped prisoners grows accustomed to the light, he would be able to look at the concrete sensible objects, of which he had formerly only known shadows. This escaped prisoner can now see his fellow prisoners in the light of the fire (which represents the visible sun). He has thus been “converted” from the shadow world to the real world. He now sees the prisoners for what they really are. If this converted prisoner now comes out of the cave into the sunlight, he will see a world of sun-illumined and clear objects (which represent intelligible realities), and will eventually be able to see the sun itself, which represents the Idea of the Good, the highest Form. If someone, after ascending to the sunshine, were to go back into the cave, he would be unable to see properly because of the darkness. If he tried to free another and lead him to the light, the prisoners, who love the darkness and consider the shadows to be true reality, would put the offender to death.

So, from the allegory of the cave, one sees that the philosopher who has seen the world of Ideas is in the best position to explain the realities better than those who have only seen the shadowy world of sense. 39 The allegory also makes it clear that

39 Ferguson, Backgrounds of Early Christianity, 314.
there is a concept of progress which requires great effort and mental discipline. This is why Plato insists on the importance of education. For it is through education that the young may be brought, through progression, to behold eternal and absolute truths and values, and so saved from passing their lives in the shadowy existence of sense.\(^4\)

**B. Justin’s Platonic Epistemology**

Justin uses his meeting with the old man by the sea\(^4\) to introduce a Christian epistemology, as opposed to the Platonic epistemology described above.\(^4\) The old man is given some initial indication of Justin’s Platonic leanings in two ways upon their meeting. First, when the old man asks Justin why he is walking alone, Justin replies that he likes to walk alone by the sea because his attention is not distracted and dialogue with himself is uninterrupted.\(^4\) Second, Justin declares reason (\(λόγος\)) to be the source which governs all. Once a person has laid hold of reason he or she is able to look down on the errors of others. But without reason prudence would not be present in any man.\(^4\) These two indications show that Justin is concerned with using the faculty of his mind to inquire and progress in philosophy—a matter that sounds very much like Plato’s philosophy outlined above.

At this point in the *Dialogue* it appears as though Justin is presenting the old man as slowly trying to press Justin concerning his Platonism, and the next two indications confirm this. The first indication, which has already been discussed, is Justin’s definition that philosophy “is the knowledge of that which is (\(επιτηδεία\)).”\(^4\) The second indication is Justin’s definition that God is “That which always has the same

---


\(^4\) *Dial.* 3.1.

\(^4\) It should be noted that at this point in the *Dialogue* Justin is using the old man as a “foil” for Platonic epistemology. Therefore, Justin is reflecting back on his conversion from Platonism to Christianity. It is thus Justin the Platonist here.

\(^4\) *Dial.* 3.2.

\(^4\) *Dial.* 3.3.

\(^4\) *Dial.* 3.4. The dependence of this statement upon Platonic philosophy is discussed above, pp.46-53.
manner and existence and is the cause of all other things."\textsuperscript{46} From these two further indications, the old man's suspicions are confirmed that Justin is, in fact, a Platonist. Justin has just stated a belief in the higher order of knowledge—Being. Thus, for Justin the Platonist, God is that which is and that which remains the same—Being.

The old man recognizes that Justin has placed himself within Plato's theory of knowledge.\textsuperscript{47} Therefore, he presses the epistemological question—How do we know God? According to the old man knowledge is not always apprehended in the same ways. Justin is therefore asked if knowledge is not a word applied commonly to different matters. Some knowledge, such as military strategy, navigation, and medicine comes from study and practice. But some knowledge, specifically knowledge in Divine and human affairs, cannot be gained in this way; it must be gained by sight or hearing from someone who has seen. The example given by the old man for this type of knowledge is the idea that, hypothetically, there exists an animal in India which is different than any other. If one had not seen this animal he would have no definite knowledge of it. The only other way one could describe it therefore is if one had heard of it from someone who had seen the animal.\textsuperscript{48} Justin agrees with the old man's reasoning, and upon this agreement the old man gets to the heart of the issue: "Then how...can philosophers set forth truthfully or speak that which is true concerning God when they have no knowledge of him, having never seen or heard him?"\textsuperscript{49}

Justin's reply, once again, is Middle Platonic, "...the Divine is not visible to the eyes, as other living things, but is discernible to the mind alone, as Plato says—

\textsuperscript{46} Dial. 3.5. Τὸ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ ὑστατός ἐκέχου καὶ τοῦ ἐπίναι πάντοσ πάλας ἀλλος ἀληθῶς

\textsuperscript{47} As it has been understood in second century Middle Platonism. See pp. 45-53; 61-66.

\textsuperscript{48} Dial. 3.6.

\textsuperscript{49} Dial. 3.7 Πῶς οὖν ἄν, ἡμέρας, περί θεοῦ ὁρθὸς φρονοεῖν οἱ φιλόσοφοι ἢ λέγοειν τι ἄλλος, ἑπιστήμην αὐτοῦ ἔχουσες, μηδὲ ἰδώντες ποτὲ ἢ ἀκούσαντες;
and I believe him." If old man had any doubt as to Justin's philosophical bias, it has now been answered. The phrase "discernible to the mind alone" embodies the core of Platonic philosophy. Now that the old man can place Justin as a follower of Plato, he knows what Justin believes regarding the attainment of knowledge. And it is these beliefs that the old man sets out to discredit in favor of a Christian epistemology.

C. Toward a Christian Epistemology

The old man starts discrediting Justin's Middle Platonic epistemology by questioning Justin's belief that the mind actually has the power to do such a thing. He counters Justin's belief with his own that the mind of man cannot see God without the aid of the Holy Spirit. Justin then replies that the mind is of such a nature that it has been given for this end—to see that very Being when the mind is pure. This Being actually comes into the souls on account of their affinity to and desire for seeing God. For Plato, and thus for Justin here, the soul is immortal (having neither beginning nor end). But not only is the soul immortal, it is also immaterial or spiritual and therefore belongs to the same reality as Forms or Ideas. This is important, for "Only like can know like; only a subject which is itself eternal and incorporeal can grasp the truth of an eternal and incorporeal reality."

The old man then seizes upon Justin's statement about the soul. He recognizes that Justin is claiming that the soul is immaterial, immortal, and eternal, i.e. that it is uncreated. This is why, in Dial. 4-6 Justin uses the old man to discredit the Platonic idea that the soul is part of the order of Forms or Ideas. For if the soul is not immortal then it cannot be a part of the Platonic version of reality. Thus, neither the soul nor the

50 Dial. 3.7. 'ALL' οὐκ ἤστεν ὀφθαλμοῖς, ἢν δ' ἔγνυ, αὐτοῖς, πάτερ, ὄρατον τὸ θείον ὡς τὰ ἄλλα ζωὰ, ἀλλὰ μόνῳ νῦ καταληπτόν, ὡς φησὶ Πλάτων, καὶ ἔγνυ πειθομαι αὐτῷ.
51 van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 69.
52 Dial. 4.1.
53 Norris, God and World in Early Christian Theology, 16. See also, van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 74-75.
mind has affinity to God. And if the soul and the mind has no affinity to God, if it is of a different order of reality, then there is no chance that the mind may see God because "only like can know like." The old man is making an argument that could conceivably cause Justin's entire epistemological framework to collapse.

The climax to the old man's argument is found in chapter 7, where he offers his alternative Christian epistemology. But the summary of his argument against Middle Platonic epistemology is found in chapter 6. It is well worth quoting.

The soul certainly is, or has, life. If, therefore, it is life, it would cause other life, not itself—just as motion moves something other than itself. No one denies that the soul lives. But if it lives, it does not live as being life, but rather as a partaker of life. And the one partaking of something is different from that of which it partakes. So the soul partakes of life because God wills it to live. Thus, it cannot partake of life if God does not will it to live. For to live is not its own [attribute] as it is God's. The old man is placing the soul within the realm of the will of God, in other words, the soul lives only because God wills it to live. It is not an uncreated reality, but rather, it is subject to the will of God as the giver of life. The soul and God are different, thus, the soul has no affinity to God.

Immediately after the old man's summary of Platonic epistemology the climax of his argument is reached. Justin is introduced to the Prophets and Apostles of Christ who can actually relate knowledge of God. Justin rejects his previously held Platonic epistemology and accepts the old man's argument—a Christian epistemology.

By eventually accepting this Christian way of attaining knowledge about God Justin has severed an important link to his Middle Platonism. Plato did not believe in a God who reveals himself in time and history, much less in theophanies, as did

---

55 Dial. 6.1-2. ἢ ψυχὴ ἤτοι τοῦ ζωῆς τις ζωὴν ἢ τὰ ψυχήν ἔχει· εἰ μὲν οὖν ζωὴν ἔστιν, ἢ ἵνα ποιήσεις ζην, οὐ χάριν ἔκειν, ὡς καὶ κύριος ἄλλο τι κυρίον ζῆν, οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλο. ὅτι δὲ τῷ ψυχῇ, οὐ δὲν ἀντίτροποι. εἰ δὲ τῇ, οὐκ ἔχειν ζῆν, ἃλλα μεταλαμβάνουσα τῆς ψυχῆς: ἔτερον δὲ τῷ τὸ μετέχον τοῦ ἐκεῖνον οὐ μετέχει. ζωῆς δὲ ψυχῇ μετέχειν, ἐπεὶ ζῆν αὐτὴν ὁ θεὸς ἑιλεκται. αὕτης ἄρα καὶ οὐ μεθέχει ποτέ, ὅταν αὐτὴν μὴ θέλειν ζῆν. οὐ γὰρ ἦδον αὐτῆς ἐστι τὸ ζῆν ἄρα τοῦ θεοῦ.
Jewish and Christian writers. Basically "god," for Plato, was anything which participates in Being as opposed to Becoming. "God" is thus anything which belongs by nature to the realm of immortal and intelligible existence. As we have seen, it is the Forms or Ideas which belong to this realm of immortal and intelligible existence. All of these Forms or Ideas are summed up in the ultimate ideal, which Plato calls the Good. Even though this idea of the Good has been thought of as the nearest approximation in Plato to the biblical idea of God, it must be remembered that the Good is a Form, and not a living God. Strictly speaking, Plato does not have a personal God, rather, only an impersonal principle. It is out of these concepts that Justin emerged to maintain a belief in the personal God of the Prophets and Apostles. His task, therefore, was to transform Platonic notions of this impersonal "god" into a more acceptable personal God of the scriptures of Christianity.

D. Concluding Remarks on Epistemology

The differences here between Middle Platonic epistemology and the old man's Christian epistemology, which Justin accepts, are foundational to understanding why Justin uses both the Prophets and Memoirs of the Apostles as sources of the knowledge of God, and, most importantly, the incarnation of the Logos as revelation of God. The old man builds upon a common ground between Middle Platonic epistemology and his Christian epistemology. That common ground is found in the definition of philosophy as "knowledge of that which is (ἐν τῇ)" and the belief that God is that which remains the same (Being).

56 Dial. 7-8. This is discussed in more detail below, pp. 74-96.
57 Norris, God and World in Early Christian Theology, 20.
58 See above, pp. 45-53.
59 Ferguson, Backgrounds of Early Christianity, 313.
60 These 3 subjects form the headings for the section below on the Witnesses to Revelation and the Logos as Revelation. See pp. 74-96.
61 Dial. 3.4.
62 Dial. 3.5.
But from this common ground arises the question, "How do we know God?"
This is the real crux of the issue between Middle Platonic and Christian epistemology.
The old man discredits the Platonic idea that the soul and the mind have an affinity for
God because they are of a different order of reality. Thus, the only way gain
knowledge about God is from those who had seen or heard him. This is a major
difference in how to attain knowledge about God. No longer is the intelligible world
seen as deceptive. Rather, it is this very intelligible world that gives us knowledge
about God. Simply stated, one cannot accept the Christian epistemology described by
the old man and still remain a Platonist.

III. Background—Theology Proper

This issue of epistemology must never be far from a contextual reading of the
Dialogue with Trypho regarding revelation. The old man’s Christian epistemology
literally revolutionized the way Justin acquired knowledge about God. It is quite clear,
therefore, that Justin has not retained his previously held Platonic epistemology. Can
the same be said, however, for his concept of God?

A. Common Starting Point?

Having placed Justin’s conversion to Christianity in its proper context of
epistemology and his discussion with the old man, we may now turn to Justin’s
discussions with Trypho and his companions. It is clear, once again, that this
discussion also centers on the concept of epistemology.

In Dial. 10 Justin asks Trypho for an explanation of the accusations he and
other Jews make against the Christians. Trypho’s answer is that the Christians live a
life that is no different than the Gentiles, neither keeping the feasts and Sabbaths, nor
practicing the rite of circumcision. Therefore, what Trypho requires of Justin is an

63 Dial. 7-8. This is discussed in greater detail below, pp. 74-96.
Chapter 1—Revelation in *Dialogue with Trypho*

explanation of why he, as a Christian, can scorn the covenant of circumcision, spurn the commands that come after it, and still think that he knows God. To Trypho it is impossible for a person to know (εἰδοτες) God without practicing those things which God requires. In Trypho’s eyes, Justin is no different than the Gentiles. He and other Christians do not segregate themselves from other Gentiles, and really live a life that is no different from them. This is evidenced for Trypho in Justin’s disregard for the feasts and sabbaths, as well as his disregard for the rite of circumcision. For Trypho, knowledge of God is attained through adherence to the Law. Therefore, failure to practice the Law results in a failure to know God. Following this explanation of his accusations Trypho then sets the stage for the ensuing dialogue, “If, therefore, you have satisfactory verbal defense of these [accusations], and can show in what way you hope for anything whatsoever, even though you do not observe the Law, we would most willingly listen to you, and we will also make similar investigations.”

Justin begins his reply by focusing in on the common ground between Trypho the Jew and Justin the Christian. That common ground relates to God.

There will never be, Trypho, nor has there ever been from eternity (I thus addressed him), any other except the one who created and arranged all. Nor do we think that our God is different from yours, for this is the God who, with a strong hand and outstretched arm, led your fathers out of the land of Egypt. Nor have we placed our hope in any other (for there is no other), but in this same one in whom you also have placed your hope, the God of Abraham and of Isaac and of Jacob.
Here Justin is attempting to begin on the same footing with Trypho by stating that his doctrine of God is the same as Trypho’s. As a philosopher, God was one of Justin’s main concerns. But can Justin’s statement be taken at face value? Is Justin’s conception of God the same as the Trypho’s conception? This question is best answered under three main headings: Justin’s Concept of God, Trypho’s Judaism, and Apophatic Theology.

1. Justin’s Concept of God

a. Pre-Conversion

In Dial. 5.4-6 Justin appeals to Plato’s Timaeus for support in his belief that only God is unbegotten (ἄγεννητος) and incorruptible (ἄφθαρτος). “Because of this God is God, and all other things after him are created and corruptible.” This idea is the Platonic premise that what has a beginning must have an end. The world or anything else is not God and continues to exist only by God’s will—only God is without beginning and end. The dependence on Plato then continues in the same vein,

Hence there are not many things which are unbegotten. For if there was difference between them, you could search and not find the difference, but after sending the intellect always to the infinite, you would become weary and take your stand on the one unbegotten, and say that this one is the cause of all things. Did such things escape the notice of Plato and Pythagoras, the wise men who became just like a wall and a bulwark to our philosophy?

66 Dial. 8.
67 Dial. 3.
68 Dial. 5.4 ὅ θεός καὶ διὰ τούτο θεός ἐστί, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πάντα μετὰ τούτου γεννητὰ καὶ ἄφθαρτα.
69 Plato, Tim. 52.
71 Dial. 5.6 ὅθεν οὐδὲ πολλὰ ἐστὶ τὰ ἄγεννητα· εἰ γὰρ διαφόρα τις ἦν εἰς αὐτοῖς, οὐκ ἂν εὕρεις ἀναζητῶν τὸ αἰτίον τῆς διαφορᾶς, ἀλλ’, ἐπὶ δὲποιον ἄλτη τὴν διάνοιαν πέμπει, ἐπὶ ἐνὸ ποτε στήσῃ ἄγεννητον καὶ τούτο φήσεις ἀπάντων αἰτίων, ἴ ταύτα ἔλαβε, ἰδίᾳ ἐγώ, Πλάτωνα καὶ Πυθαγόρας, σοφοὺς ἄνδρας, οἱ ὠσπερ τείχος ἤμιν καὶ ἔρεισμα φιλοσοφίας ἐξεγένετο;
Here, Justin describes God as the First Cause upon whom all else is dependent. The argument that God is the First Cause of all things had been stated in its simplest form by both Plato and Aristotle. Justin takes this concept and appropriates it to his understanding of the Christian God.

b. Post-Conversion

In piecing together Justin’s post-conversion understanding of God it is necessary to proceed from his Middle Platonism. It is not difficult to maintain that a complete intellectual break from a previous world-view is practically impossible—regardless of whether the retention of certain ideas is intentional or unintentional. When Justin accepted Christianity as the true philosophy he did so from the position of one influenced by the Platonism of his day. It would therefore be understandable if certain Middle Platonic categories of thought manifested themselves in certain areas of Justin’s thought. Most scholars have come to the conclusion that there was some retention of Platonic categories of thought following Justin’s conversion.

The Platonism of which this speaks, however, is not the Platonism of an earlier age, but that of Middle Platonism. The period of Middle Platonic philosophy

---

72 While Justin does not necessarily employ the term “First Cause,” the concept is definitely present. Note the text quoted in the passage above (Dial. 5.6) where Justin states that the “unbegotten” is the “cause (αἰτιός) of all things.” See also Dial. 3.5, “That which always has the same manner and existence and is the cause (αἰτιός) of all other things—this indeed is God.”


was an eclectic blend found in those philosophers who wrote before the Neo-Platonic philosopher Plotinus, and exhibit an important debt to Plato. F. Copleston calls the period to which Middle Platonism belongs the second major phase of Hellenistic-Roman Philosophy. During this time,

Eclecticism on the one hand and skepticism on the other hand continue into the second period (from about the middle of the first century BC to the middle of the third century AD), but this period is characterized by a return to philosophical "orthodoxy." Great interest is taken in the founders of the Schools, their lives, works and doctrines, and this tendency to philosophical "orthodoxy" is a counterpart to the continuing eclecticism. But the interest in the past was also fruitful in scientific investigation, e.g. in editing the works of the old philosophers, commenting on them and interpreting them.

The era of Middle Platonism was a time marked by a weakening in the original creative thought of Plato. The change can be seen in three distinct ways:

1. It was an era of skepticism in the Academy;
2. It was an era of commentaries and introductions to both Plato and Aristotle which corroded the dogmatism and anti-conformity so essential to the Platonic and Aristotelian schools and gave way to the teaching of transmitted doctrine;
3. It was an era of syncretism.

These three changes combined in Justin’s era to form what has come to be known as Middle Platonism.

The main beliefs of Middle Platonism included an insistence on Divine transcendence, a theory of intermediary beings, and a belief in mysticism. The Middle Platonists devoted much time to studying the dialogues of Plato which resulted in a reverence for his person and actual words. Consequently, there arose a tendency to stress the differences between Platonism and other philosophies. Thus, the syncretism and the movement toward philosophical “orthodoxy” was in obvious
conflict. The result of the conflict was that the movement did not represent the character of a unitary whole. In fact, different thinkers amalgamated various elements in different ways. Thus,

Middle Platonism is accordingly Middle Platonism; that is to say, it bears the mark of a transition stage: it is only in Neo-Platonism that anything like a real synthesis and fusion of the various currents and tendencies can be found. Neo-Platonism is thus like the sea, to which the various contributing rivers are flowing in and their waters are at length mingled. 80

Many scholars agree that the best example of Middle Platonism in Justin’s day can be found in the second century philosopher Albinus. 81 Albinus distinguished the πρῶτος θεός, νοῦς, and ψυχή. 82 The πρῶτος θεός is unmoved (Aristotle) but is not mover. Since the πρῶτος θεός is unmoved but not mover, it operates through the Νοῦς or World-Intellect. 83 Between God and the Platonic Ideas are the star-gods and others, οἱ γεννητοὶ θεοί. In his fusion of Platonic and Aristotelian elements Albinus helped to prepare the way for Neo-Platonism.

Middle Platonism had a strong tendency towards theology which gave it a strong affinity with Christianity in the second century. 84 Whereas Plato’s central

---

79 Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1/2.195.
80 Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1/2.196. See also, Norris, God and World in Early Christian Theology, 8.
82 The following description of Albinus’ Middle Platonism is dependent on Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1/2.199-200.
83 G. B. Kerford (“Logos,” in The Encyclopedia of Philosophy, 5.83-84) explains that νοῦς and λόγος both have a similar background understanding in philosophy as the rational governing principle of the universe. The logos doctrine of Heraclitus combines three ideas: our human thought about the universe, the rational structure of the universe itself, and the source of that rational structure. To Heraclitus, the logos as source of rationality in the universe was an immanent principle, neither conscious nor intelligent. Anaxagoras took this same type of principle and called it nous and not logos. The identification of logos and nous was perhaps first made in the pseudo-Platonic Epinomis 986c4, although Plato had treated the two terms as meaning very nearly the same thing in his account of the human soul in the Republic. See also, Origen of Alexandria, “Dialogue with Heraclides,” in H. Chadwick and J. E. L. Oulton (eds.), Alexandrian Christianity (2 vols.; Library of Christian Classics; London: SCM, 1954) 2.430-455.
metaphysical theme was the doctrine of Ideas,\textsuperscript{85} for Middle Platonists, like Plutarch, it was God.\textsuperscript{86} Albinus shows that Middle Platonists identified the Demiurge of Timaeus with the Supreme God, who is thought of as Nous and the sum of Ideas.\textsuperscript{87}

When the Platonism of Justin is discussed, therefore, it must rest on the understanding that it is not the earlier "orthodox" Platonism, but rather the Middle Platonism of the second century CE. It is quite clear that, even in the Dialogue, Justin still displays some affinity to this philosophy, but not to the extent that it dilutes the Christian message. This can be seen in Justin's description and understanding of God.

Justin appropriates to Christianity the Middle Platonic concept of God as the First Cause or Unmoved Mover in two ways in the Dialogue. First, in his descriptions of God it can be seen that Justin has retained, and even expanded on these concepts. Because God is unbegotten there has never been, nor will there ever be any other God except the one who created and formed the universe.\textsuperscript{88} He asserts that God is immutable, benevolent, prescient, needful of nothing, just, and good.\textsuperscript{89} These are all concepts which inherently speak not only of God's supremacy as First Cause, but they also speak of God's character as good and just.

The second way in which Justin uses the concept of an unbegotten God as First Cause or Unmoved Mover is in stating that because of this everything exists or occurs according to his will or purposes. In this respect, God is said to have foreknowledge of future events and that he prepares beforehand what individuals deserve.\textsuperscript{90} For example, in explaining the incarnation of the Logos and the creation of Adam and Eve, Justin states that God foretold these events would occur and that they

\textsuperscript{85} Plato, Phaedr. 247E; Tim. 27D; 28A.
\textsuperscript{86} Plutarch, de E. ap Delph. 19, 20.
\textsuperscript{87} Albinus, Didask. 10.
\textsuperscript{88} Dial. 11.1; 34.8; 116.3.
\textsuperscript{89} Dial. 23.2.
\textsuperscript{90} Dial. 16.3.
happened according to his purpose. Thus, if God wills it, nothing is impossible for him. More specifically, the place of Jesus in God’s plan and will is of importance to Justin. In explaining the meaning of Ps 22 to Trypho Justin asserts that “the Father decreed that the one whom he had begotten should be put to death, but only after he had grown into manhood and proclaimed the word which went out from him.” In fact, throughout chaps. 97-107 Justin demonstrates from Ps 22 that the life, death and resurrection of Jesus was according to the will and plan of God. And this, in turn, is ultimately in accordance with the divine plan of redemption for humankind.

Justin’s understanding of God is that he, as the Supreme Being, is in control and that all things work according to his will and purpose. In Justin’s mind, therefore, revelation of his character and plan flow from this God. It is in this understanding of God that the epistemological question becomes relevant to Justin’s understanding of revelation. In philosophy, epistemology is concerned with the nature and source of knowledge. It asks, “How do we know what we know?” In a very real sense this is Justin’s concern in the Dialogue with Trypho.

It was also from Plato that Justin retained the idea that God is the Maker and Father of all, a concept manifestly biblical as well (Gen 1). In fact, Justin’s most frequent description of God is as Father and Maker of all things—terms which link fatherhood with creation. Even though Justin usually couples these terms with a biblical quotation, they are most likely ultimately derived from Plato. In the Republic (506E) he speaks of the Form of the Good as “Father,” and in the Timaeus (28C) he

---

91 Dial. 84.
92 Dial. 102.2. μετά γὰρ τὸ κηρύξατε αὐτῶν τὸν παρ’ αὐτῶν λόγον ἀνδρωθέντα ὁ πατὴρ ἑαυτῶν ἐκκυκλεῖ ὁ ἐγεγεννηκέλ.
93 Dial. 103; 120.1.
94 See Osborn, Justin Martyr, 17-20; Plato, Tim. 33D.
95 Dial. 7.3; 56.1; 60.2, 3; 117.5.
Chapter I—Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho

describes the creator as "the Maker and Father of this Universe." The creator of the world is its Maker and its Father. After Plato the concept of divine fatherhood can be traced through Middle Platonism. Thus, Justin makes use of it because it is common in his day.

Another example of the appropriation of Middle Platonic concepts in Justin's theology can be seen in his understanding of God being unbegotten—that God has neither beginning nor end. In Justin's appropriation of this philosophical concept, however, it is clear that he has used it to strengthen the Christian understanding of God.

2. Trypho's Judaism

The type of Judaism represented by Trypho has been debated for many years. Basically, two opposing schools of thought have been offered. One school of thought presents Trypho's interpretations of the Bible and the Law as closely resembling those of the rabbinic tradition and being completely dependent on his teachers. The second school of thought views Trypho as a fully Hellenized Jew and minimizes the rabbinic elements stressed by the former school. is representative of this view. believed that Trypho was a part of Hellenized Judaism of the diaspora which long had little contact with rabbinism. It was the Judaism of the diaspora which was the foundation of the spread of Christianity

96 See also Plato, Tim. 50-51. πατέρα τοῦ παντός
97 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 20-27.
98 Dial. 5.4; 5.6; 6.2; 114.3.
99 This debate is succinctly summarized by E. R. Goodenough, Jewish Symbols in the Graeco-Roman Period Vol. 1: The Archeological Evidence From Palestine (New York: Pantheon, 1953) 42-44. See also Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 33-56 where these two opposing schools of thought are identified as Judaism proper and Hellenistic Judaism, or Palestinian Judaism and Alexandrian Judaism.
because the rabbis gradually withdrew from relations with the world. But by no means did all of these Jews become Christians. Concerning Freimann's understanding of this Judaism Goodenough comments,

Many of them had a deep commitment to the Jewish group, and even though they had a philosophic training like Philo, they wanted as far as possible to observe the ceremonial law dear to their ancestors, and could have no use whatever for a gospel which preached the end of the Law and a crucified Messiah. It was these Jews who became the chief opponents of Christianity in the Roman world, and they attacked Christianity on broad hellenistic grounds rather than on a narrow Pharisaic level.\(^\text{102}\)

Goodenough states that he has much sympathy with this view but that it suffers from putting too wide of a cleft between "hellenistic" and "rabbinic" Judaism. Therefore, these are not two sharply defined categories into which all Jews should fit. Justin simply tried to reproduce the attitude and arguments of the Jews he knew and this is why the evidence must be taken from the *Dialogue* itself to ascertain the type of Judaism to which Trypho adhered.

If this direction is pursued one can deduce from the *Dialogue* that Trypho was a Jew who fled from the war in Palestine,\(^\text{103}\) and now resided in Corinth.\(^\text{104}\) He obviously had philosophic training, for upon his chance meeting with Justin he started the conversation because he was taught in Argos by Corinthus the Socratic to converse with anyone wearing the philosopher's cloak, like Justin.\(^\text{105}\) Thus, from the first chapter of the *Dialogue* we know not only that Trypho was a Jew, but one with philosophic training, in other words, he was a Hellenistic Jew. But even in light of the probability that Trypho is a Hellenistic Jew, Justin's arguments are constantly made

\(^{102}\) Goodenough, *Jewish Symbols in the Graeco-Roman Period*, 44.

\(^{103}\) *Dial.* 1.3; 9.3; 16.2; 18.3. In all probability, the war referred to is Bar Kochba, 132-135 CE.

\(^{104}\) *Dial.* 1.3.

\(^{105}\) *Dial.* 1.2.
with reference to the Jewish scriptures, a fact which Trypho recognizes and appreciates.  

Trypho is often presented as one who is not an independent thinker, dependent entirely upon his teachers for his understanding of Judaism. To a certain degree this is correct, for in many instances Trypho expresses what he believes to be the collective Jewish doctrine on a matter. But to state, as some do, that Trypho was entirely dependent upon his teachers may be overstating the case. In fact, there is evidence to the contrary. At one point in the Dialogue Trypho and his companions express a dissatisfaction with the Jewish interpretation of a scriptural passage. He also states that he has read the Gospels and in the very act of conversing with Justin has disobeyed his teachers. Further, even though Trypho often clearly disagrees with Justin, he is not afraid to show his agreement on some matters. This assent on Trypho’s part is most likely due to his concern for being informed, a concern that appears to fly in the face of his teachers.

Trypho’s Judaism has been expressed by some scholars as unclassifiable and difficult to define. But these sharply defined categories of Hellenistic and Rabbinic Judaism are perhaps too sharply delineated. The mixture of philosophy, metaphysical and mystical allegory along with bits of halakoth that were accepted or created by the

---

106 Dial. 56.16; 80.1.
107 See e.g. passages where Trypho makes reference to his beliefs as those of a group (“we”; “we Jews”; “our belief”; “we doubt”), Dial. 46; 49; 56; 64; 79; 89; 90; 94; 142.
108 See e.g., J. Nilson, “To Whom is Justin’s Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?” TS 38 (1977) 541.
109 Dial. 9.4.
110 Dial. 10.2.
111 Dial. 38.1.
112 See e.g., Dial. 36; 39; 49; 57; 60; 63; 65; 67; 77; 89; 123; 130.
113 Dial. 87.1. “Do not now suppose that I am endeavoring, by asking what I do ask, to overturn the statements you have made; but I wish to receive information respecting those very points about which I now inquire.” Μὴ με λοιπὸν ὑπολαμβάνει, ἀνατρέπειν πειράμενον τὰ ὑπὸ σοῦ λεγόμενα, προθετεθαί διὰ τοῦ προθαμασία, ἀλλὰ βούλεθαί μανθάνειν περὶ τούτων αὐτῶν ἃν ἐν ἐρωτῷ.
114 See also Dial. 9.2 where Trypho is unwilling to participate in the rude behavior of his companions. Rather, than laughing and shouting rudely at Justin Trypho appeals to Justin to remain and continue the conversation on the controversial issues.
rabbis is perhaps exactly what we should expect Hellenized Judaism to have been. It is quite probable that Trypho is valuable in that he shows that no single "norm" or "orthodoxy" dominated Judaism in the diaspora. The goal of historians to set up one single point of view for all Hellenized Judaism serves only to violate the complexities of the data. Perhaps the chief value of Justin's Trypho is that we get a complex picture of the Judaism that he represented. Trypho is thus quite typical of diaspora Judaism not because of the specific points of Hellenism or legalism that he represents, but rather, because his Judaism is a mixture of Hellenistic and halachic traditions.  

3. Apophatic Theology

As we now return to our original question of a common starting point between Trypho's Jewish conception of God and Justin's Christian conception of God we find that there are, in fact, commonalities between the two. In fact, "the contacts between Judaico-Christian thought and Hellenistic philosophy were much closer than had been supposed." These commonalities converge in what has been called apophatic theology. When dealing with the concept of God in the second century the central issue is God's transcendence and the language used to express it.

In his περὶ μυστικῆς θεολογίας (The Mystical Theology), Pseudo-Dionysius indicates two methods of speaking about God. He made a distinction

---

[119] The history of Pseudo-Dionysius, or Dionysius the Pseudo-Areopagite, (c. 500) is a fascinating one. This is the name given to the author of a corpus of theological writings (Corpus Areopagiticum) to which the Monophysites appealed at an assembly in the year 532. It seems as though the Monophysites believed the writings to be from Dionysius the Areopagite who was converted by Paul as recorded in Acts 17:34. Through the efforts of many scholars, the works of the Corpus have conclusively been found not to be of the first century. On this see, H. Koch, "Der pseudo-epigraphische Charakter der dionysischen Schriften," Theologische Quartalschrift 77 (1895) 353-421; J. Stiglmayr, "Der Neuplatoniker Proclus als Vorlage des sog. Dionysius Areopagita in der Lehre vom Übel," Historisches Jahrbuch 16 (1895) 253-273. For more on Pseudo-Dionysius see, R. F. Hathaway,
between what he called κατάφασις and απόφασις. At its most basic level, the
kataphatic (or affirmative) approach believes that we can attain some knowledge of
God, even though it may be limited, by attributing the created order to him as source.
Apophatic (or negative) affirms God's absolute transcendence and unknowability to
such an extent that no affirmative concepts may be applied to him. Both ways take
creation as their starting point, yet end up at either end of a pole. Kataphatic asserts
that since God is creator, he can be known through his creation. Apophatic, on the
other end of the pole, asserts that God is beyond creation, that he cannot be known in
any way through it.

Daniélou has shown that Hellenistic Judaism and Middle Platonism of the
second century both exhibit a sudden and simultaneous emergence of negative
phrases (apophatic) for describing God. Thus, theology is defined by terms applied
to the divine that emphasize his "otherness" such as God being timeless, invisible,
impassible etc. The importance of Daniélou's study for our purposes lies in his
detailed comparison of God's transcendence in Hellenistic Judaism and Middle
Platonism, thus corresponding to both Trypho's understanding and Justin's
understanding of God. In the following, it will be clearly seen that there is tremendous
overlap in both concepts of God. For it is in "the development of the theology of

Hierarchical and Definition of Order in the Letters of Pseudo-Dionysius (The Hague, 1969); A Louth,
120 "What has actually to be said about the Cause of everything is this. Since it is the Cause of all
beings, we should posit and ascribe to it all the affirmations we make in regards to human beings, and,
more appropriately, we should negate all these affirmations, since it surpasses all being. Now we
should not conclude that the negations are simply the opposites of the affirmations, but rather that the
cause of all is considerably prior to this, beyond privations, beyond every denial, beyond every
assertion" (Myst. 1000B). See also, D. Carabine, The Unknown God. Negative Theology in the Platonic
Tradition: Plato to Eriugena (Louvain Theological & Pastoral Monographs 19; Louvain: Peeters
121 Daniélou, Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture, 323-333. See also, D. W. Palmer, "Atheism,
Apologetic, and Negative Theology in the Greek Apologists of the Second Century," VC 37 (1983)
234-259.
God's transcendence, that the influence of Hellenistic Judaism is...at its most pronounced.\(^{122}\)

There were three contexts in which the vocabulary of negative theology was elaborated which all have links to Hellenistic Judaism.\(^{123}\) The first of these three contexts was the polemic against idolatry.\(^{124}\) Within Hellenistic Judaism there was a large amount of this type of literature. This also constitutes the setting of the work of the second century Apologists, who, in this respect are dependent upon Hellenistic Judaism. In this polemic both the Jewish and the Christian writers were seeking to establish opposition to things like idolatry, mythology, astrology, and demonology by asserting the spiritual, unique, and uncreated nature of God.\(^{125}\)

The second context of this negative theology was Philo.\(^{126}\) Daniélou calls Philo "the first theologian to treat fully the divine transcendence."\(^{127}\) As time progressed, the need to demonstrate that God was spirit, in opposition to paganism, was not enough. It soon became necessary to prove God's transcendence in order to combat philosophic rationalism. Philo made a monumental contribution to the creation of a vocabulary for use in negative statements about God. He did this either by adapting to the subject of God terms originally used for other purposes, or by inventing new ones. Philo used three categories to describe God apophatically. First, for Philo, God is "the one who cannot be circumscribed" (\(\nu\varepsilon\pi\varepsilon\nu\pi\varepsilon\gamma\nu\alpha\phi\varphi\sigma\)).\(^{128}\) Second, Philo uses terms which assert that God transcends any name given to him

---

\(^{122}\) Daniélou, *Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture*, 324.

\(^{123}\) Daniélou, *Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture*, 324.

\(^{124}\) Daniélou, *Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture*, 324-326.

\(^{125}\) Daniélou goes on to cite some examples of the kind of language used by these writers in this context, pp. 324-326.


\(^{128}\) De Sacrif. 59; 124.
Third is the term which Philo did the most to enhance, ἀκαταληπτός. The final context in which the vocabulary of apophatic was elaborated relates to certain epithets which stress the unapproachableness of God. These terms originate from Palestinian apocalyptic. Also in this category may be included certain Paulinisms.

We can see, therefore, that negative theology in the second century arose from the influence of Hellenistic Judaism. This means that both Justin and Trypho would have used and understood this type of vocabulary. Similarly, there are other terms that derive from Middle Platonism. Certainly the development of apophatic in Middle Platonism owed a great deal to the Jewish sense of God's transcendence. But nonetheless, this Middle Platonism influences the Apologists also, and has left discernible traces in their vocabulary as well.

Justin sees no conflict in this description of God in comparison with what he believed Trypho's understanding of God to be, influenced as it was by Hellenistic Judaism. The essential point in both understandings is that God is sovereign in carrying out his will and his purposes. Daniéelou has shown that many of the terms used in the apophatic theology of the second century were understood in the same manner by both Hellenistic Jews and by Christian Middle Platonists such as Justin. It is quite reasonable, therefore, for Justin to compare his understanding of God with the Trypho's understanding of God.

129 De somn. 1, 67. 130 De somn. 1, 67; De mut. nom. 10; De post. Caini 169. 131 Daniéelou, Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture, 327-328. 132 E.g., ἀνεξήκοντας, "untraceable" (Rom 11:33; Eph 3:8); ἀνεξεύρητος, "inscrutable" (Rom 11:33); ἄναπρός, "unapproachable" (1 Tim 6:18). Daniéelou continues on to cite examples of the terms used in second century writers. 133 Daniéelou, Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture, 329-333. 134 Daniéelou, Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture, 322-333.
In light of Daniélou’s informative study the question posed earlier becomes somewhat clearer. The question concerned the accuracy of Justin’s statement of whether the doctrine of God in Christianity and Judaism is the same. When taken in the context of Trypho’s Hellenistic Judaism and Justin’s Middle Platonism, it appears that Justin is making an accurate statement. Both Trypho’s and Justin’s understanding of the nature of God is comparable.\footnote{Carabine (The Unknown God, 6-7) stresses the fact that both \textit{kataphatic} and \textit{apophatic} theology belong together since they are two aspects of the one divine truth of revealed religion: God is both hidden and present, known and unknown, transcendent and immanent. "Any failure to take both aspects of this simultaneous truth into account in a discussion of the divine nature could result in a distorted view" (p. 6). G.L. Prestige (God in Patristic Thought [London: SPCK, 1956] 4) emphasizes the fact that negative forms are enriched with a wealth of positive association. Thus, "when it is asserted that God is free from various limitations and controls, the effect is to assert his entire freedom to be Himself and act according to His own nature and will." This fits well with Justin’s negative theology. His \textit{apophatic} is balanced well by his \textit{kataphatic}. As will be seen below, his negative theology proceeds into positive theology because of the incarnation of the Logos, which, in turn, has tremendous importance in his understanding of revelation. This will be evident as the chapter progresses.}{135}

B. Knowledge of God and Revelation

If we now relate Justin’s concept of God with the conversation between the old man and Justin, we can see that because of it the old man can enter into the epistemological question with relative ease. Justin’s definition of philosophy is that it was knowledge of all that which exists.\footnote{Dial. 3. For a fuller treatment of Justin’s understanding of philosophy see below pp. 125-145.}{136} But in Justin’s concept of God existence was dependent on a personal God as the First Cause, the Unmoved Mover, or as the Unbegotten and Incorruptible. Everything which exists does so because of him and through his will. Existence was dependent on the sovereign God. Therefore, in defining philosophy as knowledge of that which exists, Justin was postulating a definition which had the knowledge of God at the very center. Granted, his concept of God had changed from Middle Platonic to Christian, but this does not negate the fact that, as a philosopher, he felt it was his task to seek knowledge of God. This is what he was concerned with before he was a Christian in his philosophical travels, and this
is also what he was concerned with in his acceptance of Christianity as the true philosophy. In actuality, Justin was defining philosophy as knowledge of God.

In defining philosophy as knowledge of God (or a search for knowledge of God) Justin has given a strong indicator concerning his view of revelation. When Justin recounts his discussion with the old man to Trypho he does so in order to show Trypho where he attains knowledge about God, which is the goal of his philosophy. The remainder of the Dialogue consists of Justin’s explaining this knowledge of God, his concept of truth. How this knowledge of God is attained, therefore, is revelation. This will be made clear in the following sections concerning the witnesses to revelation which Justin presents. The following sections will therefore answer the question: How and where does God reveal knowledge about himself and his plans or will?

IV. Witnesses to Revelation

A. The Prophets

In light of the relationship between revelation and epistemology the old man expands on his initial request for Justin to define philosophy. He asks, “How do you define God?” This question is entirely legitimate for he understood that, as a Middle Platonist, Justin was concerned with knowledge of God. God was the First Cause of creation, therefore he was also the First Cause of knowledge about himself. The old man’s position is that only those who have seen God or heard from someone

---

137 As will be explained below in this chapter, Justin’s concept of revelation is connected with epistemology—the nature and source of knowledge about God. This knowledge cannot be attained through philosophy. The sources of this knowledge are the Prophets and the memoirs of the Apostles. The Prophets are witnesses to revelation because they saw and heard God, thus qualifying them to communicate knowledge about God and the incarnation of the Logos. The memoirs of the Apostles are witnesses to revelation for two reasons: First, they bear witness to that which the Prophets foretold and; Second, they saw and heard the ultimate revelation of God—the incarnate Logos. The Apostles witnessed that which the Prophets foretold.

138 Dial. 3.5 Θεόν δὲ σὺ τι καλεῖς;
who has seen God can know him. 139 Because the philosophers have done neither they do not qualify. Justin's response is to defer to agreement with Plato who states that God cannot be perceived in the same way as other things. He is to be perceived with the mind alone. 140

Justin proceeds to give a Middle Platonic understanding of how God is known. 141 The mind is thus given a special power to see the very being who is the cause of everything (God). This power is given to souls who are well disposed because of their affinity to and desire of seeing him. This is clearly in the tradition of the above mentioned representative of Middle Platonic philosophy, Albinus. In his Didaskalikos, Albinus states that God,

...is ineffable and apprehensible by the mind alone, as has been said, because He is neither genus nor species nor specific difference. We cannot predicate of Him evil (for it is unholy to utter such a thing) or good (for in this case He would have to participate in something else, namely goodness). Nor does He experience anything indifferent (for this is not in harmony of our notion of Him). We cannot predicate of God qualities since His perfection is not the result of having received qualities, nor can we say He lacks qualities since He has not been deprived of any quality the befits Him. God is neither a part of something else nor a whole having parts; He is not the same as anything nor different from anything, for nothing can be predicated of Him which would separate Him from other things. He does not move nor is He moved. 142

The old man refutes this idea and concludes that the philosophers who propound such a doctrine know nothing. 143

In refuting the ideas of these philosophers the old man refuted Justin's way of acquiring knowledge about God. Justin realizes this and asks, "What teacher should one avail oneself to, or where can one be aided if these ones [the philosophers] do not

139 Dial. 3.5-7.
140 Dial. 3.7.
141 Dial. 4.1. See above, pp. 53-55. See also Norris, God and World in Early Christian Theology, 13-32; Van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 69-118.
143 Dial. 4-6.
know what the truth is?" The truth which Justin inquires about is the knowledge of God. The old man’s reply is worth reproducing at length.

There were some men who existed long before the time of all those reputed philosophers, men who are ancient, blessed, just, and loved by God, speaking by the spirit of God and prophesying things which were about to take place which, indeed, are now taking place. We call these men Prophets. They alone both saw and announced the truth to men, neither fearing nor reverencing anyone, and not overcome with a desire for glory. But they alone, being filled with the holy spirit, communicated that which they heard and saw. Their writings are still now unchanged, and the one reading them is greatly aided concerning the beginning and end of all things, and that which the philosopher needs to know, believing these things. For they did not give proof at that time of their words, for they were above all proof, being higher witnesses to the truth. And these things which have happened and are now happening force you to agree with what they are saying. Indeed, because of the powers which they displayed they are worthy of belief, since they glorified God, the creator and father of all, and also announced the Christ, his son.

Within the context of epistemology several things merit attention in this quotation. First, the Prophets existed “long before” all the philosophers. Second, they predicted things that would take place in the future, these things were consequently taking place in Justin’s era through the Son. Third, the filling (πνεύμα) of the Holy Spirit was key in what they saw and heard. It was through this filling that the Prophets were able to see and hear the truth about God. Fourth, the truth about God that the Prophets saw and heard through the filling of the Holy Spirit was communicated to...
men. And fifth, the communication of the Prophets is still extant. These are the reasons that the Prophets know God. They are in the position to communicate this to others because they fulfil the old man’s requirements.

In the above quotation the issue of epistemology has come full circle. Knowledge about God and his truth cannot be known through the mind alone. If we recall Justin’s concept of deity this becomes much clearer. God, being outside of our existence and wholly other cannot be known through the usual means (the mind alone). He must be known through someone who has had access to him. The philosophers do not know God but the Prophets do because they had this special access through the filling of the Holy Spirit. The Prophets look forward to the Logos incarnate. It was this philosophy that gripped Justin. Dialogue 8 shows that Justin accepted the old man’s arguments concerning the truth and knowledge of God being apprehendable through the Prophets. The knowledge contained therein was a knowledge that regarded the salvation of souls and a knowledge of the Christ of God.¹⁴⁷ It is this knowledge that leads one to enjoy a happy life.¹⁴⁸

Justin’s acceptance of the old man’s argument changed the way he acquired knowledge. Because the philosophers had no knowledge of God, Justin turned to those who witnessed and predicted his coming in the Logos, the Prophets. The

---

¹⁴⁷ Justin’s concept of Salvation is discussed below, pp. 96-105.
¹⁴⁸ Dial. 8.2. Philosophical discussion of the concept of “happiness” is associated primarily with the names Jeremy Bentham and John Stuart Mill. Mill attempted to combine two traditions of thought about happiness—the identification of happiness and pleasure, what we may call “hedonism.” This can be contrasted with what has been called the “eudaimonistic” conception of happiness. The word comes from the Greek eudaimonia, literally “having a good guardian spirit,” i.e., the state of having an objectively desirable life which was universally agreed by ancient philosophical theory and popular culture to be the supreme human good. Thus, the term eudaimonia refers not so much to a psychological state as to the objective character of a person’s life. The classic account of eudaimonia is found in Aristotle who emphasizes that it has to do with the quality of one’s life as a whole. Happiness is to be identified above all with the fulfillment of one’s human potentialities which are located in the exercise of reason. See Aristotle, The Nicomachean Ethics, Book I and X; R. J. Norman, “Happiness,” in T. Honderich (ed.), The Oxford Companion to Philosophy (Oxford/New York: Oxford University Press, 1995) 332-333; C. C. W. Taylor, “eudaimonia,” in The Oxford Companion to Philosophy, 252.
knowledge that the Prophets communicated was true and reliable because “they alone, being filled with the Holy Spirit, communicated that which they heard and saw.”\footnote{Dial. 7.1 σὺν ἡμῖν τὰ ἑαυτά ἠκούσαν καὶ εἶδον ἄγιον πληρωθέντες πνεύματι.} The knowledge which the Prophets communicated is said to be written down and still available for study.\footnote{Dial. 7.2.} And it is this communication from the Prophets upon which Justin places a great deal of weight for the acquisition of knowledge about God and his plan of salvation.

There is little doubt that Justin believed the writings of the Prophets to be a primary place from which to obtain knowledge about God. The culmination of the old man’s argument above was not simply that the Prophets were qualified to provide knowledge about God, but also that we have access to this knowledge in written form. The old man tells Justin that their writings (συγγράμματα) are still extant and can be read (ἐντυχόντα).\footnote{Dial. 7.2.} It is these writings to which Justin continuously refers. After his encounter with the old man Justin accepted the argument concerning the writings of the Prophets because Justin believed these to be a place to attain knowledge of God.

The entire focus of the Dialogue confirms that Justin has indeed understood the writings of the Prophets to contain knowledge about God because they witness to the coming of the Logos. In Dial. 8 Trypho explains to Justin that he does not think that Jesus is the long awaited Jewish messiah. He believes that Christians have simply believed a foolish rumor and have invented a messiah whom they blindly worship. Justin’s answer in Dial. 9 is that the Jews have been instructed by teachers who are ignorant of the meaning of scriptures. This is significant in setting the playing ground on which the following discussion will ensue, the interpretation of the scriptures and the importance of the Law.
Justin included the account of his conversion with the old man to show that the Prophets are integral in a proper understanding of God and his plan for salvation. This belief is made manifest through his constant use of and reference to OT scripture as the basis of his claims. So, following his claim that the Jewish teachers are ignorant of the true meaning of scripture he proceeds to support his arguments by using scripture. Thus, immediately in Dial. 11 Justin introduces the discussion concerning the obsolescence of the old Law and the superiority of the new Law with words from the Prophets Isaiah and Jeremiah. This method of argument is typical throughout the Dialogue. In so doing Justin makes clear the importance of the Prophets for the knowledge of God. "Their [the Prophets] writings are still now unchanged, and the one reading them is greatly aided concerning the beginning and end of all things, and that which the philosopher needs to know, believing these things." The things which the philosopher needs to know center around God. Thus, Justin is stating that things about God can be known through studying the Prophets and their witness to the Logos. In his presentation of truth to Trypho Justin thus attempts to convince him that he must disregard the teachings of the rabbis and apply himself to the study of the Prophets, for they possess a special knowledge.

The knowledge that the Prophets possessed was, in Justin’s view, knowledge that is accessible to all because it was written down, communicated to humanity. But the knowledge that is now accessible was not always so. Because of this Justin often couches statements in terms of making something that was previously hidden or

152 While it is Justin’s particular interpretation that is important for his understanding of the OT scriptures as Christian, the point still stands that he attempts to use the OT as the basis for his presentation. The specific issues of interpretation will be discussed below in Chapter 4.
153 Instances of this method of argument are so numerous that only a few will be listed as exemplary. See e.g., Dial. 14; 16; 22; 28; 34; 43; 58; 80.
154 Dial. 7.2 αὐτῶν έτι καὶ νῦν διαμένει, καί έστιν ἐνυπότα τούτως πληίστων ὑφεληθήναι καί περί τελους καί ὧν χρή εἰδέναι τὸν φιλόσοφον, πιστεύσαντα ἐκείνους.
155 Dial. 112.
misunderstood more clear. For example, he explains that the mysterious meaning of the rites of the external Law were "revealed" or "displayed" (ἐπιδεικνύμι) through the Prophets.\(^\text{156}\) Ostensibly, the rite of the external Law existed only for the Jews and prefigured a greater purpose.\(^\text{157}\) But through a study of the Prophets it can be shown what the true meaning of these rites were.\(^\text{158}\) A knowledge of the previously hidden plan of God can therefore be attained.

Many times Justin refers to various prophecies which "show" or "display" (ἀποδεικνύμι) that something has occurred or will occur.\(^\text{159}\) In other words, Justin uses scripture to prove the attainment of some kind of knowledge. Further, Justin often describes scripture as "making something clear" (δηλώ) through a Prophet.\(^\text{160}\) In each case the item that was made clear was knowledge that was previously hidden or misunderstood. The same can be said in passages where scripture is claimed by Justin to "make manifest" or "make clear" (φανερός, φαίνω, φανέρως, ἐκφαίνω) events which were misunderstood or hidden.\(^\text{161}\)

The point here need not be pressed. As any cursory reading of the Dialogue with Trypho will attest, Justin believed knowledge about the plan of God could be ascertained from the Prophets. This plan centered on the incarnate Logos. The Prophets possessed a special knowledge because they had seen and heard the truth about God. This knowledge is to be seen as a witness to revelation for three reasons.

\(^{156}\) Dial. 24.

\(^{157}\) Dial. 11.

\(^{158}\) It should be noted here that this is only half of the argument. The study of the Prophets was accomplished through decidedly Christian tradition. Therefore, it was not necessarily the Prophets alone, but rather the Prophets through the lens of Christian tradition. See pp. 148-149; 157-160.

\(^{159}\) See e.g., Dial. 39.5; 39.8; 43.1; 54.2; 59.1; 72.3; 85.4; 92.6; 99.1.

\(^{160}\) See e.g., Dial. 62.1; 75.1; 75.3; 85.6; 99.3.

\(^{161}\) See e.g., Dial. 56.12; 70.4; 89.1; 90.3.
1) In personal revelation one must choose to reveal oneself.\(^{162}\) Thus it is through the *Logos* that God has chosen to reveal himself.\(^ {163}\) In Justin’s estimation philosophy is properly concerned with the knowledge of God. Therefore, because the Prophets attained their knowledge of God from him,\(^{164}\) it is God who chose to reveal himself. In other words, the knowledge about God came from God—it was revealed by him.

2) The knowledge that was revealed to the Prophets was not self-evident. It was not knowledge that could be attained by the Prophets on their own. Because of the “otherness” of God only he can reveal himself. Thus, what God reveals about himself is knowledge that only he knows and is able to reveal. This is what necessitates the revelation. Just as God revealed the Law at Horeb, he also revealed the fact that the old Law would be surpassed and made obsolete. But still contained in the old Law were the hidden precepts of the new Law.\(^ {165}\) Thus, revelation was a knowledge of the plan (οϒικονομιά) of God.

3) The Prophets saw and heard what they communicated to humankind. This gave the Prophets a qualification that the philosophers did not possess. No one could claim to communicate knowledge of God that was audibly and observationally received except the Prophets. This, in turn, allowed those who heard and read the Prophets to communicate this same knowledge based on their qualifications.

---


\(^{163}\) As I explain below, the Logos is God and this is the ground and climax of revelation. See pp. 168-178.

\(^{164}\) *Dial. 7.*

\(^{165}\) The old Law is witness to revelation because it contained “hidden precepts.” These hidden precepts are discussed in detail below, pp. 224-233.
B. The Memoirs of the Apostles

References and allusions to OT scripture are plentiful in the Dialogue. But it also contains numerous references and allusions to written documents that are not found in OT scripture. Even though references to these other documents are not as frequent as those to the Prophets it is clear that Justin placed a great deal of importance on these documents as well.

Following his conversion to Christianity Justin makes the above mentioned appeal to the Prophets as a place to gain knowledge about God. The appeal, however, does not end at the Prophets. He also states that his “heart was set on fire” and that an affection for the “friends of Christ” took hold of him. This addition cannot be a description of the Prophets because Justin is clearly differentiating between Prophets and friends of Christ. Later in the same chapter, Trypho accuses Justin of following “worthless men” who propagate false teachings. In Trypho’s expression the same holds true because it is difficult to accept that a Jew would call the Prophets worthless men expounding false teachings.

G. Stanton believes this is a reference to the Apostles. One would be hard pressed not to agree with him. The Apostles do figure quite prominently in certain places throughout the Dialogue as followers of Jesus who preach the same message as the Prophets. In one instance Justin even states that the Prophets preached the gospel of Jesus and proclaimed him to all men. This is a significant description in light of the use of the terms “Gospel” and “Memoirs of the Apostles”.

166 A more detailed examination of the Memoirs of the Apostles as they relate to issues of the NT canon can be found below in Chapter 3.
167 Dial. 8.
169 See e.g. Dial. 42.1-2; 76.6; 88.3; 106.1; 109.1; 110.2; 119.6.
170 Dial. 136.3.
Justin uses the term εὐαγγέλιον (gospel) and its derivatives a total of four times in the Dialogue. One of the four has already been mentioned as a description of what the Prophets proclaimed.171 Dial. 51.2 states that part of John the Baptist’s prophetic ministry was preaching the gospel. The description of the gospel which follows is that the Kingdom of Heaven is imminent, that Jesus had to suffer, be crucified, and rise the third day, and that he would appear again to his disciples at the second advent. It is, therefore, not a great stretch to say that the Prophets preached the gospel, for this is Justin’s whole point in the argument from prophecy.172

The two remaining uses of εὐαγγέλιον differ from the ones above.

Trypho said… But I believe your precepts in the so-called Gospel are so wonderful and so great that no one is able to keep them for I have carefully read them.173

but also in the Gospel it is written that he [Jesus] said, “Everything has been handed over to me by the Father…”174

Here it is apparent that the references are to some sort of written document(s). Justin makes many appeals to the words of Jesus and proceeds to quote them.175 While these quotations aren’t explicitly stated to come from a written document, it is hard to conceive of Justin not obtaining these words of Jesus from a written document—especially in light of some of the detail included in them. In reading the Dialogue Justin makes many appeals to these words of Jesus and to events that occurred throughout his lifetime.176 It is natural to inquire about the source of these words and events.

171 Dial. 136.3.
172 For a discussion on Justin’s “Argument from Prophecy,” see below, pp. 145-160.
173 Dial. 10.2 οὕτως δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ λεγομένῳ εὐαγγελίῳ παραγγέλματα βασιλείας καὶ μεγάλα ἐπιστάματα ἐλαίαν, ὡς ὑπολαμβάνειν μηδένα δύνασθαι φυλάξαι αὐτά: ἐμοὶ γὰρ ἐμέλησεν ἐντυχέον αὐτοῖς
174 Dial. 100.1 καὶ ἐν τῷ εὐαγγελίῳ δὲ γέγραπται εἰπών: πάντα μοι παραδέδωται ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρός...
175 See e.g., Dial. 17.3-4; 35.2-3; 51.3; 76.3-6, 7; 81.4; 93.2; 96.3; 99.1-2; 100.1, 3; 103. 5; 105.5-6; 107.1; 115.6; 122.1; 125.1, 4.
176 See e.g., Dial. 35; 39; 78; 82.
Chapter I—Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho

The διαμενομενεύματα τῶν ἀποστόλων (Memoirs of the Apostles) appear to be the best explanation of the source of these words and events. Justin makes reference to the Memoirs in one concentrated section of the Dialogue a total of 13 times.\(^{177}\) These Memoirs were written documents which were composed by the Apostles and those who followed them. We know they are written because Justin quotes from them as written.\(^{178}\)

The cluster of references to the Memoirs of the Apostles found in Dial. 100-107 informs us that these written documents record the life of Jesus. From them we learn, among other things, that he is the Son of God, that he was silent before Pilate, that he sweat drops of blood, and that at his nativity a star arose. Much discussion has surrounded the question of locating exactly what these Memoirs are. While this is not the place for that type of discussion\(^{179}\) it must be stated that in all probability the Memoirs are the Synoptic Gospels (and possibly the Gospel of John).\(^{180}\)

More important for the purpose in this chapter is the connection that these Memoirs have with the prophecy of Ps 22. In each of these references to the Memoirs of the Apostles the phrase serves to quote, or refer to Christian writings which demonstrate that the prophecy of Ps 22 has been fulfilled in Jesus. Thus they are used

\(^{177}\) Dial. 100.4; 101.3; 102.5; 103.6; 104.1; 105.1, 5, 6; 106.1, 3, 4; 107.1.

\(^{178}\) Justin uses various formulas to introduce a quotation from the memoirs. Dial. 100.1 γέγραπται εἰτῶν, 103.3 ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἀποστόλων αὐτοῦ γέγραπται. 103.6 ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἀποστόλων γέγραπται. 104.1 ὅπερ καὶ τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἀποστόλων αὐτοῦ γέγραπται γενέμενον. 105.6 ταῦτα εἰρηκέναι ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι γέγραπται. 106.4 ἐν γέγραπται ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἀποστόλων αὐτοῦ. 107.1 γέγραπται ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἀποστόλων αὐτοῦ. Justin claims that the Memoirs were συντεταχθαί (lit. "put together") by the Apostles and their followers—in other words, they were written by them (Dial. 103.8).

\(^{179}\) A detailed examination of what exactly the Memoirs may be is discussed below in Chapter 3.

as reliable records, as written documents which are accessible to all. The authors of
these documents were men who lived with Jesus or, as their followers, received their
information from them as reliable witnesses. In this sense the Memoirs serve as
good examples of Justin’s argument from prophecy.

The Memoirs of the Apostles are put to significant use by Justin in his
argument from prophecy. As reliable records the Memoirs prove that the events
predicted by the Prophets have actually occurred—they witness to these events. The
question may justifiably be asked, therefore, whether the significance of the Memoirs
lies solely in their historical verifiability. There is strong indication that this is not the
case. Certainly there is great significance in the fact that the Memoirs verified the
Prophets. But Justin did not view the Apostles as simply recorders of history or
inferior to the Prophets in what they communicated.

Rather, the Apostles are also held in very high esteem. In explaining the bells
of Exod 28:33-34 that are attached to the robe of the high priest, Justin states that this,
"was a symbol of the twelve Apostles—the ones depending on the eternal priest and
through whom all the earth has been filled with the glory and grace of God and of his
Christ." This type of language describing the work of the Apostles is reminiscent of
how Justin describes the Prophets. Justin also describes the Apostles as supplying
knowledge of true worship of God, a task presumably accomplished (in part at
least) through their written Memoirs.

Another very strong indication of the high esteem in which the Apostles were
held by Justin is found in Dial. 119. There Justin begins developing the theme of

181 Dial. 103.
182 See below, pp. 145-160.
183 Dial. 42.1 τῶν ἐξαφθέντων ἀπὸ τῆς δυνάμεως τοῦ αἰωνίου λεπέως Χριστοῦ, ἐν ὑμνήμαρτι
φωνῆς ἡ πᾶσα γῆ τῆς δόξης καὶ χάριτος τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐπηλεξεν.
184 Dial. 110.2.
Christians being the True Israel. The patriarch Abraham is recalled to mind as receiving God's promise that he would be the father of many nations. It is stated that Christ called Abraham with his voice, and it is with this same voice that Christ calls the True Israel. "For that manner in which he [Abraham] believed the voice of God, it was reckoned to him as righteousness; in this same manner also we have believed the voice of God, which was spoken through the Apostles of Christ and through which it was further proclaimed to us by the Prophets." Here the Apostles are said to have performed the same function as the Prophets, that is, they communicated knowledge of God. So, in Justin’s thinking, there was no hierarchy of status between the Prophets and the Apostles, both communicated the voice of God.

Thus, the Memoirs of the Apostles are witnesses to revelation. The Memoirs can be so described for two main reasons. First, they supply knowledge of God in a manner similar to the Prophets. Second, as will be explained in more detail in the following section, the writers of the Memoirs pass the epistemological test of witnessing the Logos.

V. The Logos as Revelation

The crux of the relationship between the Prophets and the Apostles is located in the epistemological significance of seeing and hearing. In other words, the qualification of the Prophets for communicating revelation rested in the fact that they had seen and heard God. This is the key issue. The qualification of the Apostles rested in their witness to the Logos incarnate. This is shown in two ways. First, one of the old man's requirements for gaining true and accurate knowledge of anything, in this case God, was that the knowledge had to be communicated by someone who had

185 Dial. 119.6 ὅω γὰρ τρόπου ἔκεινος τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐπίστευκε καὶ ἐλογίσθη αὐτῷ ἐξ δικαιοσύνης, τὸν αὐτοῦ τρόπου καὶ ἡμεῖς τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ θεοῦ, τῇ δὲ τῶν ἀποστόλων τοῦ Χριστοῦ λαληθεὶσθαί πάλιν καὶ τῇ δὲ τῶν προφητῶν κηρυχθεὶσθα ἡμῖν...

186 Dial. 110.2.
heard from someone who had seen. For this requirement the Apostles rested on the communication of the Prophets. They had seen and heard that which they communicated, therefore the Apostles were able to use their writings for gaining true and accurate knowledge of God.

The second way in which the qualification of the Apostles rested in seeing and hearing is somewhat more significant and requires more explanation. This second demonstration is anchored in the event of Jesus Christ. Justin’s Logos theology has a great deal of significance in Justin’s understanding of truth. The ultimate importance of the Logos, who is identified as Jesus, is seen in his incarnation in space and time. The Logos became human and fulfilled the will of the Father.

In becoming human the Logos fulfilled the predictions of the Prophets. One of the functions of the Logos prior to the incarnation was to point to the coming of the full manifestation of the Logos through the Prophets. With the coming of the man, Jesus, that function of the Logos was no longer needed. With the incarnate Logos came the full manifestation of the Logos in Jesus Christ. Justin expresses this full manifestation of the Logos through his concept of the “resting” of the spirit.

In Dial. 87 Trypho requests of Justin an explanation of Isa 11:1-3. The context of chap 86 indicates that Trypho’s question stems from Justin’s interpretation of the phrase which indicates that Jesus would come as a rod from the root of Jesse. Through this statement Justin finds Jesus prefigured in a number of different

---

187 See Dial. 3, 7 & 8.
188 For a detailed presentation Justin’s Logos theology see below, pp. 168-176.
189 As opposed to a germ of the Logos which was the possession of every person. See pp. 133-135; 177; 252-255.
191 Dial. 87.2. “Explain to me the following words of Isaiah, ‘There shall come forth a rod out of Jesse, and a flower shall rise up out of his root. And the spirit of God shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and fortitude, the spirit of knowledge and piety; and he shall be filled with the spirit of the fear of the Lord.’ “.
scriptural references, and ultimately fulfilled in his crucifixion on a cross made of wood. Thus, it is because Justin initially brought this passage in Isaiah into the discussion that Trypho desires to pursue it in Dial. 87.

In Dial. 87 Trypho clarifies what he believes Justin to be saying—that Jesus already existed as God, that he was incarnate according to the will of God, and that he became human by the virgin. Trypho then asks his question: “How can it be demonstrated that he is able to be pre-existing, who is filled with the Holy Spirit (as the word by Isaiah enumerates) as if he were in need of possessing this [Holy Spirit]?” Trypho sees a difficulty here with Justin’s claim of pre-existence and Justin’s interpretation of Isa 11. For if Jesus pre-existed as God then he lacked nothing. But, Isaiah states that the Holy Spirit would rest upon him, as though Jesus lacked the Spirit.

Justin recognizes Trypho’s difficulty and replies that these powers of the Spirit came upon Jesus, not because he stood in need of them, but because they would find their rest in him. With the coming of Jesus all prophecy had ceased because he was the fulfillment or accomplishment of the spirit of prophecy, he was the new covenant (καὶ ἡ ἁγιάζης) which was previously announced by the Prophets. This is why there are no more Prophets after the baptism of Jesus. With the coming of the man Jesus, a goal or a fulfillment had been reached. In the will of God the incarnation of the Logos signified the accomplishment of humankind’s redemption.

The significance of this goal or fulfillment cannot be overstated, for it centers on the relationship of the Father and the incarnate Logos. This relationship is

---

192 Ps 1:3; 92:12; Gen 18:1; Ex 15:27; Num 33:9; Ps 23:4; 2 King 6:1-7; Gen 38:25.
193 Dial. 87.2 πῶς δεύομαι ἀποδειχθῆναι προύπάρχως, ἐτέκνε τῶν δυνάμεων τοῦ πνεύματος τοῦ ἄγιου, ὡς καταρρίψῃ ο λόγος διὰ Ἡσαίου, πληροῦται ὡς ἐμφανεί δύναμιν ὑπάρχων:
194 Dial. 87.3.
195 Dial. 51.3.
196 Dial. 51; 52.4; 87.3.
expressed by Justin in two ways. First, Justin is sure to retain the numerical distinction between the Father and the Logos. The Logos is “different from God, the creator of all things; different, I mean, numerically but not in will. For I affirm that he has at no time ever done anything which he who created the world (above whom there is no other God) wished him to perform or associate with.” Second, even though he is sure to retain this numerical distinction, he is also sure to state that the Logos is to be worshipped as God. The importance of the Logos is that through him humankind attains salvation, we come to God through the Logos. But this salvation is not received by the Logos simply directing or pointing to the Father. The relationship between the Father and the Logos is much more intimate than that. There is no question that Jesus taught that which the Father willed to be taught. But in certain places in the Dialogue the incarnate Logos himself is sometimes described by Justin as being the revelation of the Father to humankind.

One description of the Logos employed by Justin is that of the Father begetting himself a certain rational Power, with this Power being indicated with various titles. Justin states,

My friends, I will give to you another testimony from the scriptures. God begat a beginning before all creatures a rational power from himself, who is called by the Holy Spirit the Glory of the Lord, now also Son, now also Wisdom, now also Angel, now also God, now also Lord and Word—he even called himself Captain, when he appeared in human form to Joshua, son of Nun. For he possesses all these names because he serves the will of the Father and was also begotten by the will of the Father.

197 Dial. 56; 61; 128; 129.
198 Dial. 56.11 ETEpOS EQTL TOD T6 TidVTa TTOlýaaVTOT BEOD, dpt9g VyW &U OÜ yy61113' OÜ&V yap ýTjgt axröv TreTrpaXivaL TTOTi Yl QTrEp 6T 63 TÖV K6a. Lov iTOIfaag, 'ip BV MOT Ol1K EOTL k6s, ßEßoUXr raL Kai TrpQ al Kat 61, LXfpal.
199 See e.g., Dial. 63.5; 74.3.
200 Dial. 43.2; 64.3; 133.6.
201 Dial. 76.3.
202 Dial. 61.1 MapTÜplov & Kai dUO WV, ýiXol, ! #V, änb Twv ypa(pv &Saw, örl dpXhv TTp6 TTdVTWV TWV KTLO L dTWV 6 OE69 'YEytVVfKE S11Va11(V TLVa it iaUTOÜ XOyLOV, T TLS Kal 86a KUp(OU i)TTÖ TOD 1TVEl111aTOS TOD CLytOU KaXEITai, TTOTE & LOS, 1TOTt SE aO4Ia, TTOTe & äyyEXOT, TTOTý & dPXLUTpflTTfYOV EQUTÖV ÄEyEL, iv thOptiTOU NAp4I 4avtVTa T(, J TOD Nauf '17laOÜ' ? XEL yap TrdVTa TrpoaOvo. LdCE0aL IK TE TOD inmpETE V TO
Chapter I—Revelation in Dialogue with Trypho 90

The titles ascribed to the Logos are said to be appropriate because the Logos performs the Father’s will and also because he was begotten by an act of the Father’s will. These titles, therefore, all express Justin’s understanding of the close relationship of the Logos with the Father.203 The Logos witnesses to the Father, reveals the Father, and is paramount in the Father’s plan of salvation.

Near the end of the Dialogue Justin explains the function of this rational Power which is important for understanding revelation. In Dial. 128 Justin desires to teach that the Power was begotten of the Father and is distinct from the Father but that the relationship with the Father is still intimately maintained. As an illustration he points to fires being kindled from another. The enkindled fires are distinct from the original fire which, though it ignites many other fires, still remains the same undiminished fire. It is this close relationship, allegorized in the fire, which Justin retains as important in his concept of revelation. For the Power begotten by the Father (the Logos) announces the Father to humanity.204 This Power has many titles, each corresponding to a particular function. For example, he is called Glory because he sometimes appears in visions that cannot be contained; is called man and human being because he appears in such forms as please the Father. But the Power functions as the Logos because “he carries communication from the Father to men.”205 It is important here that the “communication” (ομιλία) referred to in this context is that the Power, hence the Logos, does the will of the Father. Therefore, the communication is that which the Father wanted it to be.

Exactly what the above communication consisted of in the form of the Logos has already been made clear to Trypho earlier in Dial. 69. There Justin uses Isa 35:1-7

204 Dial. 128.2 διὰ αὐτῆς τὰ παρά τοῦ πατρὸς τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἀγγέλλεται
to show that the ones who were destitute of a knowledge of God, the Gentiles, would abandon their idols and put their hope in Jesus. After quoting the passage from Isaiah Justin explains,

The fountain of living water which gushed forth from God on a land devoid of a knowledge of God, namely the land of the Gentiles, was this Christ, who also appeared to your offspring, and he healed those who from birth were disabled, deaf and lame in the body, causing them to leap, to hear and to see by his word. And by raising the dead and causing them to live he convinced men of the ascertainment of knowledge about him [God].

By becoming incarnate, the Logos provided knowledge of God to a people that were destitute of a knowledge of God. This knowledge of God was provided by the events and words surrounding the incarnate Logos and in his very person as the Logos of God. The Logos is the way to God.

Much of the Dialogue records Trypho’s objection to Justin’s assertion that Jesus is the Christ. As the Christ Justin believes that he is intimately involved in the salvation of humankind. Indeed, the Son fulfilled the Father’s plan of our redemption. It is apparent that the watershed issue in the discussion between Justin and Trypho is over the messiahship of Jesus. Trypho simply cannot accept that the Christ is a suffering Christ. Justin employs an explanation of the events of the life of the incarnate Logos together with the prophecies made of him to convince Trypho that the one who did suffer is the one of whom the Prophets speak. This is succinctly exemplified in Dial 89.

---

205 Dial. 128.2 καὶ τάς παρὰ τῶν πατρῶν ὀμιλίας φέρει ταῖς ανθρώποις.
206 Dial. 69.6 τὴν ἀδίκημα ἄνωτος ἁπάντοις παρὰ θεοῦ ἔν τῇ ἐρήμῳ γνώσεως θεοῦ τῇ τῶν ἐθνῶν γῆ ἀνέβλυσεν οὗτος ὁ Χριστός, δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ γένει ζημίαν πέφανται, καὶ τοὺς ἐκ γενετής καὶ κατὰ τὴν αἵματα πατρὸς καὶ κυρίου καὶ κυρίας ἔσσεν, τῶν μὲν ἀλλεθαίνην τῶν δὲ καὶ ἄκουε, τῶν δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ τὴν λόγῳ αὐτοῦ ποιήσας καὶ νεκροὺς δὲ ἀναστήσας καὶ ζήν ποιήσας, καὶ διὰ τῶν ἔργων ἐνεργεῖ τοὺς τότε ἄνθρωπος ἐνεργεῖν αὐτόν.
207 See e.g., Dial. 30.3; 43.2; 49.8; 64.3. In Dial. 93 Justin makes reference to a knowledge in every type of man which knows adultery, fornication, murder, and so on being evil. Those who commit such acts are sinning. This reference to a conscience is the only place in the entire Dialogue with Trypho where Justin possibly discusses the subject of natural revelation. His silence on the matter is most likely due to his overriding christocentric purpose.
208 Dial. 103.3.
'If, then, Christ was not meant to suffer,' I said to him, 'and the Prophets not foretold that on account of the sins of the people he would be lead to death and be dishonored and scourged, and counted among the sinners, and be lead like a sheep to slaughter, whose birth, the Prophets makes known, no one can declare, then you might have cause to wonder. But, if these things are characteristic of him and disclose him to all, how can we not, with confidence, believe in him? Whoever understands the Prophets, upon simply hearing that he was crucified, will say that this is the one and none other.'

The above paragraph and quotation must be put within the context that the actions of the Logos were all in accordance with the will of the Father. When this is done it can be seen that in these actions predicted by the Prophets, knowledge of God’s plan was being revealed through the actions of the incarnate Logos. Because all that he did was in accordance with the will and plan of the Father, it logically follows that his life, death and crucifixion were within that plan as well. Thus in the event of his life, death and resurrection, the Logos fulfilled the Father’s plan of humankind's redemption. In so fulfilling the Father’s plan the Logos was also revealing it through his actions.

This intimate connection between the Father’s will and its revelation through the incarnate Logos is expressed through the οἰκουμένα of the Father. Justin uses the term (and its derivatives) a total of thirteen times in the Dialogue. Of these, seven are of special significance because Justin relates it to Christ’s incarnation, birth, human life, and passion. In its verbal form, οἰκουμένη means primarily
administering or overseeing an office, like a bishopric or a civil community. The noun thus carries the sense of administration or management. But there is also an important theological use of term as a noun, and this is where Justin’s use of the term becomes important in its relationship to revelation.

Justin views God’s oikonomía as his will and purposes—his plan for humanity. The oikonomía is concerned with things as mundane as God’s provision of the gourd to shelter Jonah from the heat. But ultimately the theological implications of the word are seen in its relationship to the incarnation, death, and resurrection of the Logos. “…He [the Logos] endured all these things not as if he were justified by them, but completing the dispensation [oikonomiav] which his Father, the Maker of all things, and Lord and God, wished him [to complete].” God’s oikonomía is the explanation for Christ’s suffering, victory over demons, the first and second advents, the crucifixion, and the entire incarnation. All these are viewed as part of the plan (oikonomia) of God. The oikonomía and the will of the Father are thus synonymous with his plans and purposes.

The implications of this for Justin are important. Although the Father and the Logos are numerically distinct, the Logos always performs the will of the Father.

---

214 For an explanation on the uses of the verb in the early Church see Prestige, God in Patristic Thought, 57-62.
215 For an explanation of the uses of the noun in the early Church see Prestige, God in Patristic Thought, 62-64.
216 Dial. 107.3.
217 Dial. 67.6. ἀλλ’ οὐχ ὡς δικαίοδενον αὐτὸν διὰ τούτων ὑμιλοῦσα ὑπομεινήκεναι πάντα, ἀλλὰ τὴν οἰκονομίαν ἀπαρτίζουτα, ἤν ἠθελεν ὁ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν διών ποιητῆς καὶ κύριος καὶ θεὸς.
218 Dial. 30.3; 31.1; 67.6; 103.3.
219 Dial. 30.3; 45.4.
220 Dial. 31.1; 45.4.
221 Dial. 103.3.
222 Dial. 67.6; 87.5.
223 Dial. 56; 61; 128; 129.
224 Dial. 56; 61.1; 76.3.
This is why the Logos becomes so essential in Justin’s thinking. The Logos is with God at creation, throughout the lives of the patriarchs, and in the theophanies. But, this same Logos became incarnate through the will of the Father, and ministers according to the will of the Father. This same Logos was also proclaimed as the new covenant by the Prophets. The incarnate Logos “announces” God to humanity and “carries communication” from the Father to humanity. In fact, now that the Logos has become incarnate, humanity comes to God through him because he fulfilled the Father’s plan of redemption. It is through the incarnate Logos that those destitute of a knowledge of God would attain knowledge of the Father because he is related to the Father in will and purpose.

Thus, the οἰκονομία, redemption, and revelation are closely connected. The plan of the Father was redemption accomplished through the Logos. This is why there are no more Prophets after the baptism of Jesus—after his baptism the Prophets had nothing to announce since the incarnate Logos is that to which they pointed. The Logos is the revelation of the Father. The plan of the Father was redemption through the Logos. Since this Logos is the previously announced new covenant, he renders the old covenant obsolete and necessitates a new interpretation of the OT scriptures. The Logos reveals God’s οἰκονομία to humanity.

The knowledge that was communicated by the Logos about the Father and his plan is revelation. Because the will of the Logos is exactly the same as the will of the Father who sent him, that which the Logos reveals about the Father is that which the

---

225 Dial. 56-58; 61-64; 86; 87; 113; 128.
226 Dial. 56.11; 61.1-2; 101.1; 102.5; 127.4.
227 Dial. 56; 61.1; 76.3.
228 Dial. 51.3.
229 διδασκόντων Dial. 128.2.
230 ἀναλαμβάνειν Dial. 128.2.
231 Dial. 30.3; 43.2; 49.8; 64.3; 102; 103.3; 133.6.
232 Dial. 69.9.
Father wanted revealed. The knowledge is therefore ultimately revealed by the Father. Justin emphasizes this intimate relationship. The relationship is dependent upon the will of the Father for it is he who accomplishes his purposes. But his will and purposes are accomplished ultimately through his Power which is revealed in the incarnate Logos. “For he who is ignorant of Him is likewise ignorant of God’s purpose, and he who insults and hates him clearly also hates and insults Him who sent Him. And he who does not believe in Him does not believe the words of the Prophets, who spoke the good news and proclaimed him to all men.”

God’s purpose is revealed through the coming of the incarnate Logos. While it is true that the Prophets gave us a certain amount of knowledge about God, they also predicted a further and more significant knowledge. The Apostles saw, heard, and experienced that which the Prophets predicted. With Christ the salvation of God through his Logos was made plain for all humankind. With the Logos, God’s total purpose was revealed. It is this to which the Apostles bear witness and communicate in writing. Their writings, therefore, are linked with revelation—they communicate knowledge about God and his purposes, which rest in the person of the incarnate Logos. But more importantly, the Logos himself is revelation, for in his very person he carries the will of the Father and it is through him that humankind understands God’s plan of salvation and attains life.

The Logos appeared for the purpose of revealing the will and message of God. But Justin does not present the Logos as revealing this message and will only at the incarnation. The revealing Logos is pervasive throughout salvation history. He

233 Dial. 51; 52.4; 87.3.
234 See Chapter 4.
235 Dial. 136.3 ὁ γὰρ τούτων ἀγνοῶν ἄγνοεῖ καὶ βουλήν τοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ ὁ τούτων ἰδρυζων καὶ μισῶν καὶ πέμψας ὅθεν δέ πέτασαν καὶ μισεῖ καὶ ἰδρύζει: καὶ εἰ οὐ πιστεύει τις εἰς αὐτὸν, οὐ πιστεύει τοῖς τῶν προφητῶν κηρύγμασι τοῖς αὐτῶν εὐαγγελισμένοις καὶ κηρύξατιν εἰς πάντας.
is thus an agent in creation, and is active throughout the time of the patriarchs as the theophanies of God, thus revealing knowledge about God even then. But the goal of the revelation of God through the Logos is found in his incarnation where God's plan is made manifest in the person of Jesus. Justin's concept of the Logos as God's revelation can thus be seen as a process which is gradually unfolded in history.

VI. Salvation

In the preceding sections on the Witnesses to Revelation and The Logos as Revelation several references have been made to the significance of salvation in Justin Martyr's thinking. In this vein, the knowledge contained in the Prophets was a witness that regarded salvation and a witness to Christ. The Apostles performed the same function as the Prophets, they witnessed saving knowledge of God. With the coming of the man Jesus, a goal had been reached. In the of the Logos signified the accomplishment of humankind's redemption. In light of this larger section on the Witnesses to Revelation and the Logos as Revelation it could be stated that central to them is salvation. In other words, it appears that Justin is positing the reception of salvation as the central purpose of the Logos incarnate, while the central purpose of the Prophets and the Apostles was the communication of this event.

If this is the case, the question quite naturally arises regarding the meaning of salvation for Justin. It is certainly more than just a curious incongruity that of the two reasons which Justin himself gives for his conversion to Christianity, neither are the

---

236 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 41.
237 Dial. 61-64.
238 Dial. 56-58; 86; 87; 113; 128.
239 Story, The Nature of Truth in "The Gospel of Truth" and in the Writings of Justin Martyr, 100.
240 Dial. 8.
241 Pp. 74-96.
result of conviction of sin as a state of corruption. Rather, Justin has little concern for inherited guilt or original sin. In fact, in the pre-Nicene church, there is remarkably little elaboration of the doctrine of salvation. Indeed, the great creedal statements of the early Church show no elaboration on any specific theory of the atonement. "The development of the Church's ideas about the saving effects of the incarnation was a slow, long drawn-out process. Indeed, while the conviction of redemption through Christ has always been the motive force of Christian faith, no final and universally accepted definition of the manner of its achievement has been formulated to this day."

Some have explained that the reason for this lack of elaboration is because the early church was so certain that the life and death of Christ had effected an atonement between God and humanity. This was the very heart and strength of Christians from the earliest days so "they did not need to theorize about it; they were content to know and feel it." This explanation has lead some to pursue the issue further. If this is done, two reasons may be posited as to why there is an absence of a developed theory of the atonement in the early Church.

---

242 The first reason Justin gives for his conversion, as recorded in the prologue of the Dialogue With Trypho, is that the respectable old man by the sea had convinced him of the necessity of the Prophets and Apostles in his search for the true philosophy. The second reason Justin gives for his conversion, as recorded in I Apol. 12.1, was the courage that Christian converts were displaying in the midst of terrible persecution.

243 For example, Origen dwells at length with many Christian doctrines but nowhere does he deal specifically with the death of Christ and its significance for salvation. The same is true of Greek theology in general.


246 J. F. Bethune-Baker, An Introduction to the Early History of Christian Doctrine to the Time of the Council of Chalcedon (London: Methuen & Co. Ltd., 1963) 327. See also, L. W Grensted, A Short History of the Doctrine of the Atonement (Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1962) 11. "It was not in theory but in life that the Living Fact approved itself to men, and so it is natural that the early days of the Church should be marked by emphasis on the Atonement as fact."

247 McIntyre, The Shape of Soteriology, 7-8.

248 McIntyre, The Shape of Soteriology, 8-16.
The first reason lies in the eucharistic liturgies of the early Church. The strong connection of the death of Christ and the forgiveness of sins is central in these liturgies that derive from the institution narrative of 1 Cor 11:23-34. In the eucharist the sacrificial death of Christ was grasped because of the meaning attached to it in the institution of the eucharist by Christ. The significance of this for our purpose here is that once it is understood that the eucharist was central to Christian worship we see that thinking about the atonement was more integral to the worship life of the Church than the thought life of the theologians. Thus, thinking about a systematic theory of the atonement was not necessary as it was an assumed pillar in the worship of the Church. At issue here is the difference between something said and something done. If the atonement was seen as articulated in the worship of the church, the people felt no need to investigate it further.

The second reason for the absence of a developed theory of the atonement in the early Church is the absence of any protracted heretical attacks on established soteriological positions. In the early Church, the doctrine of the atonement did not see the same level of controversy and doctrinal focus as controversy about the Son’s relationship to the Father, as at Nicaea (325) and Constantinople (381), or the controversy concerning the nature of the Son, as at Chalcedon (451). This lack of controversy, or attack on doctrine, concerning the atonement simply did not force the Church to systematically articulate that which was being pictured in her worship. In fact, the history of theology shows us that it was controversy that forced the Church to formulate the doctrine of the atonement in a more systematic manner.

249 "the eucharist was Christian worship...", McIntyre, The Shape of Soteriology , 10.
251 McIntyre, (The Shape of Soteriology, 15-25) discusses the three main issues that eventually forced the Church to formulate a position: (1) Anselm’s Cur Deus-homo?; (2) The Reformation, and; (3) The traditional metaphysical transcendental expressions of the attributes of God.
Justin belongs to this age of an undeveloped doctrine of the atonement. His description of the eucharist is testimony to the importance of it in early Christian worship. But Justin does not present the reader with a systematic and organized presentation of the purpose of the incarnation. His concerns are not the concerns of later theology and the implications of his beliefs have not been scrutinized by the passage of time and the development of doctrine.

There is really only a cluster of passages in all of Justin’s extant writings that give us indication of his doctrine of the atonement—of creation, the Fall and sin, and redemption. Of this cluster, two stand out as particularly relevant. The first, which appears in 1 Apology, is helpful as the focal point for understanding his doctrine of creation, while the other, in the Dialogue with Trypho, is helpful as the focal point for understanding his doctrines of the Fall and sin, and redemption. I shall quote both here.

And we have been taught that He [God] in the beginning did of his goodness, for man’s sake create all things out of unformed matter; and if men by their works show themselves worthy of His design, they are deemed worthy, and so we have received—of reigning in company with Him, being delivered from corruption and suffering. For as in the beginning He created us when we were not, so do we consider that, in like manner, those who choose what is pleasing to him are, on account of their choice, deemed worthy of incorruption and of fellowship with Him. For the coming into being at first was not in our own power; and in order that we may follow those things which please Him, choosing them by means of the rational faculties He has Himself endowed us with, He both persuades and leads us to faith. And we think it for the advantage of all men that they are not restrained from learning these things, but are even urged thereto. For the restraint which human laws could not effect, the Word, inasmuch as He is divine, would have effected, had not the wicked demons, taking as their ally the lust of wickedness which is in every man, and which draws variously to all manner of vice, scattered many false and profane accusations, none of which attach to us.

Now we know that he [Jesus] did not go to the river because he stood in need of baptism, or of the descent of the Spirit like a dove; even as he submitted to be born and to be crucified, not because he needed such things, but because of

---

252 1 Apol. 66.
the human race, which from Adam had fallen under the power of death and the
guile of the serpent, and each one of which had committed personal
transgression. For God, wishing both angels and men, who were endowed with
free will, and at their own disposal, to do whatever he had strengthened each
to do, made them so, that if they chose the things acceptable to himself, he
would keep them free from death and from punishment; but that if they did
evil, he would punish each as he sees fit.254

A. Creation

Justin really says three things about the creation of the world:255 God made it,
he made it for humanity, and he made it out of formless matter. These three are quite
explicitly stated above in the quotation from 1 Apology. The first two points, that God
made the world, and that he made it for humanity find little conflict with later eastern
theology.256

The third of the three points above is where the difference lies between later
eastern theology and Justin. Whereas Athanasius puts great stress on creation ex
nihilo,257 with Justin ex nihilo creation is absent. So, once again, from the passage in 1
Apoloqy Justin states that God created things “out of unformed matter.”258

Also helpful in this regard is Justin’s most extended account of creation.

And that you may learn that it was from our teachers—we mean the account
given through the prophets—that Plato borrowed his statement that God,
having altered matter which was shapeless, made the world, hear the very
words spoken through Moses, who, as above shown, was the first prophet, and
of greater antiquity of than the Greek writers; and through whom the Spirit of
prophecy, signifying how and from what materials God at first formed the

254 Dial. 88.4.
255 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 45.
256 These two points are also stated in other passages of Justin. Dial. 11.1, “There will never be,
Trypho, nor has there ever been from eternity (I thus addressed him), any other except the one who
created and arranged all.” 2 Apol. 4.2, “We have been taught that God did not make the world
aimlessly, but for the sake of the human race.”
257 Athanasius, Inc. 1-9.
258 The assertion of creation from unformed matter is also stated in 1 Apol. 67.7 where Justin, in
explaining the weekly worship of Christians, states, “But Sunday is the day on which we all hold our
common assembly, because it is the first day on which God, having wrought a change in the darkness
and matter, made the world;” This creation from unformed matter is also extended to humanity in Dial.
62.2 where after quoting Gen 1:26-27 to support his belief that the Logos was present with God at
creation, Justin says to Trypho, “And that you may not change [the force of the] words just quoted, and
repeat what your teachers assert,—either that God said to himself, ‘Let us make,’ just as we, when
about to do something, often say to ourselves, ‘Let us make,’ or that God spoke to the elements, to wit,
the earth and other similar substances of which we believe man was formed, ‘Let us make,’...”
world spake thus: "In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was invisible and unfurnished, and darkness was upon the face of the deep; and the Spirit of God moved over the waters. And God said, Let there be light; and it was so." So that both Plato and they who agree with him, and we ourselves, have learned, and you also can be convinced that by the word of God the whole world was made out of the substance spoken of before by Moses. And that which the poets call Erebus, we know was spoken of formerly by Moses. 259

While this may be Justin's most extended account of creation, it still does not give an extended explanation on creation. According to Justin, Plato followed Moses in his account of creation. Plato clearly taught that the cosmos was created out of formless matter. 260 Justin identifies the formless state of the world as ἄλην ἀμορφοῦ (shapeless matter). Order came through the word of God. Unfortunately, Justin does not specifically address the question of whether matter existed eternally in antithesis to God or whether God created the formless matter himself and then made it into the phenomenal world. 261 For Justin creation is defined with reference to God's work of salvation. God creates and sustains the world so that humanity may turn to him and grasp the salvation offered through Christ. 262

B. Fall and Sin

In the passage from Dial. 88 quoted above Justin indicates his doctrine of the Fall, inadequate as it is. 263 A number of things need to be highlighted in this regard. First, Justin asserts that humanity since Adam had fallen under the power of death.

259 1 Apol. 59.
260 Plato, Tim. 29-30; 32; 51.
261 For the relationship between Hellenic understanding of creation and Justin's understanding see May, Creatio Ex Nihilo, 120-133.
262 1 Apol. 10.2-6; 2 Apol. 4.2; 5.2; Dial. 41.1.
263 One cannot speak of a systematic doctrine of the Fall in Justin. He makes no exact reference to the causal link between humanity's first sin and the sin of Adam's posterity. As will be shown in the present section, Justin does, in some sense regard the sin of Adam as having some effect on the human race, but the specifics of this influence is not exegeted. Indeed, Justin makes more reference to the influence of evil demons in the sin of humanity than to Adam's sin. See also, N. P. Williams, The Ideas of the Fall and of Original Sin: A Historical and Critical Study (London: Longmans, Green and Co. Ltd., 1927) 171-175.
Second, humanity is given moral freedom or free will to choose whatever he or she desires. Third, the serpent is the responsible agent for leading humanity astray.

The first point, that humanity had fallen under the penalty of death, is linked to the latter two. Justin asserts that humanity has moral freedom to choose. This we can see in the two particularly relevant passages quoted above. So, in 1 Apol. 10.2-6 Justin states that men choose things on account of their own choice. And Dial. 88.4 shows that even though humanity had fallen under the power of death since Adam because of the serpent, it is still an act of personal transgression through humanity's moral freedom. It is important to point out here that in Dial. 88 Adam's sin is mentioned not as the cause of human sin, but as marking the origin of human sin and death. This is significant because it indicates Justin's view of original sin. In Justin, because humanity is endowed with moral freedom, there is no inherited sinfulness apart from our chosen acts of sin. "The sin of Adam is typical of our sin; the sins of our ancestors result in an evil atmosphere into which we must be born, a constant evil influence in which we must grow up, there is no inherited guilt, and no racial depravity aside from the totality of individual offences."

1 Apol. 10.4 indicates that by virtue of the rational powers God has given humanity we have the choice of living a life which is acceptable to God or not. As a result, we are without excuse in God's eyes when we do wrong. Sin, therefore is not choosing to live for God according to the reason implanted in humanity—an erroneous belief and ignorance of what is good. But if humanity is originally created with this knowledge of right and wrong, and the complete freedom to choose,

---

264 Other passages which Justin asserts humanity's moral freedom include 1 Apol. 28.3; Dial. 124.3; 140.4 141.
265 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 115.
266 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 227.
267 1 Apol 28.3.
268 See Dial. 28.4; 141.1; 2 Apol. 14.1.
why do we choose the wrong? The answer given by Justin is hinted at in the above quoted Dial. 88.4, where he states humanity had fallen under the power of death and the guile of the serpent. Justin asserts that demons are to blame for the fact that humanity chooses evil over good. So, the underlying suggestion in Dial. 88 is that the sin of Adam and Eve, which consisted of a yielding to the devil’s coaxing words, is the proto-type for humanity’s sin. "The human race has fallen under the power of death and guile of the serpent from the time of Adam (not from the offense of Adam), and each member of the race has committed personal transgression. Men and angels alike are free to make their own decision on the important question. That is, the activity of the serpent began with Adam and has continued ever since that time." Thus, man is a sinner because he allows the demons to lead him into rebellion against the Law of God which every man has within him as a part of the divine equipment in life. Salvation is needed because his rebellion has made him like the demons and worthy to share in their condemnation.

Here, then we have the belief that the Fall is not an inherited guilt from Adam, but rather a choice every human makes to sin. Sin is rebellion against God, not a state of corruption. This sin results in punishment—eternal damnation. So, Justin looks for a salvation that will remove this penalty of sin and ensure escape from hell.

C. Redemption

The salvation of humanity is certainly wrapped up in the incarnation for Justin. But it appears as though the primary purpose of the incarnation was didactic. In other words, the primary purpose of Christ's coming to save men from evil deeds

269 1 Apol. 5.2; 2 Apol. 5.3f.; 17.2f.
271 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 228.
272 Dial. 141.1.
273 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 228.
and powers is to teach assured truth. So, Christ came to impart saving knowledge which consisted of the realization of the oneness of God and the belief in a moral law. In Justin men are saved primarily in two ways. First Christ saves as teacher. Since the demons had lead astray humanity we have only a dim understanding until the incarnation of the Logos. With the coming of the Logos humanity has the whole truth. Second, Christ saves by his cross and resurrection. Justin makes this claim more than any other Apologist of the second century. He makes it clear that Christ's death and resurrection is a triumph over the demons and this makes the demons subject to Christ. Thus, the reason why humanity needs this revelation of the redeeming work of Christ as teacher is that the defeat of Jesus over the demons and the didactic content of his truth actually brings about a real moral change in the heart of the believer.

Justin's many references to the cross and the resurrection are a frustrating thing to the interpreter of Justin. He often refers to them as central to our salvation but fails to fit them specifically into his theology of the atonement. In this regard, Barnard and Chadwick each state it quite succinctly.

The significance of Justin's statements about the Cross should not be underestimated. In strict logic his philosophical presupposition, which controlled his intellectual apprehension of Christianity, had no place for any objective theory of the Atonement. The fact that he has so much to say about the cross and what it had effected is a strong proof that the Church of his day

274 1 Apol. 23.2; 2 Apol. 9. Barnard, Justin Martyr, 122.
275 Dial. 18.2; 11.2; cf. 43.1; 51.3.
277 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 122-125.
278 See below, pp 168-178.
279 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 124. For example see 1 Apol. 32; 56; 63; 2 Apol. 13; Dial. 13; 40; 49; 54; 86; 94-96; 98; 103; 111; 115; 116; 143; 137; 138.
280 1 Apol. 46; 2 Apol. 6; Dial. 91; 131.
281 Dial. 30.
282 Goodenough (The Theology of Justin Martyr, 238) states "Justin may have connected the cross with the breaking of the power of the demons because of the conspicuous part which the Cross played in exorcism. The formula of exorcism which JM has preserved lays great stress upon the crucifixion (Dial. 85.2 cf. 30.3)...But just how Justin conceived that the Cross achieved this victory is not explained."
held this belief. Its faith rested not only on the Word of truth which Christ had
spoken but also on the redemption which he had wrought by his death and
resurrection. Christ's power lay not only in his character and example; not
only in his power to inflame and illuminate the hearts of men; but in what he
was believed to have done for men on the cross. Justin accepted this faith as
fundamental although it did not easily fit into the philosophy which he had
imbibed. Justin is thus revealed as one who accepted, in this connection
without question, the traditional faith of the Church. 284

Justin's theology deserves the epithet "popular" in the sense that he wants to
stress the points prominent in the mind of ordinary Christian folk with a
practical concern for moral responsibility and a devotion quickened to life by
the dramatic story of the divine acts of redemption through Christ and the
work of the spirit. His faith is juxtaposed with an open optimism towards
Greek philosophy, and he seems hardly to be aware of a deep tension between
the two. 285

VII. Summary and Conclusion

Justin's study of philosophy directed him to seek a revelation of God.

Philosophy's task is to inquire about God. Only God himself is without beginning and
end. Thus, in apophatic theology Justin found one of the main ideas that shaped his
idea of revelation. God is the cause of all, and everything that exists does so as a
result of his will and purposes. God himself must necessarily take the step of
revealing his character to whomever he wills.

Justin's concept of revelation as it is presented in Dialogue with Trypho has
been examined through three main concepts. First, it was stated that revelation is
closely related to epistemology—the issue of the nature and source of knowledge.
Justin's interest in philosophy gave him an interest about where he could discover
knowledge about God, for this was the goal of his philosophy. Before his meeting
with the old man Justin believed he could attain knowledge about God through
Middle Platonic philosophy. But the old man showed him the epistemological
significance of the Prophets. In contrast to the Plato, the Prophets had actually seen

284 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 125. See also Kelly, Early Christian Doctrines, 170.
and heard God. Thus, the Prophets were qualified to communicate knowledge about God because they had witness to him.

Second, in the section on the Witnesses to Revelation, the places where one can find witness to God was examined. As mentioned above, the Prophets were an obvious place to look. But there was also a brief discussion surrounding the Memoirs of the Apostles as places in which this witness could be attained. The connection between the Prophets and the Memoirs of the Apostles was made clear with the conclusion that the Apostles are held in high esteem because they bear witness to the events that the Prophets foretold. As reliable records of the events of Jesus’ life they recount that which the Prophets predicted would occur.

But the significance of the Memoirs of the Apostles does not lie solely in their function as historical records. More importantly, it rests in the fact that they saw and heard the ultimate revelation of God—the incarnation of the Logos. The Apostles witnessed that to which the Prophets pointed. The Apostles thus fulfill the criteria by which knowledge of God may be attained and communicated. They heard from the Prophets who had seen God, but more importantly, they actually saw God’s will and plan for salvation played out before their very eyes. In other words, through the incarnate Logos the Apostles saw the fulfillment of God’s will in his very being, and in his actions. He is the ultimate revelation of God because by becoming incarnate the Logos performed the Father’s will thus providing knowledge to the Apostles. As witnesses to this action the Apostles were thus qualified to communicate the revelation of God to humankind. The Logos was also seen as a progressive revelation throughout God’s salvation history. He was an active agent throughout God’s οἰκονομία which culminated in his becoming the manifestation of God’s power.
Because the Prophets and the Memoirs of the Apostles witness to God they pass the “epistemological test”, they are therefore qualified to communicate this witness to humankind. The Prophets saw and predicted, the Apostles heard the Prophets and witnessed the events which they predicted. The process is revealed in their writings. But the goal of revelation is the Logos, culminating in his becoming incarnate. The agency of the Logos in the olkoqviła of God thus reveals God’s plan for humankind’s salvation.

The incarnation of the Logos incarnate allowed humankind to see God’s plan of salvation acted out as event in space and time. All that was pointed in the old Law and the Prophets was fulfilled in the event of the incarnation of the Logos. The tiny nation of Israel, in effect, provided the stage for the event of Jesus.286

In Justin’s concept of revelation both the event of Jesus and the communication of his coming (Prophets and Memoirs) have a place. The incarnation was an event limited in space and time but not limited in its significance for salvation. This significance for salvation necessitates its communication which, in turn, allows those who predicted and those who witnessed this event to speak concerning the revelation of God.

286 A similar expression of this concept can be found in M. Muggeridge, “The Universe Provides a Stage: Jesus is the Play,” in G. Barlow (ed.), Vintage Muggeridge. Religion and Society (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1985) 35-43.
CHAPTER TWO
The Concept of Truth in Dialogue with Trypho

I. Truth in Its Second Century Context

The concept of truth is a rather slippery one to grasp hold of. It is not necessary here to delve into the modern discussion on this issue. But we would certainly be remiss to ignore the concept of truth in the era of Justin Martyr. It is highly probable that Justin retained a love for truth that was also the possession of Plato. Plato stressed the love of truth as the essential aim of the philosopher. It is truth that should be honored above all else.¹ A love for truth and hatred of falsehood should thus dominate the life of the philosopher.²

It is certainly proper for the Christian to agree with the biblical assertion that Jesus is truth.³ But the question of the truth of the Christian faith and the reason why Jesus is that truth cannot be answered by this simple assertion.⁴ An accurate understanding of truth from the Christian perspective in the second century entails a brief look at the context in which the issue arose. This context is encompassed by the influence of three strands of thought—Hebrew thought, Platonic thought, and NT thought.

¹ Justin, I Apol. 3.6; Plato, Rep. 585.
² Plato, Rep. 585.
Chapter 2—Truth in Dialogue with Trypho

A. Truth in Hebrew Thought

The Hebrew concept of truth is usually described as characteristically concerned with history.\(^5\) The Hebrew term נְשָׁה (truth) is both a legal and a religious term.\(^6\) In law, it suggests veracity in speech, as well as correspondence to facts. In religion, the term is used in connection with God being rich in faithfulness and truth in relation to his promises. Thus, two things are implied:\(^7\) (1) In the OT, truth points to what has occurred or what will occur in history\(^8\) and, (2) the God who deals in truth calls for men to respond in like manner.\(^9\) In other words, “...it is God’s promises which may be considered as ultimate truth, and these promises coincide with the goal or fulfillment in history. It is in short an eschatological truth which orients the human spirit towards the future.”\(^10\)

In the Hebrew understanding, the truth about God and who he is is revealed to humankind in historical events through his promises. This truth evokes relationships with humanity calling forth a response. The response is seen as an attitude of faith based on truth, i.e. the fact that God will carry out his promises.\(^11\) Truth, therefore, is a Divine power that anticipates a future fulfillment. The Hebrew conception of truth is thus not only eschatological, but ontological as well.\(^12\) It is ontological in that it reveals the nature of God and the way God communicates his truth to man. It is eschatological in that it anticipates the unfolding of God’s purposes for the world.

---


\(^7\) Story, *The Nature of Truth in “The Gospel of Truth” and in the Writings of Justin Martyr*, 181.


\(^10\) Zizioulas, *Being as Communion*, 68.


\(^12\) Story, *The Nature of Truth in “The Gospel of Truth” and in the Writings of Justin Martyr*, 184-188.
B. Truth in Platonic Thought

In Platonic thought, truth is intimately connected with the theory of Forms and the Good. This connection is best seen through the three comparisons that Plato uses to highlight the various aspects of his epistemology. In addition to the analogy discussed in Chapter 1 of the Cave, Plato also used two others—the Divided Line and the Simile of the Sun. Since the Analogy of the Cave was already discussed the focus here will be on the latter two. In so doing the point will be made that truth for Plato may only be found in the realm of Forms which is ultimately found in the Good.

1. The Divided Line

The Divided Line is used by Plato to illustrate the relationship of knowledge to opinion, reality to appearance, metaphysics to epistemology, and the worlds of Being and Becoming. Basically, the Divided line distinguishes between degrees or levels of knowledge with the four metaphysical levels of reality corresponding to four epistemological ways of apprehending them. In a schematic, the comparison would look something like this:

---

12 See above, pp. 51-53.
15 Plato, Rep. 508E-509A.
The concept herein explained is the development of the human mind on its way from ignorance to knowledge which lies over the two fields of Opinion (δόξα) and Knowledge (ἐπιστήμη). It is only the latter that can properly be termed Knowledge. Opinion is said to be concerned with images (εἰκόνες), while Knowledge, at least in the higher forms, is concerned with originals or archetypes (ἀρχαι).  

This development of the human mind from ignorance to knowledge is movement through “levels of awareness.” The lowest level of awareness is the level of Illusion (εἰκασία, D in the schematic). This realm is not always inhabited but we occasionally slip into it purposely when we watch magic shows or go to the movies. But Plato says that we can also slip into illusion without being aware of it when our

---

18 Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1.1.176.
19 Cf., Soccio, Archetypes of Wisdom, 136-137.
opinions are based solely on appearances, unanalyzed impressions, uncritically inherited beliefs, and unevaluated emotions.

The second level of awareness is that of Perception (πίστις, C in the schematic). The objects of the Perception level are the real objects corresponding to the Images and Shadows of the line. Perception involves a wider range of opinions about what most of us think of as reality. These Opinions are based on observations of physical objects as distinguished from the level of Illusion which is based on beliefs, impressions, or emotions. Of this line Plato includes "the animals which we see, and everything that grows or is made." The implication here is that, for example, the man whose only idea of a horse is that of particular real horses, and who does not see that particular horses are imperfect imitations of the ideal horse, that is, the universal, is at the level of Perception. He has no real knowledge of the horse, only perception. Thus, the person who does not see that the Sensible Objects (ζώα) are imperfect realizations of the specific type has only Perception (πίστις). This person, is one step up on the inhabitant of the level of Illusion, but still has not attained Knowledge. Of these levels Plato asks rhetorically, "Would you not admit that both the sections of this division have different degrees of truth, and that the copy is to the original as the sphere of opinion is to the sphere of knowledge?"

The next two levels of awareness pass from the realms of Becoming and Opinion and into the realms of Being (νοητά) and Knowledge (ἐπιστήμη), hence the bold line of demarcation in the schematic. In this section, that of Knowledge (ἐπιστήμη), the first level of true knowledge is acquired through reasoning (διάνοια, C in the schematic). In order for this level to be true knowledge, it is not

---

21 Copleston, A History of Philosophy, 1.1.178.  
22 Plato, Rep. 510.
knowledge of those at the level of Perception or Illusion, since these levels belong to the realm of Becoming and thus are subject to flux. Reasoning knowledge must be of a Form, for the Form does not grow or change.

The highest level of awareness is that of understanding (νοησίας, A in the schematic). Here the soul has no need of perception or interpretation for it directly apprehends the absolute Form of the Good.

Of this comparison of the Divided Line Plato has indicated that there is a scale of the faculties of our minds. These four faculties "have clearness in the same degree that their objects have truth." In other words, each successive level of awareness is another step toward the ultimate truth which resides in the realm of Being in the Form of the Good.

2. The Simile of the Sun

For Plato, the Good is the absolute Form. In the Simile of the Sun he compares the Good to the sun. He relates the concept that just as the sun is necessary for vision and life, it is the Good which makes reality, truth and existence of everything else possible.

The simile begins with Glaucon imploring Socrates (representing Plato himself) to give an explanation of the Good. Socrates begins by reviewing some pertinent points that have already been presented. In doing this he sums up the idea of universals and particulars—the concept of Forms.

…but I must first come to an understanding with you, and remind you of what I have mentioned in the course of this discussion, and at many other times. What? The old story, that there is a many beautiful and a many good, and so of other things which we describe and define; to all of them ‘many’ is applied. True, he [Glaucon] said.

---

23 Plato, Rep. 511.
24 Plato, Rep. 506.
And there is an absolute beauty and an absolute good, and of other things to which the term 'many' is applied there is an absolute; for they may be brought under a single idea, which is called the essence of each.

Very true.
The many, as we say, are seen but not known, and the ideas are known but not seen.26

Following this contextual explanation, Socrates goes on to focus in on the sense of sight as a way to link the importance of that which makes things visible. It is the sun which makes the eye to see and the visible to appear, therefore, this great light is implied to be of a higher order.27 In fact, Socrates states that "the power which the eye possesses is a sort of effluence from the sun."28 Thus, the sun is not sight, but is the author of sight.

At this point the Simile of the Sun is brought to a sort of climax where Socrates gets to the point he is trying to make. It is worth quoting at length.

And this is he whom I call the child of the good, whom the good begat in his own likeness, to be in the visible world, in relation to sight and the things of sight, what the good is in the intellectual world in relation to mind and the things of the mind.

Will you be a little more explicit? He [Glaucon] said.

Why, you know, I said, that the eyes, when a person directs them towards objects on which the light of day is no longer shining, but the moon and stars only, see dimly, and are nearly blind; they seem to have no clearness of vision in them?

Very True.

But when they are directed towards objects on which the sun shines, they see clearly and there is sight in them?

Certainly.

And the soul is like the eye: when resting upon that on which truth and being shine, the soul receives and understands and is radiant with intelligence; but when turned towards the twilight of becoming and perishing, then she has opinion only, and goes, blinking about, and is first of one opinion and then of another, and seems to have no intelligence?

Just so.

Now, that which imparts truth to the known and the power of knowing to the knower is what I would have you term the idea of good, and this you will deem to be the cause of science, and of truth in so far as the latter becomes the subject of knowledge; beautiful too, as are both truth and knowledge, you will be right in esteeming this other nature as more beautiful than either: and as is

26 Plato, Rep. 507.
the previous instance, light and sight may be truly said to be like the sun, and yet not to be the sun, so in this other sphere, science and truth may be deemed to be like the good, but not the good; the good has a place of honour yet higher. ²⁹

You would say, would you not, that the sun is not only the author of visibility in all things, but of generation and nourishment and growth, though he himself is not generation?

Certainly.

In like manner the good may be said to be not only the author of knowledge to all things known, but their being and essence, and yet the good is not essence, but far exceeds essence in dignity and power. ³⁰

It is difficult to miss the ultimate regard Plato held for the Good. The Good transcends all and attains to the highest honor.

3. Platonic Truth

With these two comparisons we see the relationship that exists with truth, Forms, and the Good. The relationship of truth to Forms is seen in the fact that truth resides in the Forms. Truth is thus seen as changeless and eternal. With the Divided Line Plato shows that there are degrees of truth and that he clearly taught that the highest level of truth resides in the Good. With the Simile of the Sun we saw the utmost regard Plato held for the Good as the ultimate Form. It is the Good which gives the objects of knowledge their truth and the mind the power of knowing.

So, for Plato, truth was to be understood from the side of that which was true itself. ³¹ This places us squarely within the realm of Forms. ³² Thus, in contrast to the Hebrew conception, truth actually transcends history. Platonic thought held an essential unity between the intelligible world (νοητό), the thinking mind (νοῦς), and Being (ἐίναι). And it is in this unity that truth is to be found. ³³ Truth for the Platonist never really entered the world in a concrete form. The best the Platonist can say in

²⁹ Plato, Rep. 508.
³⁰ Plato, Rep. 509.
³¹ Pannenberg, "What is Truth?" 11.
³² See above, pp. 46-53.
³³ Zizioulas, Being as Communion, 69.
this respect is that the world contains pointers to the truth which is ultimately found in the world of Forms.\textsuperscript{34} Thus, the Platonic concept of truth is that it is not historical, that it is not worked out in historical events.

C. Truth in New Testament Thought

The NT era represents a convergence of the disparate views of the Hebrew and the Platonic forms of thought. This disparity, then, presented the NT writers with a conflict which they had to somehow resolve. Greek ontology has a problem with the status given to history by the Hebrew concept. The conflict between the Hebrew and the Greek concepts of truth for the Christian are succinctly summarized in the question, “How can a Christian hold to the idea that truth operates in history and creation when the ultimate character of truth, and its uniqueness, seem irreconcilable to change and decay to which history and creation are subject?”\textsuperscript{35} In other words, the Platonic world of Forms is the realm of Being, not Becoming. The realm of history and creation are in the realm of Becoming and are therefore not “real.” Pannenberg calls this the “hidden impasse in the Greek idea of truth.”\textsuperscript{36} What he means is that the essence of truth for the Platonist must be its Being—its unchangeableness. The event character of truth must be disregarded because it stood in firm contradiction to the unchangeable character of truth.

What we are left with when dealing with the Hebrew and Greek concepts of truth is an apparent impasse, as Pannenberg accurately identifies. It was the task of the NT writers to break the deadlock that existed between these two influential ways of conceiving truth. Many have viewed the NT writers as simply restating and expanding the OT concept of truth. With this assertion Zizioulas would disagree. “It would be wrong to deduce too easily,” states Zizioulas, “that biblical thinking, particularly in its

\textsuperscript{34} Story, The Nature of Truth in “The Gospel of Truth” and in the Writings of Justin Martyr, 196.
\textsuperscript{35} Zizioulas, Being as Communion, 70.
New Testament form, is to be identified with what one would call Hebrew or Jewish thought-forms. When St Paul presents the cross of Christ as the content of his preaching, he stands against the Greek and Jewish mentalities simultaneously. The Christian message may be confused neither with the ‘wisdom’ of the Greeks nor with the Jewish preoccupation with ‘signs’ (1 Cor 1:22)."

For Zizioulas, the NT way of understanding truth, with its distinct christological character, differs from both Hebrew and Greek ideas as presented above. Thus, by referring to Christ as the Alpha and Omega of history, the NT radically transforms the linear historicism or eschatological aspect of Hebrew thought. This is because the NT asserts a realized eschatology in that the end of history in Christ becomes present here and now. Likewise, in affirming that the historical person of Jesus Christ is the truth, the NT transforms and challenges Greek thought. This is because it is in the flow of history and through it, with all its changes and ambiguities, that humanity is called to discover the meaning of existence.

In typical erudite fashion, Zizioulas sums up the issue,

If, therefore, we want to be faithful to the christological character of truth, we must affirm the historical character of truth and not despise it for the sake of its “meaning.”...it must be affirmed if by this “historicity” of the truth we understand a linear, Jewish historicism, for which the future constitutes a reality still to come, as though it had not at all arrived in history, then we are departing radically from the conception of the truth found in the New Testament. Thus, the problem which the christological character of truth has presented the Church from its earliest days may be summarized in the following question: How can we hold at one and the same time to the historical nature of truth and the presence of ultimate truth here and now. How, in other words, can truth be considered simultaneously from the point of view of the “nature” of being (Greek preoccupation) from the view of the goal or end of history (preoccupation of the Jews), and from the viewpoint of

---

37 Zizioulas, Being as Communion, 68. Zizioulas explains that in 1 Cor 1:22 Paul says that the “signs” which the Jews seek are manifestations of God’s presence and his activity in history. By and in these signs, truth makes itself known historically as God’s faithfulness towards his people (p. 68). The Greek, on the other hand, is concerned with the wisdom of the mind in perceiving truth.
31 Zizioulas, Being as Communion, 70.
Chapter 2—Truth in Dialogue with Trypho

Christ, who is both a historical person and the permanent ground (the λόγος) of being (the Christian claim)—and all the while preserving God’s “otherness” in relation to creation? 41

With this transformation of the idea of truth in the Christian era comes the responsibility of communicating that idea of truth. In this vein, when we come to Justin Martyr we must pose two questions. First, we must understand how Justin understood truth—Hebrew, Greek, or New Testament? Did Justin hold on to his Platonic way of understanding truth after his conversion or did he retain a strictly linear view from his reading of the Prophets? Or, is Justin in line with a christologically transformed view of truth in keeping with Christian writings? Second, What exactly is Justin’s message of truth? As this chapter progresses the latter question will be discussed and evaluated in light of the former.

II. Dialogue as a Search for Truth

Justin did not casually set forth his case in the genre of dialogue. This genre was chosen for a reason—one that builds an important foundation in this investigation of Justin’s concept of truth.

A. Ancient Near Eastern Dialogues

Relatively little research has been done in investigating the genre of dialogue in relation to Justin’s Dialogue with Trypho. Recently, however, S. Denning-Bolle has offered a constructive article on this very subject. 42 Denning-Bolle begins her essay by briefly tracing the use of dialogues before Plato. 43 Mesopotamia and Egypt are shown as producing a number of purely dialogic texts. 44 The purpose for introducing and summarizing this genre in the Ancient Near East is to show that these dialogues

41 Zizioulas, Being as Communion, 71-72. Italics in original.
were used for the purpose of arriving at truth. As Denning-Bolle explains, "In the Ancient Near East, man wrote dialogues to probe the gravest matters he encountered and it was through the dialogue form that he discovered solutions he could live with."^{45}

B. Pre-Socratic and Socratic Dialogues

The Ancient Near Eastern dialogue is presented as a prologue to the Platonic dialogue. But Denning-Bolle unfortunately neglects placing the Platonic dialogue within the context of Socrates and his predecessors. If this is done one discovers that the genre of dialogue contains the philosophical art of dialectic, which originates from the Greek expression for the art of conversation (διαλεκτική τέχνη).^{46} Simply stated, dialectic is the art of conversation through which is developed knowledge by question and answer.^{47}

Dialectic is believed to have originated in the fifth century BCE with the author of the famous paradoxes, Zeno of Elea. This was recognized by Aristotle who saw these paradoxes as outstanding examples of dialectic in the sense of refutation of hypotheses by opponents drawing unacceptable conclusions from these hypotheses.^{48}

Thus, for Zeno, dialectic came to be used as logical arguments to defeat an opponent for purely philosophical reasons. However, later in the hands of the Sophists, it came to be used simply as an instrument to win arguments. Plato labeled this type of

---

^{44} Egyptian dialogues include, "The Dispute Between a Man and His Soul," and "Eloquent Peasant". Mesopotamian dialogues include, "Babylonian Theodicy," and "Dialogue of Pessimism".


^{48} Hall, "Dialectic," 385.
dialectic “eristic” from the word ἐρικτική (strife). Eventually, eristic began to make use of invalid argumentation and sophistical tricks.

Socrates stands in contrast to the Sophist use of eristic dialectic. Socrates was only interested in bringing the truth to light, not in winning an argument. This is not to say that Socrates was above winning an argument, as can be seen in what is called elenchus, a major element in his dialectic. Concerning the elenchus, Hall states that it was a “refined form of the Zenonian paradoxes, a prolonged cross-examination which refutes the opponent’s original thesis by getting him to draw from it, by means of a series of questions and answers, a consequence that contradicts it.”

C. Platonic Dialogues

The choice of dialogue form was not an arbitrary one for Plato. Plato chose the dialogue form as nearest to the teaching method of Socrates. Some even credit Plato as raising the form of the Socratic dialogue to an art form. In general, Platonic Dialogues proceed in the following manner: Someone, generally a representative of an average “man-in-the-street,” brings up a subject in the realm of religion or politics in which some word like “just” or “true” or “beautiful” appears. Socrates, the chief figure in Plato’s Dialogues, asks the man what he means by the word. The man attempts an explanation, but encounters many difficulties along the way. Other speakers come to the aid of the man and offer suggestions as to what he meant but Socrates refutes them one by one. Finally, Socrates is challenged to give his own
meaning to the disputed term. The rest of the *Dialogue* is then a long explanation by Socrates, interspersed with objections or requests for restatement in the interests of clarity by the other speakers.

The essence of Platonic dialogue is definition. In Plato's dialogues Socrates is presented as the midwife, aiding in the process of knowing. By his continual questioning of a person two things are thus brought to light: (1) a necessary recognition by the other person that he does not know what he thought he did (admitting his ignorance); and, (2) arriving at the essence of something by a careful definition.\(^{56}\)

Because dialectic literally means "conversational method," Denning-Bolle continues her description of Platonic dialogues by pointing out two main observations.\(^{57}\) First, the notion of a conversation implies a certain informality, people simply conversing with one another. From a chance meeting a conversation arises which proceeds to a specific issue. This was not the kind of conversation concealed in special terminology to which only a few individuals were able to participate. Rather, the discussion was open to whomever was able to exercise reason and enter into the search. Second, because dialectic is a conversational method many illustrations are used. Analogies, metaphors, and similes from everyday life are used when an idea is being explained. This infuses the conversation with life because it is adapted to the experiences of the listener.

In his *Republic* Plato places dialectic as the supreme philosophical method, the coping-stone of the sciences which is set over them and over which nothing can be placed.\(^{58}\) Denning-Bolle claims that for Plato it is through the dialogue that one

---


\(^{57}\) Denning-Bolle, "Christian Dialogue as Apologetic," 496-498.

\(^{58}\) Plato, *Rep.* 534E.
arrives at truth; through a carefully constructed conversation one finds solutions. However, this attainment of truth may be allowing more to the Platonic dialogue than Plato's philosophy itself will allow.

In this light, certain differences between the Socratic and the Platonic way of philosophizing must be maintained in a discussion of dialectic or dialogue. Aristotle described the Socratic method by stating that "Socrates asked questions, but he did not answer; for he professed not to know." Thus Socrates, in contrast to Plato, concludes with an assertion of not knowing. But Plato was compelled to carry the Socratic dialectic beyond itself, not to a skeptically negative conclusion, but to an answer to the questions posed by it.

For Plato the dialectical path leads to that which is "beyond being." The "beyond" (epekeina) is not knowable; hence, not communicable. Only the way to it can be prepared. The dialogue, therefore, is such a way, leading, step by step, to a goal that, beyond the Socratic admission of ignorance and beyond the inexpressible of the highest Platonic vision, is ultimately vouched for as real by the living person of the master. And just as it is characteristic of the Socratic conversation to conclude with an admission of ignorance, so it is characteristic of Plato's dialogues to fall short of expressing the final truth; instead, it is brought into view as from a distance.

This bringing the truth into view as from a distance, somewhat tempers Denning-Bolle's assertion that Plato's dialogues offer solutions. Thus, it is not that Plato himself offers solutions in his dialogues. Rather, using dialectic, Plato sees the conversation acting as a midwife through whom the pupil finds the way to truth through a process of questions. In other words, "the dialectician is like the gardener who aids his plants but is unable to do for them what they must do for themselves."

59 Friedländer, Plato, 168-169.
61 Friedländer, Plato, 169-170.
62 Plato, Theaet. 150c.
III. Justin’s Dialogue and the Genre of Dialogue

A. Similarity to Platonic Dialogue

When this foundational understanding of the Platonic dialogues is brought into view with Justin’s Dialogue with Trypho, the Platonic influence becomes apparent. Throughout chaps. 1-8 four main things stand out: (1) the chance encounter setting the stage for the dialogue; (2) an old man à la Socrates, engaging in serious discussion; (3) the question and answer format; (4) the realization on the part of Justin that he did not really know all that he thought he did. In so doing, Justin uses a Platonic form and Platonic methods to discredit, eventually, Platonic truths.

B. Divergence from Platonic Dialogue

However, as much as these opening chapters indicate a close connection with Platonic dialogues, it is much more difficult to see this connection as the conversation in the Dialogue progresses. Reading the Dialogue with Trypho is no easy task. The modern reader is distracted by the apparent planlessness of it, and is constantly wondering where the thread of the argument is leading, or even if there is a thread at all. It is this wondering that causes Chadwick to state, “As a writer he lacks the organizing power to arrange his material with desirable clarity. Were he writing today, he would be one of those scholars who place one line of text at the head of the page and cover the rest with lumpy footnotes.”

As one progresses past the opening nine chapters of the Dialogue the less dialogic it becomes. In many ways it could rather be described as Justin’s Monologue with Trypho, considering the paucity of any significant dialogue in the writing. Denning-Bolle states that this is because Justin is being carried away by his own

apology for Christianity. She notes that at around the middle point of the Dialogue an actual exchange does occur between the two men and Trypho even begins to lose his temper, returning Justin's comments with an irritation that was undetectable earlier than this point (Dial. 79-80). However, once this high point is reached, Justin's speeches become longer and any resemblance of a true dialogue virtually vanishes.67

But consider this in light of how the Dialogue with Trypho progresses. As stated above, the opening prologue of chaps. 1-9 truly can be compared with the Platonic dialogue. Many of the same settings and devices are present. But the remaining 133 chaps. are concerned with issues that Justin believes center around his attainment of the truth. In recounting his conversion in truly dialogue form Justin is able to go beyond the Platonic dialogue and add a dimension which exists because he believes he has attained truth. Because he is convinced of the truth of this philosophy of Christianity, he is not really interested in "dialogue." Chaps. 1-9 recount Justin's search and attainment of truth, after that point there is no longer any search for the truth. Chaps. 10-142 are the explanation of the truth that Justin has found. Thus the dialogue becomes a tool for apologetic.68

This understanding of the dialogue genre when compared to Justin's Dialogue with Trypho thus raises an important question: Can it still be maintained that that Justin chose the dialogue genre as a presentation of his search for truth when the vast majority of the Dialogue is not suited to the dialogue genre?

This question can be answered by returning to the purpose of the dialogue genre. While the Dialogue certainly contains elements that go beyond that of the basic understanding of the dialogue genre, it must also be understood that Justin's search

---

resulted in something that went beyond the dialogue. Platonic dialogues, it may be recalled, did not result in the attainment of truth, the conversation acted more like a midwife of words through which the pupil was led to find truth for himself, but, ultimately, the Platonic dialogues fall short of expressing final truth. Justin, therefore, had to add a new twist to the Platonic dialogue. So, whereas the Platonic dialogues led the pupil to discover truth, Justin, in his Dialogue, knew the truth and wanted to explain it. This allowed Justin to use the Platonic dialogue form, to a certain degree, and then ultimately add a new dimension because the newly discovered Christian philosophy contained the truth which Justin was seeking but could not find in Platonism. So while we may conclude that Justin chose the dialogue genre for a reason, we may also conclude that the dialogue genre ultimately fell short of Justin’s goal or purpose. He was therefore obliged to go beyond the genre’s original purpose and present his case as an attainment of truth rather than falling short of the attainment and merely presenting a search.

IV. Philosophy as a Search for Truth

A. Justin’s Post-Conversion View of Philosophy

Justin Martyr considered himself a philosopher. Upon his meeting with Justin, Trypho noted that he wore the philosopher’s cloak. Trypho was apparently taught by Corinthus the Socratic that he should take every occasion possible to converse with philosophers. But Justin wonders why Trypho, a Jew, would expect to gain more from philosophy than from his own “lawgiver and prophets.”

\[\text{terms cannot be understood apart from the framework of argument.} \]

\[\text{69 Cairns, “Introduction,” xiv-xv; Friedländer, Plato, 169-170.}\]

\[\text{70 Dial. 1.3 νομοθέτου καὶ τῶν προφητῶν} \]
1. Ethical Behavior

Trypho’s reply immediately steers the ensuing discussion toward philosophy. Trypho states, “does not the entire substance of what philosophers say concern God? And do they not always form questions concerning his unity and providence? Is this not the task of philosophy—to inquire concerning God?” Justin agrees with Trypho here but is clear in expressing that he thinks most philosophers are not interested in this task.

In response to Trypho, Justin makes two statements. First, philosophers are neither concerned to inquire whether there is one or even several gods, nor whether all of mankind is watched over by divine providence. For, according to them, such knowledge contributes nothing to happiness. Second, the philosophers try to convince us that God takes care of the universe with its genera and species, but not for individuals.

The general point of the passage here is quite clear—the majority of philosophers are not concerned with the relationship between God and humanity. Justin’s concerns for this neglect are present because he believes it to have an effect on ethical behavior. Thus, for Justin, both types of reasoning lead down the same road.

But it is not difficult to see where they end up. It gives them an absence of fear and freedom to speak, doing and saying whatever they wish, neither fearing punishment nor having hope for any sort of benefit from God. For how could it be otherwise? They say these things will always be, that you and I will again live in a similar manner, becoming neither better nor worse. But there are some others who, supposing the soul immortal and incorporeal, believe that even though they have done evil they will not be given punishment (for the

---

71 Dial. 1.3 οἷς οἱ φιλόσοφοι περὶ θεοῦ τῶν ἄπωτα πουλοῦσι λόγου, ἐκεῖνος ἐλέει, καὶ περὶ μοναρχίας αὐτοῖς καὶ προνοίας αἱ ζητήσεις γίνονται ἐκάστοτε; ἢ ὦ τοῦτο ἔργον ἐστὶν φιλοσοφίας, ἔξετάζειν περὶ τοῦ θείου;

72 See above, p. 77, FN 148.

73 Dial. 1.4.
incorporeal is incapable of suffering), and if the soul is immortal it still needs nothing from God.  

2. Diversification of Philosophy

Following this initial exchange, the conversation continues with Trypho’s next request, “What is your opinion concerning these things, and what judgment do you have concerning God, and tell us, what is your philosophy?” Already the subject has been steered to the issues that will dominate the entire Dialogue—God and philosophy. But it is apparently neither the same God nor the same philosophy as the majority of philosophers have investigated. This is confirmed in Dial. 2.

In Dial. 2.1-2 Justin explains that philosophy is one’s greatest possession and is most precious in the sight of God. He also explains that philosophy alone unites us to God, that philosophers (or men who have applied themselves to philosophy) are holy, that philosophy was sent down (κατετέμφην) by God to men, and that philosophy was originally one but has now become diversified or many-headed (πολύκρανος).

It is immediately apparent that Justin does not have a problem with philosophy per se, just with the path that philosophy has taken. The context in which Justin uses the terms κατατέμπω and πολύκρανος thus take on special significance in relation to Justin’s concept of philosophy.

---

74 Dial. 1.5 τοῦτο δὲ ὅπις αὐτοῖς τελευτᾷ, οὐχ ἠλευθερία λέγειν καὶ ἔσεσθαι τοῖς δοξάζουσι ταῦτα, ποιεῖν τε ὅ ποιεῖται καὶ λέγειν, μήτε κόλασιν φοβουμένοις μήτε ἁγιών ἔλπιζουσι τι ἐκ θεοῦ. πῶς γὰρ; οἳ γε δεῖ ταῦτα ἔσεσθαι λέγουσι, καὶ ἔτι ξέοι καὶ σὲ ἐμπαλεῖς ἔλεγονος ὅμοιος, μήτε κρείσσονας μήτε κείροις γεγονότας. ἀλλοι δὲ τινες, ὑποστηρίζειν ἄδειαν καὶ ἀσώματον τὴν ψυχήν, οὕτω κακῶν τι δρᾶσαντες ἔργανεν δικήν (ἀπάθες γὰρ τὸ ἀσώματον), οὕτω, ἄδειαν αὐτῆς ὑπαρχοῦσης, δεσυνται τι τοῦ θεοῦ.

75 Dial. 1.6 Καὶ δὲ ἀστείοι ὑπομειδίασαν· Σὺ δὲ πῶς, ἐφη, περὶ τούτων φρονεῖς καὶ τίνα γνώμην περὶ θεοῦ ἔχεις καὶ τίς ἢ σῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ, εἶπε ἡμῖν.
This is the only occurrence of \( \text{καταπέμπω}^{76} \) in Justin's extant writings. He does, however, employ the term \( \text{πέμπω} \) without the prefixed preposition \( \text{κατά}^{77} \). From the Dialogue we get a hint of Justin's meaning here. In Dial. 17.3 he explains that the Jews persecuted Jesus who was the only blameless and righteous light sent (\( \text{περιθέντος} \)) by God. Similarly, in Dial. 116.1 he explains that the power of God was sent to us through Jesus Christ. The obvious agent in sending Jesus Christ was God the Father. By stating that philosophy “was sent down to men,”\(^{78} \) the implication in this context is that it was sent down by God, to whom it leads and unites us. Thus, in some sense in Justin’s mind, philosophy originated with God.

But still more can be said about the possible implications of Justin’s use of these terms as they relate to the Logos. Justin’s definition of philosophy is based upon certain negative qualities which he believes must be corrected. The negative qualities are explained under the assertion that philosophy has become “many-headed” (\( \text{πολύκρανος} \)). In Dial. 1.4 he states that philosophers neglected God, and thus their ethical conduct was contaminated. Now, in Dial. 2, Justin reiterates his belief that philosophy has taken a wrong turn. Since this science of philosophy is always one and the same,\(^{79} \) there should not be a plethora of philosophies. He continues,

---

\(^{76}\) In patristic literature this word is used in four basic ways: (1) Of the Father sending the Son in incarnation (Clement of Alexandria, Poed. 1.9; Methodius of Olympus, Symp. 1.4); (2) Of the Father sending the Holy Spirit at Pentecost (John Chrysostom, Hom. 4 in principium Act Apost.); (3) Of God sending spiritual gifts and graces (Origen, Joh. 20.17; Methodius, Symp. 1.2, 4.2); Of the soul, in reference to transmigration of souls (Justinianus Imperator, liber adversus Origenem; Theophilus of Alexandria, Frag. Origen; Nemesius of Emesa, de natura hominis 2.). See G. W. H. Lampe, A Patristic Greek Lexicon (Oxford: Clarendon, 1995) 714.

\(^{77}\) It is difficult to determine if Justin was trying to emphasize the idea that philosophy was sent by God by compounding \( \text{κατά} \) with \( \text{πέμπω} \). S. E. Porter (Idioms of the Greek New Testament [Sheffield: Sheffield Academic Press, 1992] 140-143) indicates that there are three functions a preposition serves when prefixed to a verb: (1) It may preserve but intensify the meaning of the verb; (2) It may transform the meaning of the verb into a new meaning; (3) It may retain its basic or local meaning. Since the basic meaning of the preposition \( \text{κατά} \) is “direction downward” (Porter, p. 162), it is probable here that either the first or third of the options are viable.

\(^{78}\) Dial. 2.1 \( \text{καταπέμψας εἰς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους} \)

\(^{79}\) Dial. 2.1.
It happened that the first ones who were concerned with it [philosophy], and were considered illustrious men, were followed by men who made no investigation concerning truth, but only being impressed by their perseverance and self-control, and by the novelty of their doctrines—each one presumed worthy of credit that which he had learned from his teacher. Then, the ones after that handed down to their followers such things and others like them, these then came to be named after the one who was the father of the doctrine.\(^8\)

**a. Primordial Philosophy**

The idea that philosophy was originally given at an early time as one and then became contaminated evokes the concept of a primordial philosophy. The concept of a primordial philosophy may stem from the *Protrepticus*, written by the Stoic philosopher Posidonius of Apamaea (ca. 135-151 BCE).\(^8\) Posidonius held that philosophy was given to humanity in primordial times, but later became corrupt when it split up into various schools. Hyldahl connected this with Justin and contended that Justin adopted the Posidian view in order to criticize the decadence of recent philosophy. Thus, the primordial philosophy has not only degenerated, it has been lost, and it is now to be found in the books of the Prophets—this is the conception that Justin has in mind when he calls Christianity a philosophy.\(^8\)

\(^8\) Dial. 2.2 συμβάλλει τοὺς πρώτους ἀφαμένους αὐτῆς καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐνδοξος γενομένους ἀκολουθεῖσα τοὺς ἐπείτα μιθεῖν ἐξετάσαντας ἀληθείας πέρη. καταπληγήντας δὲ μόνον τῆν καρπίαν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν ἐγκρατείαν καὶ τὸ ἔξοδο τῶν λόγων τούτω ἀληθή ομώσαν ἀ παρὰ τοῦ διδασκάλου ἐκατός ἐμαθεῖν, εἶτα καὶ αὐτοῖς, τοὺς ἐπείτα παραδόντας τοιαύτα ἅττα καὶ ἄλλα τούτων προσευχότα, τούτο κληθμα τοῦνομα, ὑπὲρ ἐκάλεσσον ἀ παρὰ τοῦ λόγου.  


\(^8\) Hyldahl connects Dial. 7 with Dial. 2.1 here.
This conception of a primordial philosophy can also be found in Antiochus of Ascalon (d. ca. 68 BCE). Antiochus believed that all philosophy after Aristotle was decadent and that it was necessary to return to the "ancients". The original philosophy was not broken until Zeno diverged from the teachings of his predecessors and established the Stoic school. This view was taken up and modified in the late second century CE by the Pythagorean philosopher Numenius of Apamaea in his On the Revolt of the Academics Against Plato. Numenius claimed that genuine Platonic doctrine had been abandoned by Speusippus, Xenocrates, and Polemo, "they did not abide by the original tradition, but partly weakened it in many ways, and partly distorting it: and beginning from his time, sooner or later they diverged purposely or unconsciously, and partly from some other cause perhaps other than rivalry." What this shows is that the idea of a pure primordial philosophy was current both before, during, and after Justin’s life.

b. Primordial Philosophy in Justin Martyr

Justin parallels this idea in two passages. In the first, Dialogue 35, he makes reference to certain men who call themselves Christians but who are really not. They are confessors of Jesus in name only, instead of worshippers of him—in other words, they say they are Christians, but they really are not. "Some are called Marcians, and some Valentinians, and some Basilidians, and some Saturnillians and others by other names; each called after the originator of the individual opinion, just as each one of

---

14 Droge, “Justin Martyr and the Restoration of Philosophy,” 317. Antiochus’s lectures were heard by Cicero. Thus, his ideas are quoted from Cicero. For a list of Cicero’s works that cite Antiochus see, J. Dillon, The Middle Platonists: A Study of Platonism 80 B.C. to A.D. 220 (London: Duckworth, 1977) 62-63.
15 Cicero, De fin. 5.14. Antiochus thought that the true philosophy was maintained by the early Academics and Peripatetics (the "ancients") as late as the time of Polemo (315-270 BCE) (Cicero, De fin. 4.3; 5.7; Acad. Pr. 1.34-35).
16 Cicero, De fin. 4.3.
18 Eusebius, P.e. 14.5b-c.
those who consider themselves philosophers, as I said before, thinks he must bear the name of the philosophy which he follows, from the name of the father of the particular doctrine."\(^{89}\)

In the second passage, 1 Apol. 26, Justin mentions certain men who operated by virtue of the devils within them. Included in this list are Simon, Meander and Marcion. "All who take their opinions from these men, are, as we said before [cf. 1 Apol. 4.8;7.3], called Christians; just as those also who do not agree with the philosophers in their doctrines, have yet in common with them the name of philosophers given to them."\(^{90}\) These texts can be compared as follows:\(^{91}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Philosophy</th>
<th>Christianity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>one science</td>
<td>one faith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various schools</td>
<td>various sects or heresies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adherents named after</td>
<td>adherents named after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the &quot;father of the doctrine&quot;</td>
<td>the &quot;father of the doctrine&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(πατήρ τοῦ λόγου)</td>
<td>(ἀρχηγότης τῆς γνώμης)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they call themselves philosophers</td>
<td>they call themselves Christians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but are not</td>
<td>but are not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This comparison leads us to two important conclusions.\(^{92}\) First, Justin is clear that the adherents of these schools did not possess the true philosophy, that they wrongly called themselves philosophers, Platonists included.\(^{93}\) Thus, in the above comparison, the philosophical founders are on the same level as the heretical founders—though they were in contact with the true philosophy, they still are not philosophers in the true sense. This is why Justin distinguishes the Prophets from all

\(^{89}\) Dial. 35.6, italics mine. καὶ εἰςαν αὐτῶν οἱ μὲν τινες καλοῦμεν τοι Μαρκιανοὶ, οἱ δὲ Οὐκαλείτουκαίνα, οἱ δὲ Βασιλείανα, οἱ δὲ Σατορνιλανα, καὶ ἄλλα ὄνομα, ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦ τῆς γνώμης ἐκαστὸς δοκιμάζομεν, διὰ τῶν καὶ ἐκαστὸς τῶν φιλοσοφιῶν νομιζόμενων, ὡς ἐν ἀρχῇ προείστων, ἀπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ λόγου τὸ δῶμα ἢς φιλοσοφεῖ φιλοσοφίας ἔχειται φέρειν.

\(^{90}\) 1 Apol. 26.6. πάντες οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων ἐρμώμενοι, ὡς ἐφημεν, Χριστιανοὶ καλοῦμεν, ἀπὸ τῶν καὶ ἐκαστὸς τῶν ἑαυτῶν δογμάτων τῆς φιλοσοφοῦς τὸ ἐπικατηγοροῦμεν δῶμα τῆς φιλοσοφίας κοινὸς ἔχουσιν.

\(^{91}\) van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 43.

\(^{92}\) van Winden, An Early Christian Philosopher, 44.

\(^{93}\) Dial. 2.2, "Otherwise there would be neither Platonists, nor Stoics, nor Peripatetics, nor Theoretics, nor Pythagoreans, this knowledge being one."
philosophers, founders included. And since adherents directed their attention to the philosophers rather than at truth (the one philosophy) they went astray.

The above comparison also affords us a second conclusion. The "first ones" of Dial. 2.2 are a reference to these fathers of the several philosophical schools. These first ones are only relatively first because "There were some men who existed long before the time of all these reputed philosophers, men who are ancient, blessed, and just, and loved by God... We call these men Prophets." It is the Prophets, according to Justin, who possess and communicate the one true philosophy.

For Justin, Christians are in possession of the whole truth. Greek philosophy has only an imperfect understanding of the truth because it is rife with contradictions and errors. The Prophets are older than all the philosophers and it is they who communicate the true philosophy. Since Justin has already placed the philosophers as the "first ones" he quite naturally sees them as distorting the original philosophy of the Prophets. Thus, this relationship between Christianity and philosophy is one of completion and correction.

This relationship requires further explanation. Justin presents a theory to account for the similarities he sees between Christianity and Greek philosophy which harmonizes with his conception of the Prophets as possessors of the one true

---

94 Dial. 7.1, "Εγένοντο τινες πρὸ πολλοῦ χρόνου πάντων τούτων τῶν νομιζομένων φιλοσόφων παλαιότεροι...
95 πρῶτοις
96 Dial. 7.1, "Εγένοντο τινες πρὸ πολλοῦ χρόνου πάντων τούτων τῶν νομιζομένων φιλοσόφων παλαιότεροι, μακάριοι καὶ δίκαιοι καὶ θεοφιλεῖς... προφήτας δὲ αὐτῶν καλοῦσιν.
97 Dial. 39.5.
98 Dial. 2; 1 Apol. 13.2-4.
philosophy. He does so by an appeal to the writings of Moses, from which the Greeks acquired their knowledge, or through the Logos.\textsuperscript{101}

c. The Writings of Moses (Prophets)

The idea of the antiquity of Moses and the Greek dependence on him is well-attested in Hellenistic Judaism.\textsuperscript{102} Justin extends this to insist that not only Moses, but all the Prophets are older than Greek poets, wise men, or philosophers.\textsuperscript{103} Justin’s arguments for the priority of Moses over Plato do have a precedent.\textsuperscript{104} The idea that Plato had also read Moses was well-known. According to widespread tradition, Plato had visited Egypt,\textsuperscript{105} and Justin theorizes that while in Egypt Plato had read a copy of the Pentateuch left behind by Moses.

d. Logos

But Justin’s argument for historical priority and superiority of the Prophets still did not account for Christ who has appeared on the stage of history later than all these mentioned. After all, Christ was born “one hundred and fifty years ago under Cyrenius and subsequently, in the time of Pontius Pilate.”\textsuperscript{106} Justin’s answer to this was to assert the historical Jesus as the embodiment of the eternal Logos. “He is the Word of whom every race of men were partakers; and those who lived reasonably (μετὰ λόγου) are Christians even though they have been thought atheists.”\textsuperscript{107} Christianity, therefore, is as ancient as the Logos itself.

\textsuperscript{101} Droge, “Justin Martyr and the Restoration of Philosophy,” 307-316.
\textsuperscript{103} I Apol. 1.23.1; 54-60. Justin carries out his arguments for the priority of Moses mainly with respect to Plato. These can be found in I Apol. 44; 59; 60.
\textsuperscript{104} See examples given in Droge, “Justin Martyr and the Restoration of Philosophy,” 310-311.
\textsuperscript{105} Hecataeus of Abdera, FGrHist 264 F 23 (=Diódoros Siculus 1.96.2). Compare Cicero, De fin. 5.87; Plutarch, De Is. Et Osir. 354c; Apuleius, De Platone 1.3; Diogenes Laertius 3.6; Philostratus, Vita Apollonii 1.2; see also Cæcilius, Str. 1.66.3; Origen, C. Cels. 4.39.
\textsuperscript{106} I Apol. 46.1.
\textsuperscript{107} I Apol. 46.2-3. οὐ τὰν γένος ἀνθρώπων μετέσχε. Καὶ οἱ μετὰ λόγου βιώσαντες Χριστιανοὶ εἶσι, κἂν ἄδεια ενοικίσθησαν.
This passage turns on the idea of the *spermatic Logos*. According to Justin’s 2 *Apol.* a share of the *Logos* has always been present in humankind. A germ (*σπέρμα*) was seen as existing in every rational mind that testified to the divine. Justin states that the moral teachings of the philosophers and poets were admirable because of the seed of reason planted in every race of men. Justin can therefore agree with certain teachings of Plato, Socrates, and other philosophers because they had a share of the *spermatic Logos* (*σπερματικὸν λόγον*). But the possessors of the *spermatic Logos* often contradicted themselves. They had only incomplete or partial knowledge because they did not have the whole of the Word, which is Jesus. “For whatever the philosophers or lawgivers continually uttered well, they achieved by finding and contemplating part of the Word. But since they did not know all of the Word, which is Christ, they often contradicted themselves in what they said.”

Despite this innate capacity, Justin realizes that only a relatively few individuals actually lived in accordance with the *Logos*. The reason for this is that demons have so enslaved humanity that little can be expected from human reason. So, the truth that does exist in the Philosophers is the result of their dependence on Moses and the Prophets. But Justin also identifies Christ with the eternal *Logos* of old and credits him with being the inspiration of Moses and the Prophets. Thus, if Christ is identified both as the eternal *Logos* and the incarnate *Logos* this accounts for his pivotal significance in history. Since Greek philosophy is dependent on Moses and the Prophets, who were inspired by the *Logos*, Christ has been active agent since the beginning. Indeed, it was he who appeared to Moses who is older than the Greek

---

109 2 *Apol.* 10.2 διά γὰρ καλῶς ἀνεφθηγμένος καὶ εὐροῦν οἱ φιλοσοφῶν οἱ νομοθετημένοι, κατὰ λόγου μέρος δὲ εὐρέσεως καὶ θεωρίας εστὶν ποιηθέντα αὐτῶν, ἐπειδὴ ἐξ οὗ πάντα τὰ τοῦ λόγου ἐγνώρισαν, δέ εστὶν Χριστός, καὶ ἑναυτῷ ἑαυτῶς πολλάκας ἐλπιοὶ. 110 1 *Apol.* 46.3.
111 1 *Apol.* 5.2-6.1; 2 *Apol.* 5.2-5.
philosophers. So, for Justin, the theory of dependence and the Logos theory serve to show that Christianity is responsible for whatever truth exists in Greek philosophy. In fact, Christianity is really the sole bearer of truth.

e. καταπέμπω

This leads us to a better position to comment on Justin's statement that philosophy was "sent down" to men. The idea of a primordial philosophy in Justin is clear. That primordial philosophy is ultimately identified as being one and as residing in the eternal Logos. Departure from this originally unified philosophy has corrupted philosophy. Moses and the Prophets are purveyors of the original philosophy, and everything that the philosophers knew is credited to the Prophets and the spermatic Logos. The Logos becomes the common denominator because it is he who inspired the Prophets.

It is clear, then, why Justin claims that philosophy was "sent down". Philosophy is one's greatest possession and it unites humanity to God. The pure philosophy is not the many-headed version but the one revelation of the Logos to Moses and the Prophets which is witnessed to in scripture. This is the only philosophy. Further, it was sent down to men in the person of the incarnate Logos—the true philosophy appeared to humanity. It is the incarnate Logos who unites humanity to God.

113 I Apol. 63.10, 16.
114 Droege, "Justin Martyr and the Restoration of Philosophy," 315.
115 Dial. 2.1-2.

As an example of the problems with contemporary philosophy, Justin briefly recounts his own search through the philosophical systems of his day. The progress is well-known. His first stop, with a Stoic, was a failure because after spending some time with him he realized that his instructor had no knowledge about God, nor did he consider this knowledge necessary. Next, the Peripatetic was so concerned about tuition fee that Justin did not believe him to be a real philosopher. He was dismissed by the Pythagorean because of his lack of knowledge about music, astronomy, and geometry. Finally, in a troubled state of mind he decided to consult a Platonist. Under this philosopher Justin claims that he learned so much that in a short time he considered himself a wise man.

Consider his search through these philosophical systems in the context of Justin’s contention that philosophy has become many-headed. In so doing we can see that Justin was searching for two things: truth and God. The main emphasis here is that “philosophy is essentially the message of truth, that it proceeds from God to man, that it demands from man continuous and total commitment (cf. προσεχήκεναι in D. 2:1) and careful investigation (cf. ἐξετάσατε in D. 2:2), and that it introduces man to ultimate reality, i.e. God (D. 2:1).”

B. Justin’s Pre-Conversion View of Philosophy

That this was Justin’s emphasis is confirmed in his conversion account of Dial. 3-8. In Dial. 3 Justin, the Platonist, meets the “respectable old man” who would eventually convince him of the respectability of Christianity. During the beginning of their conversation the old man asks Justin to define philosophy. Justin’s reply is that philosophy “is the knowledge of that which is, and knowledge based on truth”. The

---

116 Dial. 2.3-6.
118 Dial. 3.4 ἐπιστήμη ἐστί τοῦ δότος καὶ τοῦ διηθοῦς ἐπὶ γνώσει.
parallels here with the Platonic concept of truth\textsuperscript{119} are apparent. Since it is Justin the Platonist speaking here this should come as no surprise. "Knowledge of that which is," is in the realm of Forms, of which the Good is the highest reality. "Knowledge based on truth," is intimately related to this highest Form because if it is the Good who is the ultimate giver and goal of knowledge, then this is also where truth resides. Thus, both truth and knowledge are based on the ultimate Form—the Good. Since the Good resides in the realm of being, true knowledge of the Good cannot be apprehended by the senses, but only through the mind. So truth is not found in an event since an event is in the realm of becoming and apprehended by the senses. There is neither knowledge of what is real nor ultimate truth found in the realm of Becoming. As a Middle Platonist, this is what Justin is claiming.

Following this definition the old man asks Justin to define God. To this request Justin answers, "That which always has the same manner and existence and is the cause of all other things—this indeed is God".\textsuperscript{120} Why the old man asks this question is unknown. Perhaps he was trying to be sure of Justin’s Platonic understanding before proceeding. Clearly the answer has confirmed this in the old man’s mind. That which always has the same manner and that which is the cause of all other things is the Good. The Good resides in the realm of Being and is the ultimate Form.

Justin indicates that these Platonic definitions were given hearing by the old man “with pleasure.”\textsuperscript{121} Exactly why this was so we can not be sure. Perhaps the old man knew some common ground upon which he may steer the ensuing discussion. He was asking probing questions of Justin to be sure of where Justin was coming from.

\textsuperscript{119} See pp. 110-116.
\textsuperscript{120} Dial. 3.5 Τὸ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ ωςαύτως δεὶ ἡμοῦ καὶ τοῦ εἶναι πάσι τῶν ἄλλων αὐτῶν, τὸ γὰρ ἐστιν ὁ θεὸς.
\textsuperscript{121} Dial. 3.5.
He certainly got Justin to clearly state that he was concerned with truth and the divine. I would suggest that this is the most likely reason why the old man showed pleasure at Justin's answers. He now knows where he will direct the conversation based on the common ground the two share—truth and God. Of course, certain presuppositions and conclusions are not common, but the fact that both are searching for truth and God is enough for the old man to progress. Through this progression, Justin's concept of truth is quite literally radically transformed.

The discussion following this exchange centers on God as the ultimate reality that the philosophers do not know. We must not miss the fact here that each are approaching this issue from radically different presuppositions. Justin is claiming that the ultimate reality is known through the mind. But the old man is making the radical claim that the philosophers do not and can not know the ultimate reality through the mind. This opens the door for the old man to introduce the truth that will grip Justin until his dying day—Christianity. The fact that the statements concerning truth and God were expressed by Justin as a Middle Platonist should in no way diminish the fact that his purpose in searching the philosophies of his day was essentially a search for the ultimate truth—a truth which he eventually found in Christianity. It is important to keep in mind the fact that Justin still considers himself a philosopher after his conversion. Following his surrender to the old man's argument and realization of the truth in it Justin states, "But immediately my soul was set on fire and a love for the Prophets took hold of me as well as [a love for] these individuals who are friends of Christ. While pondering on his words I discovered that this was the only sure and profitable philosophy. Thus indeed, it is because of these things that I am a philosopher."122 Justin's pre-conversion understanding of philosophy as a search

122 Dial. 8.1-2 ἐμοῦ δὲ παραχρῆμα πῦρ ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ ἀνθρώπη, καὶ ἐρως ἔχει με τῶν προφητῶν
for truth and the fact that he believed to have found this truth in Christianity, shows that Justin’s pre-Christian and Christian concept of the task of philosophy had not changed. Justin could still consider himself a philosopher because he discovered in Christianity the ultimate reality.

After Justin responds to the old man’s request to define philosophy and God he then presses Justin on the issue of epistemology. The old man asks Justin if knowledge is not a word applied commonly to different matters. Some knowledge, such as military strategy, navigation, and medicine comes from study and practice. But some knowledge cannot be gained in this way, it must be gained by sight or hearing from someone who has seen. Justin agrees with the old man’s reasoning, and upon this agreement the old man drives the point home. “ ‘Then how,’ ” he [the old man] said, ‘can philosophers set forth truthfully or speak that which is true concerning God when they have no knowledge of Him, having never seen or heard him?’

Upon this question Justin states that he is in agreement with Plato who asserts that God cannot be perceived by the eyes, but is to be perceived by the mind alone. As Story points out, the entire structure of the discussion between the old man and Justin the Platonist revolves around the question, “How can man know the Ultimate Truth, i.e., God?” By way of summary, since God is the ultimate truth, the discussion naturally centers on God and, as we have seen above, Justin presents God in three ways: First, God is that which is, that which is true. Second, God is that which...
"always has the same manner and existence and is the cause of all other things."\textsuperscript{128} Third, God can only be perceived by the mind alone.\textsuperscript{129}

\textit{Dial. 4-7} continues to discuss certain Middle Platonic understandings of the mind and the soul, which the old man challenges and ultimately refutes.\textsuperscript{130} Justin has implied that, with the help of philosophers and through the affinity that souls have with God, humankind can know God. Both of these implications are questioned by the old man. Thus, the possibility of any person (including philosophers) having knowledge of God through the mind is denied particularly because that mind is "unadorned" by the Holy Spirit.\textsuperscript{131} Further, Justin's assertion of the soul's kinship with God is corrected by the old man. By way of correction, the soul is not immortal, but is rather begotten just as the world is begotten.\textsuperscript{132} However, the soul will not die but will live on in a better or worse place.\textsuperscript{133} The soul lives not because it is life, but because it shares in life, it is entirely different from that in which it partakes.\textsuperscript{134} Then, in \textit{Dial. 7} Justin asks the old man what teacher or method he should follow if these philosophers do not know the truth. The discussion is then brought around full circle to the issue of epistemology initiated in \textit{Dial. 3}. With the old man's distinction between the two kinds of knowledge in mind, one by study and practice and the other by sight and hearing, the old man states,

There were some men who existed long before the time of all these reputed philosophers, men who are ancient, blessed, just, and loved by God, speaking by the spirit of God and prophesying things which were about to take place.

\bibitem{128} Dial. 3.5.\bibitem{129} Dial. 3.7.\bibitem{130} Justin has interpreted and synthesized certain aspects of Albinus' philosophy. Justin had a certain predilection for using the term \textit{δρπηρος} in reference to the unity and incomprehensibility of God. This coincides with Albinus' use of the same term for the same description (\textit{Didask} 10.4). Further, Albinus states that God is comprehensible by the mind alone. This idea is virtually the same as that stated by the pre-Christian Justin in Dial. 4.1. See Story, \textit{The Nature of Truth in "The Gospel of Truth" and in the Writings of Justin Martyr}, 62-63.\bibitem{131} Dial. 4.1.\bibitem{132} Dial. 5.1-2.\bibitem{133} Dial. 5.3.\bibitem{134} Dial. 6.
which, indeed, are now taking place. We call these men Prophets. They alone both saw and announced the truth to men, neither fearing nor reverenceing anyone, and not overcome with a desire for glory. But they alone, being filled with the Holy Spirit, communicated that which they heard and saw. Their writings are still now unchanged, and the one reading them is greatly aided concerning the beginning and end of all things, and that which the philosopher needs to know, believing these things. For they did not give proof at that time of their words, for they were above all proof, being higher witnesses to the truth. And these things which have happened and are now happening force you to agree with what they are saying. Indeed, because of the powers which they displayed they are worthy of belief, since they glorified God, the creator and father of all, and also announced the Christ, his son.  

Seeing and hearing, the second type of knowledge of which the old man speaks, is here presented as occurring in the Prophets. The Prophets differ from the philosophers because, through the filling of the Holy Spirit, they were witnesses to the truth, they had seen and heard and did not need to use argument in their presentation of truth. Further, the writings of the Prophets are extant, and in these writings are recorded events that have taken place and are now taking place, forcing readers to believe their words.

In being lead to the Prophets and to Christianity as the one true philosophy Justin came to the realization that contemporary philosophy cannot give knowledge of the truth directly. God as the ultimate reality cannot be known through the philosophers because they have neither seen him nor heard from someone who has seen or heard him. This is a radical departure from his Middle Platonic understandings. It clearly indicates a new way of thinking for Justin because he has

---

135 Dial. 7.1-3 'EyivovT6 TLVET nPa TTOWO Xpdvou Trdvrwv TOi TWV TtTV VOgLCOgIvwv 4l)loa64xV Tra. AaLOTEPOL, llaKeLPLOL Kat S(KaLOL KC 11 O¬(y TT Cogan ipavTEs Kat Ta gt)AoVTa BEQTTIaaVTES. a ST} VUV YIVETaV' TTP04TaT & allTOUS KQAOIJaiV. OÜTot 4l6VOt Tb dAr1O S KQi EZSOV K&L 41ELr1OV QVex6TTOLS, µuT' El1XQßlje4VTES Iu TE 8UGWTM8 vrES Ttvd, J L1 hT7LEvoL 8 nT, d 410Va Tatrra Et1T6VTES EL r Kov aV Kal Q EZSOV &yic iiXr p IAiVTES lmo{laTL. au ypdiiaTa SE aixr v ITL Kal V-VV SLaL uEL, Kal lcrTLV 4VTUX6vTQ TOtJTOLS nA(1aTOV W$EMIOe VaL Kal TTEpt QPXWV KQL crept TAOVT KOL WV XPI) ELSEVQL TÖV 41Ä6a04OV, TTLaTEIlOavTa 4KE(VOLS. OU YaP . ETC Qtro&(EWv TTE1roLTjvTaL T6TE TOllV XdyOUT, QTE QVwTtpw trdar S QTTOSELIEfilS ÖVTES dILdTQTOL µdPTVPES TfiS dX OE(a Tä & tttoßdvia Kai dnoI3alvovTa ECaVQyKQCEI QUVTl0Ea8aL TOTS XEXaX1 1lVOLS Sl' 6T6V. Ka(TOL 'rE Kal & Tdc SwdgCL iTTETb, OUV, TTLQTtEaOaL SIK LLOL I'naaV, ITTELSý Kai TÖV TTOtnT1' TWV ÖXV AEOV Kai TraTipa ESoa(OV Kai TÖV Trap' airrou XpLaTÖV tkbV a&TOO KaT1 yEXXOV
accepted that sensible perception is actually valid in a search for truth. This, however, must be understood in the context of a filling of the Holy Spirit.

C. The Spirit

We have now come full circle with the old man’s argument. In Dial. 4.1, the old man begins his assault on Platonic philosophy by asking Justin how the mind may ever see God if it is unadorned by the Holy Spirit. Now, at the climax of the argument in Dial. 7.1-3, we read of those who existed before the reputed philosophers who are ancient, blessed, just and loved by God. These are called the Prophets who actually were adorned by the Holy Spirit. The point here is that the old man introduces a problem into Justin’s Middle Platonic epistemology—the mind cannot possibly know God because it has no kinship with God. The mind belongs to the created realm, the realm of becoming. The only way a mind may know God is if it is adorned by the Holy Spirit.

The filling of the Spirit appears to be the key in the old man’s argument against the philosophers attaining true knowledge of God. And because Justin eventually accepts the old man’s argument, it becomes a key in the entire Dialogue with Trypho. The Prophets and the prophecies which the Prophets uttered were believed by Justin to have been given by God. Thus, the Prophets are stated to express the words of God and to speak for God. The Prophets are also said to speak by the Spirit of prophecy. These ways of expressing the Spirit’s influence upon the Prophets are to be understood in the context of the Father being the originator and the

---

136 The term is not “adorned” (κοσμημένον) as in 4.1, but rather, speaking and prophesying by the Spirit of God (θελω πνεύματι λαλήσαντες και τὰ μέλλοντα ἐπιστῆσαντες, ἀ δὴ νῦν γίνεται).
137 Dial. 15; 62; 65.
138 Dial. 16; 17; 20; 21; 26; 41; 44; 46; 63; 65; 77; 80; 82.
139 Dial. 25; 32; 387; 43; 53; 73; 74; 77; 78; 84; 91; 114; 124; 139. In I Apol. 33-37 this Spirit of prophecy is actually identified with the Logos.
controller of the process—the revealer of the process. Therefore, any statement of David, Isaiah, Moses, or any other Prophet foretelling by the Spirit of prophecy, or the Spirit of prophecy speaking from the person of Christ is viewed as coming ultimately from God because it was all done through the Spirit of prophecy.

The trinitarian element of Justin's thinking here is not difficult to see. He had no developed doctrine of the Trinity, yet the relationship between the Father, the Logos and the Spirit is implicit in the above explanation of the Spirit's role of inspiring the Prophets. The Father is shown to be the original possessor of the utterances of the Prophets and the controller/revealer of the process. The Prophets, who speak by this Spirit, communicate the Logos.

It appears as though the Prophets are viewed by Justin as receiving their message/knowledge through an ecstatic experience wherein the normal activity of the Prophet is submerged. Justin does indicate this in two places in the Dialogue. He recounts the vision of Daniel in Dan 7 which is quite obviously an ecstatic revelation. And he also explains that Zechariah prophesied under a spirit of ecstasy when the revelation of Jesus was made known to him. If Daniel and Zechariah received their revelations in an ecstatic state there is no indication in Justin that he believed otherwise of the other Prophets. The point, however, must not be missed.

---

140 Dial. 3; 127.
141 Dial. 88.
142 See also passages where God is said to speak by the Spirit of prophecy, e.g., Dial. 80. This is why Justin, in his Apology, can speak of the Prophets being inspired by the divine Logos (I Apol. 33.9), by the prophetic Spirit (I Apol. 35.3), and by God himself (I Apol. 60.3). So it is not the Prophets themselves who speak or write, but the divine Logos, according to the will of the Father, who moves in them.
144 Dial. 31.
145 Dial. 115.3.
that it is God, through the Spirit, who reveals to the Prophets that which they
proclaim.

The importance of the Spirit's influence on the Prophets comes to the fore in
the climax of the old man's argument against Justin's Middle Platonic epistemology
in Dial. 7. The Prophets, speaking by the Spirit of God, actually heard (ηκουσαν) and
saw (ειδου) the things of which they spoke. This should be seen as a direct response
and contradiction to the Middle Platonic idea that God may be seen through the
powers of the mind. 147 To see the truth with the eye of the mind was the aim and goal
of Platonic philosophy. But, as Justin (through the old man) points out, Biblical
revelation has another emphasis. The Prophets do speak of "seeing God" (Exod
24:10; Job 42:5-6), but the vision is not related to the power of the mind, but to God's
presence or glory, for example, that filled the tabernacle (Exod 40:43) and the temple
(I Kgs 8:10), and especially to God's presence in Jesus Christ (John 14:9). 148 Thus, it
is through the Holy Spirit that Prophets saw and heard, not through the Middle
Platonic nous. This is the difference between Middle Platonic epistemology and
Christian epistemology. The Prophets, through the prophetic Spirit, revealed divine
truth which concerns events which have happened (αποβαίνοντα) and are still happening
(αποβαίνοντα), just as the Prophets predicted. 149

With this Justin took the old man's words to heart and an affection for the
Prophets took hold of him, so much so that he considered the message of the Prophets
the only true philosophy. It thus became his desire to convince everyone of the same

147 Dial. 2.6. For more on Justin's Middle Platonism see above, pp. 58-66. For the relationship between
Justin's Platonism and Middle Platonism see also, C. Andresen, "Justin und der mittlere Platonismus,"
ZNW 44 (1952/53) 157-195; Barnard, Justin Martyr, 34-37; J. Daniélou, Gospel Message and
Hellenistic Culture. (The Development of Christian Doctrine Before the Council of Nicaea Vol 2; ET
J.A. Baker; London: Darton, Longman & Todd, 1973) 107-113; Droge, "Justin Martyr and the
Restoration of Philosophy," 304-307; G. May, Creatio Ex Nihilo: The Doctrine of 'Creation out of
Nothing' in Early Christian Thought (ET A. S. Worall; Edinburgh: T&T Clark, 1994) 1-3; Story, The
belief. At the center of the message of the Prophets was Jesus the Christ and salvation through him based on the events and actions of God. Justin’s insistence on Christ as the essential message of the Prophets caused Trypho’s friends to laugh and state that he would have been better to remain a Platonist or adhere to some other philosophy. They believed that by putting his hope in Jesus Justin was turning from God and losing any hope of salvation. Better for Justin to observe the Law because the Messiah is not yet known, for the Christians have simply believed a foolish rumor that Jesus is the Messiah.

This, in turn, becomes the foundation upon which Justin proceeds in the Dialogue with Trypho. Immediately following Justin’s account of his conversion he thus states, “For I will show proof that we believe in neither fables nor doctrines without proof, but in doctrines full of the spirit of God, emitting power and flourishing with grace.” Trypho agrees that the progress of the conversation will thus focus on why Justin places his hope in a crucified man yet still expects to receive favor from God when his commandments are ignored. On the one hand, Trypho states that Justin does not really know God, while, on the other hand, Justin asserts that he does. The discourse is thus set. Justin will prove from the Prophets that what he states concerning Jesus as Messiah is true.

V. Justin’s Presentation of Truth

Dial. 39 describes Christians as “instructed in all truth”. In the context, all truth centers on Jesus as the Christ. Jesus as the whole truth thus becomes the center

134 Dial. 8.1.
135 Dial. 8.3.
136 Dial. 9.1 parestotai gar deizou oti ou kevosi epistewasmev monois oude anakoldikois logois, alla mesatois pneumatos theiou kai dounai mev briosei kai theilousi chariti.
137 Dial. 10.2-4.
138 Dial. 39.5 o eki pases tis allheias mevabteuvenoi timomev.
of Justin’s message, it revolves around Jesus. It is through Jesus that God is known and man attains salvation. Therefore, this examination of Justin’s presentation of truth will also center on Jesus as the pivotal figure in Justin’s presentation of truth—Christ himself is truth.

A. The Argument From Prophecy

1. The Prophets and Jesus

It has been shown above that Justin was converted to Christianity through an understanding of the Prophets and their message of truth. Immediately upon commencing the dialogue proper (chap. 11) we get a hint of how Justin will use scripture in his explanation of truth. In discussing the Law he bases his assertions of a New Covenant upon quotations from Isaiah and Jeremiah. This type of argument is indicative of the entire Dialogue where Justin is dependent on the Old Testament scriptures, a fact that does not go unnoticed by Trypho. At one point in the Dialogue Trypho states that the only reason he has tolerated the conversation with Justin is because Justin has referred everything to the scriptures. Later Trypho also remarks that Justin is very careful to keep close to the scriptures in all his statements.

Even a cursory reading of the Dialogue with Trypho reveals Justin’s reference to the OT. He explicitly alludes to and quotes from the OT (LXX) more than seven hundred times from no less than nineteen different OT documents. When Justin refers to the Prophets either prophesying, foretelling, or predicting he does not merely mean the major and minor Prophets of the OT, the whole of the OT writings are seen as prophetic. This is illustrated in Dial. 126.2 where Justin says to Trypho, “For if you

---

155 See above, pp. 125-145.
156 Dial. 56.16.
157 Dial. 80.1.
had understood the words of the Prophets, you would not have denied that He [Jesus] was God, Son of the only, unbegotten and ineffable God." In the context there exists the usual mention of the Prophets; Ezekiel, Daniel, Isaiah, and Zechariah. But also included among them are writings of the Old Testament (or persons contained in OT books) commonly referred to as Law and Writings, i.e. Moses and Solomon. Further, as we saw above, Justin also places the words of these OT Prophets and personalities on the same level as the words of God. This is because the Prophets spoke by "the prophetic spirit," and "the (holy) spirit of prophecy." Many times Justin equates the words of an OT personality with the words of God, thus indicating his belief that the Prophets spoke God's message.

For Justin the OT scriptures are necessary not only because they are the words and message of God, but, perhaps most importantly, because they prophesy and testify concerning the life of Jesus. And it is this testimony contained in the Prophets upon which Justin focuses throughout the Dialogue. His reasoning is quite clear—the Jews are at fault for being ignorant of the coming of Jesus as Messiah, this is because it is all recorded in the Prophets.

For you [the Jews] did not offer sacrifice to Baal, as your fathers, nor did you place cakes in groves and on the high places for the host of heavens. Yet, you have not accepted his [God's] Christ. For the one who is ignorant of this one [Christ] is also ignorant of the purpose of God, and the one who insults and hates this one [Christ] clearly hates and insults the one who sent him. And he

139 Gen, Exod, Lev, Num, Deut, 1-2 Kgs, Job, Pss, Isa, Jer, Ezek, Dan, Hos, Amos, Mic, Zech, and Mal.
140 Dial. 126.2 ἐπεὶ εἶναι ἡ ἐκφάνταση τὴν ἐνθύμησιν ἐκ τῶν προφητῶν, διότι ἐν Θεῷ ἔτη ἔδωκεν τῷ ἔθελεν τοῦ μονοκελείτο καὶ ἐπετάφη αὐτῷ τῷ θεῷ ἰδίων.
141 τῶν προφητικῶν πνευμά Dial. 43.3: 53.4; 77.3: 91.4.
142 τῶν (αὐτῶν) προφητικῶν πνεύματος Dial. 32.3; 84.2; 139.1.
143 See e.g., Dial. 41.2; 44.2, 3; 46.5; 78.8, cf. 80.4-5; 84.1; 94.1; 133.2.
144 Justin’s reference to the Law and Writings was the Jewish way of speaking of what we now call the canon. The Jewish Bible today is made up three divisions, whose titles are combined to form the current Hebrew name for the complete writings of Judaism: Torah, Neviim, Kethubim = Tanak. This trillication is ancient; it is supposed as long established in the Mishnah, the Jewish code of unwritten sacred laws, reduced to writing, ca. 200 CE. A grouping closely akin to it occurs in the NT in Christ’s own words (Luke 24:44). In the prologue of Ecclesiasticus (prefixed ca. 132 BCE) we find mentioned “the Law, and the Prophets, and others that have followed them.”
who does not believe in him does not believe the Prophets, who offered the
good news and proclaimed it to all.\textsuperscript{165}

Justin’s point here is that everything asserted about Jesus in the Christian
tradition was spoken of in the Prophets before he came and was born a man. For
Justin the OT scriptures were Christian writings.\textsuperscript{166} As Christian writings they needed
to be interpreted by the Christian tradition, and this is indeed what Justin does. For
this reason the prophecies, which are delivered or handed down (\textit{παραδίδομεν}) by the
Prophets, are recalled to prove the event of Jesus Christ.

Justin’s use of the prophetic scriptures in this manner has been commonly
referred to as the argument (or proof) from prophecy.\textsuperscript{167} Because the \textit{Dialogue} was set
within a conversation with a Jew, Justin was working from the same respect for the
OT scriptures. In this setting the appeal to scripture was entirely legitimate. The
Jewish and Christian frame of mind meant that world history and God’s purposes
were connected in some way and this is the way they approached scripture. In the
historical books of the OT the connection between history and God’s purposes was
plain, but there was a large portion of prophecy to which nothing in the history of the
world appeared to correspond, or—to put it the other way around—a large part of
world history whose place in the divine purpose was not obvious. Therefore, the task
was two-fold: (1) to study the oracles of God to better understand the nature of God’s
purpose; (2) to study the events in order to locate any indication that God was

\textsuperscript{165} \textit{Dial.} 136.3 οὐ γὰρ καὶ ἤμεις τῇ Βασίλειᾳ ἔβεμετε, ὡς οἱ πατέρες ἡμῶν, οὔτε ἐν συμβολῇ ή
μετεώρῳ τόπωσε πέμπαται ἐποιεῖτε τῇ στρατείᾳ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ, ἀλλ’ ἃτι οὐκ ἐδέσατο τὸν
Χριστὸν αὐτοῦ. ὁ γὰρ τοῦτον ἄγνωσθαι ἀνοικίζει καὶ τὴν βουλὴν τοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ τὸ τούτων ἱδρύζει καὶ
μισων καὶ τὸν πέμπαντα δήλου ὅτι καὶ μισεί καὶ ἱδρύζει καὶ εἰ οὗ ποιεῖτε τῆς εἰς αὐτῶν,
οὐ ποιείς τῶν προφητῶν προάγματι τοῖς αὐτῶν εὐαγγελισμένοις καὶ κηρύσσαι εἰς
πάντας.

\textsuperscript{166} \textit{Dial.} 28-30. See also, D. E. Aune, “Justin Martyr's Use of the Old Testament,” \textit{BETS} 9 (1966) 179;

\textsuperscript{167} See, J. Danilou, \textit{Gospel Message and Hellenistic Culture} (A History of Early Christian Doctrine
Before the Council of Nicaea Volume 2; ET J. A. Baker, London: Darton, Longman &
Prophecy,” \textit{JTS} 46 (1945) 129-130.
working his purposes out in history. This is the basis upon which the argument from prophecy rested and proceeded.

2. The Argument Proper

A large part of the argument from prophecy rested on interpretation and exegesis. Thus, the argument from prophecy was the result of "correctly" interpreting scripture in light of "correctly" understanding the event. In order to rebut this, then, one had to challenge the correctness of exegesis, or the justice of the interpretation of the event, or both.\(^\text{168}\) This challenge to produce scriptural evidence for events such as the cross or the virgin birth naturally led to some rather forced exegesis as well as some interesting literal and allegorical interpretations of prophecies. As interesting as the exegetical issue is, however, the present purpose does not lie there. The purpose here is simply to explain Justin's use of the argument from prophecy as he presents it as truth.

Perhaps the best way to understand how the argument from prophecy is employed by Justin is through the use of the following schematic.

**Agreed Basis of Argument:** The Messiah is he who corresponds to the picture given of him in the OT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A is B.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Justin: The picture of the Messiah in the OT is X. Y. Z. All this is applicable to Jesus, as the parallel events from his life to the following texts from the OT prove. B is C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trypho: Even if we agree with a certain likeness of the Messianic picture from the OT to Jesus, Y. Z. aspects of your OT Messianic picture have other applications. Further, there are K. L. M. aspects of the OT picture of the Messiah which are obviously not applicable to Jesus. Most of B is not C. Therefore Jesus is not the Messiah. C is not A.(^\text{169})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^\text{168}\) Manson, "The Argument From Prophecy," 130.

Chapter 2—Truth in Dialogue with Trypho

The argument from prophecy generally takes form in one of the four following lines of argument:170

(1) Sometimes an issue over whether a prophecy applies to Jesus takes the form of a philological or textual discussion. In this case Trypho would accuse Justin of assigning the wrong meaning to the text he quotes. When Trypho states that the prophecy of Isa 7:10-16171 is misquoted by Justin, the issue rests on text and interpretation. Trypho believes the correct way to understand the prophecy is to apply it to Hezekiah, while Justin applies it to the birth of Jesus.172 Justin does state that he will prove to Trypho that this prophecy refers to Jesus,173 but his proofs amount to textual issues that are far from convincing. Justin even goes so far as to state that the Jews removed or changed parts of scripture that were obvious prophecies of Jesus.

But I am not persuaded by your teachers, the ones refusing to admit that the interpretation provided by the seventy elders who were with Ptolemy King of the Egyptians is good, and they thus try to make their own interpretation. And I want you to see that they have taken away many of the writings from the interpretation by the elders with Ptolemy, from which this one who was crucified is shown to be proclaimed as God and man, and as being crucified and dying.174

At Trypho’s request Justin proceeds to list, in Dial. 72-73, some of the passages that Justin claims were entirely omitted from the elders’ interpretation (εξηγείσθαι). The list produced by Justin, however, no longer appears in our edition of the Septuagint.

Nor do they appear in the original Hebrew.175

---

171 Trypho=“Behold a young woman shall conceive”. Justin=“Behold a virgin shall conceive”.
172 Dial. 43; 66-73; 84; 124.
173 Dial. 43.7.
174 Dial. 71.1-2 'Αλλ’ οὖν τοῖς διδασκάλοις ὑμῶν πείθομαι, μὴ συντεθείμενοι καλῶς εξηγεῖσθαι τὰ ὑπὸ τῶν παρὰ Πτολεμαίων ἀγαπητῶν γενομένων βασιλεῖ ἐβδομηκοντα προσβετέρων, ἀλλ’ αὐτὸ εξηγεῖσθαι πείρων, καὶ ὡς πολλὰς γραφὰς τέλεως περετέλων ἀπὸ τῶν εξηγησεων τῶν γεγονομένων ὑπὸ τῶν παρὰ Πτολεμαίων γεγονομένων προσβετέρων, εἶ ὁν διαρρέσαν οὕτος αὐτὸς ὁ σταυρωθεὶς ὃτι θέσι καὶ ἄνθρωπος καὶ σταυρωθεὶς καὶ ἀποθανόμενος κεκηρυγμένος ἀποδεικνύονται, εἰδέναι ὑμᾶς βουλομαι.
The most likely explanation here is that early Christian writers probably did not draw their arguments from the text of the OT itself. A number of scholars have shown that many early Christian writings include groups of quotations from Jewish sources that occur in textual forms that often do not agree with readings of the MT or the LXX. Further, these are given interpretations and applications uncommon or unknown in Judaism. This has given rise to the testimonia hypothesis. This states that in the early church there was a collection (or collections) of “testimonies” of texts that had been extracted from Jewish scriptures and put together as proof-texts for Christian claims and that early Christian writers were indebted to these testimonia for their quotations.

Evidence for testimonia is actually fairly widespread in literature. Both Graeco-Roman rhetoric and literary genre collections have been found. Collections have also been seen in extant patristic writings where scriptural testimonia were indeed topically arranged. More recently, some literature at Qumran provides concrete evidence that a variety of Jewish scriptural collections were used at a time contemporary with earliest Christianity. The conclusion that is widely accepted from this evidence is that there is strong probability that testimonia were used in the early church and “should be reckoned among the lost items of the earliest Christian literature.”

---


178 See Albl, “And Scripture Cannot Be Broken”, 70-96.

179 Esp. Cyprian, To Quirinus; Ps.-Gregory of Nyssa, Against the Jews.


181 Gamble, Books and Readers in the Early Church, 27.
The significance of this for our study is that Justin Martyr belongs to this era when *testimonia* were widely used. In fact, the prevailing understanding is that Justin did employ a collection of testimonies. Justin was relying on *testimonia* that were apparently accompanied by interpretation and arguments. This forms the basis of his argument.

(2) Sometimes Trypho believes that the words Justin quotes are either an historical statement about person D or a prediction fulfilled by personage E. The determination of the issue then requires historical knowledge and a consideration of the context. In *Dial. 32-33* Justin recognizes that the Jews recognize Hezekiah as the historical fulfillment of Ps 109:1-7. Justin, of course asserts that the prophecy is fulfilled in Jesus. For proof Justin refers to the very words of the Psalm to show that Trypho is wrong. In so doing Justin refers to the statement, “You art a high priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek”. Justin then appeals to historical knowledge and states that Trypho must admit that Hezekiah was never an everlasting priest of God, therefore, the prophecy refers to Jesus.

(3) Sometimes Trypho believes that the words Justin quotes may seem to have a fulfillment in Jesus, but the immediate surrounding context does not, and therefore whatever the correct interpretation of the passage, it cannot refer to Jesus. The determination of the issue will again require consideration of the context. An example of this line of argument is found in *Dial. 65*, “And Trypho said, ‘Being puzzled by so

---


183 Skarsaune, The Proof From Prophecy, 91.

184 Another example of this line of argument can also be found in Dial. 76-77.
many scriptures, I do not know what to say concerning the scripture in Isaiah in which
God says that he gives his glory to no other, saying this, 'I am the Lord God, this is
my name. Neither my glory nor my virtues will I ever give to any other.'\(^{185}\)

Trypho's comment and quotation of Isa 42:8 arises because of Justin's citation
of a number of Psalms which he believes testify to the deity of Christ.\(^{186}\) Justin's reply
to Trypho's comment relies on the context of Isa 42:8 alone. Justin thus quotes Isa
42:5-13 and simply states that therein God affirms that he will give his glory to him
alone whom he has appointed to be the light of the Gentiles, and not, as Trypho
claims, that he will reserve his glory for himself only. Thus, from the context Justin
argues that the passage refers to Jesus.

(4) Sometimes Trypho believes that Justin quotes words that seem to have a
fulfillment in Jesus, but there are other facts about Jesus which do not correspond
with prophecy and other Messianic prophecies which have no fulfillment in Jesus.
The argument then requires, on the one hand, the production of further appropriate
testimonies, and on the other hand, an answer in terms of the two advents. The
application of this argument rested on the Jewish claims that the grandeur of the OT
prophecies did not correspond to the humility of Jesus. This is well-illustrated in Dial.
32 where Trypho states that the OT prophecies claim a glorious and great Messiah but
the Christians' Messiah was without glory—even to the extent that he incurred the
last curse of God's law, crucifixion. Justin's reply was to refer to the two advents of
Christ, the first in which he would be pierced by the Jews, and the second in which
the Jews will look up and recognize him as Messiah.\(^{187}\)

\(^{185}\) Dial. 65.1 Kai ὁ Τρυφών ἔφη: 'Τπὸ τῶν τοιούτων γραμάτων διεισοῦσαι οὐκ οἴδα τί φα
περὶ τῆς γραφῆς ἣν ἔφη Ἰσαίας, καθ' ὁ θεός οὐδὲν ἔτερῳ δοών, τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ λέγει, 
οὕτως εἰς πάντα. Ἐγὼ κύριος ὁ θεός, τουτῷ μου ὄνομα, τὴν δόξαν μου ἔτερῳ οὐ μὴ δώσω οὐδὲ
τὰς ἀρετὰς μου.


\(^{187}\) A further example of this line of argument can be found in Dial. 51-52.
3. *The Interpretation of Events and Truth*

It is a truism that the crux of the argument from prophecy is the fulfillment of any prophecy offered in the argument. In Justin's case, his goal is to show that the prophecies he puts forth were foretold about and fulfilled in Christ. It has been shown above that the lines of argument in the argument from prophecy centered on textual, historical, and contextual issues. It is apparent, however, that the historical issues receive paramount treatment.

Justin primarily shows that the prophecies are true and that they were fulfilled in Jesus through an appeal to events. This is more than simply an appeal to the context of a particular prophecy, it is an appeal to reality. In this vein Justin claims that the doctrines which he states concerning Jesus are true because even in the face of persecution Christians do not deny the name of Jesus. It is significant in this case that Justin uses the term φαίνω (visible) in this context to indicate that it is plain for all to see. The same idea is present in *Dial. 110. 4* where Justin states, "Though being beheaded, and crucified, and exposed to wild beasts, and chains, and fire, and all other tortures, it is clear that we have not fallen away from the confession." Here, the use of δῆλον (δῆλος) is also used in the sense of something that is clearly visible, evident, or plain to see. This appeal to sensible reality is, for Justin, an indication that the things prefigured in the OT are fulfilled in Jesus. They are so firm in the minds of Christians that they are willing to endure persecution, even unto death, for the truth of that proclamation.

The appeal to events does not stop there. Based again on the fact that scripture foretold events, Justin also gives specific examples in this appeal to events. One such
example is in the context about the discussion of circumcision in Dial. 23. In trying to convince Trypho of the needlessness of circumcision for righteousness, Justin states that Abraham was not circumcised when he was blessed by God. Therefore, “he received circumcision as a sign, not for righteousness—just as the scriptures and the realities (πράγματα) compel us to confess.” It is the plain reality that proves circumcision to be unnecessary.

The appeal to reality is best exemplified in instances where Justin claims that things predicted in scripture are actually taking place before the eyes of humankind. Thus, in Dial. 53 Justin quotes Gen 49:11 to show that this was a prophecy of Jesus’ triumphal entry into Jerusalem. This is then used to explain that since it had been foretold in scripture that Christ would do this, and since he did this in the sight of all, he furnished clear proof that he was the Christ. Later, in the same chapter, he makes the same type of appeal using a prophecy from Zech 9:9, with the conclusion that “…the Prophet Zechariah prophesied that this same Christ would be killed and his disciples scattered—and it actually happened.” Several other passages in the Dialogue employ the same type of argument. In each case Justin appeals to scripture for a prophecy, he interprets it christologically, then he states that the fulfillment has taken place or is taking place before the eyes of the world. In other words the reality of the event is proof that the prophecy (as interpreted by Justin) is true.

Here is where the Memoirs of the Apostles become important. Each of the instances of the argument from events mentioned in the preceding paragraph uses

190 Dial. 23.4 τὸν δὲ περιτομὴν εἰς σημεῖον, ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ εἰς δικαιοσύνην ἔλαβεν, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸ γραφέται καὶ τὰ πράγματα ἀναγκάζει ἤμας ὑμολογεῖν.
191 “Tying his ass to the vine, and the foal’s ass to the tendril of the vine”
192 Dial. 53.2.
193 Dial. 53.5 ἀλλὰ καὶ διὰ τοῦ προφήτου Ζαχαρίου, ὅτι παταχθήσεται αὐτὸς ὁ Χριστὸς καὶ διασκορπισθήσεται οἱ μαθηταί αὐτοῦ, προεφητεύθη διὸ καὶ γέγονε.
non-OT narratives or accounts as proof. In other words, Justin either alludes to or quotes from a source (or sources) which evidently record the life and words of Jesus. These sources are the Memoirs of the Apostles. Because Justin was dealing with unbelievers in his extant works he could make limited use of Christian writings. But Justin does make use of these writings, and they form a strong part of his argument. By calling these Christian writings "Memoirs of the Apostles" it is apparent that Justin is presenting them to his readers as trustworthy documents.

Justin explicitly refers to the Memoirs of the Apostles thirteen times in Dial. 99-107. In each instance the term serves to quote, or refer to, Christian writings which demonstrate that the prophecy of Ps 22 has been fulfilled in Jesus. But many times Justin makes reference to events in the life of Jesus or words which Jesus spoke but neglects to give any indication of how or where he came upon them. It is a valid conclusion that references to the words and life of Jesus were most likely found in the Memoirs of the Apostles. The point here is that the Memoirs are thus used as reliable historical records, as written documents that are accessible to all. The authors of these documents were men who lived with Jesus, or, as their followers, received their information from them as reliable witnesses. So, as reliable historical records of the

---

195 Dial. 35; 51; 78; 82; 85; 96.
196 A detailed treatment of the Memoirs of the Apostles is presented below in Chapter 3.
197 Some (B.M. Metzger, The Canon of the New Testament: Its Origin, Development, and Significance [Oxford: Clarendon, 1987] 145; Barnard, Justin Martyr, 56) believe that the term was taken by Justin from Xenophon's ἀπομνημονεύματα τῶν ἀποστόλων. There has been some discussion about the origin of this term. Others (R.G. Heard, "The ἈΠΟΜΝΗΜΟΝΕΥΜΑΤΑ in Papias, Justin, and Irenaeus," NTS 1 [1954-55] 125; H. Koester, Ancient Christian Gospels. Their History and Development [London: SCM/Philadelphia: Trinity Press International, 1990] 38-39) believes that the term is not derived from Xenophon because the Greek term does not appear in his writings, but only as a title of his work in later manuscripts. To argue that Justin used the term in order to raise the Gospels to the rank of historical sources is incorrect because the term did not have such a meaning in Justin's time. Rather, the term was most likely derived from the verb "to remember" (ἀπομνημονεύειν). The term had been used by Papias as a technical term for the transmission of oral materials about Jesus. If Justin's use is derived from this usage it would designate the "Memoirs" as trustworthy written documents.
198 See e.g., Dial. 35; 48; 49; 53; 78; 80; 82; 85; 120.
199 Dial. 103.
words and life of Jesus they complement Justin’s appeal to reality. They are used as records of fact, as proof for Justin’s christological interpretations of prophecies.

The Memoirs, for Justin, are witnesses to the life, death, and resurrection of Jesus. This is significant because the knowledge Justin has of these events explains the OT prophecies. This is how the OT scriptures can be described as Christian writings, because they needed to be interpreted by the Christian tradition. Justin claims that the teachings of Jesus have been preserved by the Apostles and proclaimed in the churches. There is thus an intimate link between Tradition, scripture, and the Memoirs. For Justin, παραδίδωμι is often used in a technical sense to refer to the teaching of Jesus, the Apostles, and the Church. Justin views Tradition as controlling but still substantiates his claim using written documents. The documents written by eyewitnesses or their nearest associates are therefore becoming just as reliable in Justin’s proof than stories passed on orally for more than a century. The written Tradition and the oral Tradition are held together by Justin as equal. It is irrelevant to Justin whether the παράδοσις is passed on orally or in writing. The important thing is the content of the παράδοσις. He often refers to things which are taught, or teachings that are common knowledge to Christians, but this common knowledge was gathered from both oral Tradition and written Tradition. Therefore, on the one hand, he can view both the message proclaimed (κηρυχθεισα) by the Apostles in all the nations, or the Gentiles learning doctrine which was preached.

---

199 Dial. 28-30.
201 / Apol. 66; Dial. 48.
202 παραδίδωμι = to teach, transmit, or hand on as instruction or tradition. παράδοσις = handing over, delivery, hence teaching committed to a pupil, transmission, or handing down. See G. W. H. Lampe (ed.), A Patristic Greek Lexicon (Oxford: Clarendon, 1995) 1013; 1014-1016.
203 / Apol. 6.2; 46; 49.5; 66.1; 66.3; Dial. 49.1; 69.7; 70.4; 117.1.
204 / Apol. 42.4.
Chapter 2—Truth in Dialogue with Trypho

(κηρυχθεντα) by the Apostles as of paramount importance. On the other hand, he views the written Christian message which was contained in the Memoirs written (γενομένοις) by the Apostles as just as important. The reason for this is not necessarily the medium (aside from the fact that it was passed down through reliable accounts), but rather, the message. The message that is proclaimed is the same message that is written—this is the important thing.

If the knowledge about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection is found in the Memoirs then it is clear that the Memoirs are where the remembrance of Jesus takes place. It is not the textual form of the documents that are important, the important thing is that Jesus is remembered in the Memoirs. The same is true of other remembrances of Jesus like the Rule of Faith, baptism, and the Eucharist. Illustrative of this point is 1 Apol. 61 and 65-67.

1 Apol. 61-67 is perhaps the best known passage from Justin’s extant writings. In his defense of Christianity as non-threatening to the Empire, Justin describes what may be seen as a fairly typical representation of second century Christian rites. He thus describes the rite of baptism with the claim that it was “learned from the Apostles,” a clear indication of a Traditioning that was discussed above. Following his description of the baptismal rite, Justin describes the administering of prayers and

---

205 Dial. 109.1.
206 1 Apol. 66.3; Dial. 88; 105.
208 1 Apol. 13; 42; 46; 63; 2 Apol. 6; Dial. 30; 51; 83; 93. Justin, unlike Irenaeus and Tertullian a few years later, does not explicitly refer to the Rule of Faith. The passages cited here, however, are meant to point out the content therein is consistent with the explicit citations of the Rule of Faith in Irenaeus and Tertullian. For more of the Rule of Faith see, pp. 201-215.
209 1 Apol. 61-66; Dial. 13; 14; 19; 43; 44; 86. For more on baptism see pp. 244-256.
210 1 Apol. 61-67; Dial. 41; 70; 117; 118.
211 Explanation of this passage as it relates specifically to baptism and illumination is discussed in detail below, pp. 244-256.
212 1 Apol. 61.9.
the Eucharist. The only persons eligible to partake in the Eucharist are those who believe “that the things we teach are true, and who has been washed with the washing that is for the remission of sins, and unto regeneration, and who is so living as Christ has enjoined (παρεδωκεν).” This statement follows with the creed-like affirmation that the Eucharist is not received as common bread and common drink, “but in like manner as Jesus Christ our Saviour, having been made flesh by the Word of God, had both flesh and blood for our salvation.” This is reminiscent of the Rule of Faith. Following this, a strong connection is made with the Memoirs, “which are called Gospels,” as a place where these things have been “delivered” (παρεδωκαν).

The point I am trying to make here is brought together in 1 Apol. 67. So far, Justin has made a strong connection of Baptism, the Eucharist, the Rule of Faith, and the Memoirs as, not only important in the Christian rites, but also as being handed down through Christ and the Apostles. Justin now states that Christians “continually remind each other (ἀναμιμησκομεν) of these things.” He then continues on to describe the typical Sunday gathering of Christians where the Memoirs and the Prophets are read, prayers are offered, and the rites are administered. This description of the Christian rites and Sunday services is understood with the concluding statement that “He [Jesus] taught them [the Apostles] these things which we have submitted for your consideration.”

There are three things that are important to point out here. First, the idea of Tradition comes to the fore. There is the clear indication that what was being done has been handed down from Christ through the Apostles as controlling. Second, this

---

213 1 Apol. 65-66.
214 1 Apol. 66.1.
215 1 Apol. 66.2.
216 1 Apol. 66.3.
217 1 Apol. 67.1.
218 1 Apol.
traditioning, whether it be in the form of Baptism, the Eucharist, the Rule of Faith, or the Memoirs, is where Jesus is remembered. Third, because each of these Traditions is where Jesus is remembered, they are all bearers of the message, they allow the Christian to remember the event of Jesus Christ.

These points should temper any temptation to raise the written documents to a level that Justin did not. For him it is the message that is important, and because the Memoirs contain the message they are important. But they must be taken on an even plain with Baptism, Eucharist, and the Rule of Faith. It is the historical event that is controlling and these events are remembered through Christian rites and the service held on Sunday.

Thus, it is clear within Justin's Argument from Prophecy that his concept of truth relied on events and history. In the Argument from Prophecy we have a concrete example of the radical transformation of his Middle Platonism. The argument shows that Justin no longer believes truth to be resident in the realm of Being with the Good. There is no longer any desire on the part of Justin to see God with the powers of the mind. Rather, truth resides in the events that have occurred and are occurring in the sensible realm. Their proof is shown in their fulfillment.

In order to present his claims about Christianity as truth Justin thus uses the argument from prophecy with Trypho. Working within this familiar context Justin then uses OT scripture to show Trypho two main truths, each having a christocentric focus: Jesus as the New Testament or Law, and Jesus as the Logos of God.

B. Jesus as the New Covenant or Law

In Judaism the basis of the Law is found in the Covenant relationship into which Israel entered with God upon delivery from Egypt. In this Covenant, God chose Israel to be his people through this deliverance and this relationship finds its
expression in the ethical decalogue of Exodus 20. The Law was given to make clear how God's people might live within the Covenant. The Law was thus given so that the people would know what was and what was not a breach of the Covenant relationship. It was the way in which the people could remain obedient and so remain in the Covenant.

Thus, in Judaism, there was a close relationship between Law and Covenant. From the time of Ezra onwards, it was believed that the revelation of God found its supreme expression in the written code of the Law contained in the Pentateuch. So, the word "Torah" comes to be used with special reference to the Pentateuch. As the post-exilic period dawned about two hundred years before the Christian era a slight change of emphasis occurred within Judaism from faithfulness within the Covenant to Obedience to the Torah. "Obedience to the Law of God was all important as the indispensable condition of their acceptance as heirs of the covenant; disobedience meant rejection of the covenant and the God-given promises that went with it." This, again, points to the very close relationship between Law and Covenant in the mind of the Jew—to break the Law was to break the Covenant.

For Justin the Covenant and the Law belong together. He repeatedly combines the terms "law" and "covenant." The Law which was delivered at Sinai was valid for the Jewish people for a period of time. But this Law has now been surpassed and replaced by a New Covenant. This New Covenant is Christ himself and is universal in

---

221 Russell, From Early Judaism to Early Church, 60.
222 Dial. 11.2; 24.1; 34.1; 43.1; 122.
Justin recognizes that fulfillment of the Law is required in Jewish thought to remain in the Covenant. This is why he makes such a close relationship between Law and Covenant.

1. The Problem of the Old Law

The Mosaic Law is a problem for Justin. The reason for this is seen in chaps. 8-10 where Justin bids Trypho to convert. Trypho’s reply includes a rejection of Justin’s bid and the offer of a counter claim as the basis of salvation—the Mosaic Law. Further, Trypho claims that the Messiah is yet to come. In accepting Jesus as the Messiah Christians have believed a foolish rumor and have invented a Messiah for themselves.

The response of Trypho makes Justin’s task two-fold: Justin must show that Christ is not a matter of empty fantasy, but a divinely attested reality. This is done mainly in chaps. 31-118, the christological section. But first Justin must also show Trypho how Christians can call themselves friends of God yet still not observe the Law.

Justin does not define the Law anywhere in the Dialogue with Trypho, but the way in which he discusses it throughout indicates that it is the written Law of Moses. Even the first reference to the Law in the Dialogue shows that the discussion centers on the written Law of Moses. The terminology which Justin employs when discussing the Law also indicates that it is the Mosaic Law. Finally, Justin often refers to the Law by its specific ordinances.

---


225 (Dial. 8.4; 10.4; 11.1; 45.3; 89.2; 96.1; 122.3-5). ο νόμος τοῦ Μωσέως (Dial. 45.3; 52.3; 95.1). ο νόμος τοῦ διατάγματος τοῦ Μωσέως (Dial. 34.1; 45.2; 47.3). ο νόμος τοῦ Θεοῦ (Dial. 32.4; 86.6). το διά τοῦ Μωσέως διατάγματος (Dial. 42.4; 46.1-2). το εν το νόμο γεγραμμένα (Dial.
In *Dial.* 11.1-2 Justin summarizes what he will endeavor to show concerning the Law and truth,

But we hope neither in Moses nor the Law. For then we would be doing the same things as you. But now I have read, O Trypho, that there shall be a final and highest covenant of all, of which is binding on all men to observe, as many as are seeking after the inheritance of God. For the Law given on Horeb is already old and belongs to you alone, but this new one is for all without discrimination. But law against law has abrogated that which stood before, and a covenant which occurs afterwards, in like manner, has put an end to the one before it.228

In this quotation we see that hope for the salvation of humankind is not through the Law, a new Law is here, the old Law is obsolete; the old Law was for the Jews only, the new Law is for all; the new Law is in opposition to the old. Therefore, the old Law is an inadequate Law. The old Law did come from God but it is now inadequate in three ways: in motive, content, and effect.229

a. Old Law Inadequate in Motive

The three motives of the Mosaic Law show its inadequacies. First, it was to soften hearts. It was imposed upon the Jews because of the hardness of their hearts.230 Second, it was to set right what had gone wrong. The Law was only given when Moses discovered the worship of the golden calf. The patriarchs had done well

---

229 Dial. 18.2; 22; 27.2; 43.1; 44.2; 46.5; 47.2; 67.8.
230 Dial. 11.1-2 Lpliaiav ev eI 8Ia MaIcIwv oudei eva to 8I v8Iwv 'I yap ev to aIv 8Iv 8IpoWjv. Veta ev anq6vov yap, 6 Trupov, 6l 6sac av kai telcatois 8Iwos kai diav6k6tai k6mpa8l 8Iwos, 6v 8Iv deu fIla8rav 6panta av6mpov, 6av tIv to 8I x6I kIpl6mpovas aIvpeIavTav, 6 yap ev Xwrbp 8palaIc 6aI 8Iwos kai 8Iwos I6mpov, 6 de 6pantaI aIpl6vov: 8Iwos 6e kataI 8Iwov 8eIvov tov pr0 aIvov 8pauSe, kai diav6k6tai 8eIvPeI 8Iv 8p6tepav 8Iv 8Iv 8Iv 8Iv 8Iv 8Iv.
without it. Third, the Law was given for the sins of the people, but the sins still persisted.

b. Old Law Inadequate in Content

The content of the Law was inadequate because it was restricted in scope and outlook—it was only for the Jews.

c. Old Law Inadequate in Effect

The effect of the Law was also inadequate. It did fulfill a temporary purpose by hindering the hardness of human hearts but it has also prefigured the future realities of the new Law by preparing human minds for those future realities.

2. Necessity of a New Law

Justin insists that a new Law has been foretold, a Law that could truly give righteousness before God and salvation. Because the old Law was for the Jews it did not have the power to save Gentiles. This necessitated a new Law which was foretold throughout scripture. The new Law is eternal and has the power to save all humankind. “For if the law was able to enlighten the nations and the ones possessing it, why is there a need of a new covenant? But since God foretold that he would send a new covenant, and an eternal law and commandment, we will not understand this [the above quoted passages] as of the old law and its proselytes, but of Christ and his proselytes—us Gentiles, whom he has enlightened…”

---

231 Dial. 19.5; 20.4.
232 Dial. 27.2.
233 Dial. 11.2; 19.6.
235 See e.g., Dial. 11; 24; 34; 67.
236 Dial. 122.5 επει ο λόγος ἔδει τὸ φωτίζειν τὰ ἔθη καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὺς ἐχοντας αὐτὸν, τίς χρεία καὶ τοὐς προσπληρωτοὺς αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ τοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ τοὺς προσπληρωτοὺς αὐτοῦ, ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔθη, οὓς ἔφυλεν. For a discussion on the relationship between baptism, enlightenment, and Christ see Chapter 4.
3. **Supremacy of the New Law**

The new Law surpasses or fulfils the old Law. The whole of the old Law is seen as a collection of symbols to prepare humankind's minds for Christ. The Law, therefore, has a “true” or “real” meaning which surpasses the original intention. It is by means of these precepts that, in prefiguring Jesus, God calls the Jews to know and remember God. In each precept and prophecy there was a hidden meaning which ultimately would have their fulfillment in Jesus the Christ. As Justin succinctly states, “...from each such action certain great mysteries were accomplished.”

This new Law is based neither on fulfilling the precepts of the old Law, nor on the fact that the Jews are descendants of Abraham. The first point is made clear by Justin in his various discussions concerning Abraham's justification. In explaining that Abraham received circumcision as a sign the main point is that he was justified because of his faith. Indeed, he was justified before he was circumcised. Thus, justification is not based on doing the Law but on faith in God. The second point is made clear when Justin makes clear to Trypho, in no uncertain terms, that no Jew will participate in the legacy of benefits promised by Christ simply because they are descendants of Abraham. The only participants will be those who have the same ardent faith as Abraham. Therefore, the new Law is not for Jews only but also for those who display this same faith. This is the true spiritual Israel. The issue of faith

---

237 DiaL. 42.4; 111.2.
238 DiaL. 12; 14; 27; 34; 40; 41; 42; 43; 44; 52; 54; 67; 86; 110; 111; 112; 118; 134.
239 DiaL. 27.4.
240 DiaL. 112. 3.
241 DiaL. 43. 1-2.
242 DiaL. 134.2 οἰκονομίας μεγάλων μυστηρίων ἐν ἐκάστῃ τινὶ τοιαύτῃ πράξει ἀπετελοῦσαν.
243 DiaL. 11.5; 23.4-5.
244 DiaL. 44. 2; 119.5-120.1.
and the true spiritual Israel is well summarized near the end of the *Dialogue* where Justin states,

What, therefore, did Christ bestow on Abraham? That he, through a similar calling [to our own], called him with his own voice, telling him to leave the land where he lived. And with this voice he called all of us, and we have now come out of that way of life which we lived in common with the rest of the world—living wickedly. And we will, therefore, inherit the holy land with Abraham, receiving the inheritance for an unlimited age, being children of Abraham through the same faith. For the manner in which he believed the voice of God, and as it was reckoned to him as righteousness, in this manner also we have believed the voice of God which was being spoken through the Apostles of Christ and through which it was proclaimed to us through the Prophets. And we renounce unto death all the things in the world. Therefore, he promises to him a nation of similar faith—God-fearing, righteous, and delighting in the father. But it is not you [Jews], "in whom there is no faith."245

These appeals to justification before circumcision and Christians as the true Israel are similar to some Pauline arguments in his epistles to the Romans and to the Galatians.246 Both *Dial.* 11 and Rom 4 refer to Genesis for support that Abraham was declared righteous by God before his circumcision.247 In *Dial.* 11 and 23 Justin uses the Abraham story to argue that both the Jews and the Gentiles trace their lineage back to Abraham. But while Justin initially uses the Abraham story in the same way as Paul that Abraham received circumcision as a sign that he was already justified by God, he soon moves away from Paul by declaring that the church has replaced the

---

245 *Dial.* 119.5-6 ὕπαντες ὁ Χριστὸς χαρίζεται τῷ 'Αβραὰμ; δι' ἐκ τῆς ὁμολογίας κλήσεως οὐχ ἐκάλεσεν αὐτόν, εἰτέρων ἐξελθεῖν ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ἐν ἧς ἦκεν, καὶ ἠμᾶς δὲ ἀπελθέντας δὲ ἐκείνης τῆς φωνῆς ἐκάλεσεν, καὶ ἐξάλησαν ἡν ἀπὸ τῆς πολιτείας, ἐν ἡ ἐξώθην κατὰ τὰ καλά τῶν ἀλλῶν τῆς γῆς ὁμολογήσας ἑαυτὸς· καὶ οὖν τῷ 'Αβραὰμ τὴν ἡγίαν κληρονομίαν γῆν, εἰς τὸν ἄπεαρτον αἵματι τὴν κληρονομίαν ληφθεῖσα, τέκνα τοῦ 'Αβραὰμ διὰ τὴν ὁμολογίαν πίστιν δυτες. ὅ γάρ τρόπον ἐκείνης τῆς φωνῆς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐπιστεύει καὶ ἐλογίσθη αὐτῷ εἰς δικαιοσύνην, τῶν αὐτῶν τρόπον καὶ ἡμεῖς τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ θεοῦ, τῇ διὰ τῆς ἀποστόλων τοῦ Χριστοῦ λαλήθεα πάλιν καὶ τῇ διὰ τῶν προφητῶν κηρύχθησθος ἡμῖν, πυθέναις μὲχρί τοῦ ἀποκάλυψεν πάσα τὰς ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ ἀπεταχθέντας ἡμῶν ὑμῶν τῷ ἔθισι καὶ θεοφιλεῖς καὶ δίκαιοι, εὐφραίνειν τὸν πατέρα, ὑποσχέσται αὐτῷ, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἠμᾶς, οἷς οὐκ ἔστιν πίστις ἐν αὐτοῖς. 246 On the argument for Abraham’s justification before circumcision see Rom 4:10-12, cf. *Dial.* 11.5; 23.4-5. On the argument for Christians as the true Israel see Gal 3:8-9, cf. *Dial.* 44.2; 119.5-120.1. 247 Both passages refer to Gen 12:3; 15:6; 17:24.
Jews as the true Israel. So here the Pauline material stands alongside the prophetic announcements that the Jews would reject Jesus and the Gentiles accept him. 248

A further similarity to a Pauline argument is found in Dial. 119.5 where there is a citation of Gen 15:6 that is used by Justin to claim that uncircumcised Gentiles who believe are like their spiritual father Abraham. 249 Abraham's call parallels the call of the Gentiles in Justin's day. Because the Gentiles are children of Abraham through faith, the inheritance belongs to them. Both Justin and Paul quote the passage from Genesis to declare that Gentile Christians are justified like Abraham.

Justin's use here of the Abraham story in Dial. 11, 23, and 119 and their contexts indicate that Justin has drifted away from the original purposes of Paul's arguments. 250 The passage in Romans is used by Paul to show that both Jew and Gentile share equal standing before God because both have the same faith as Abraham. The passage in Galatians is used in much the same way. In neither passage does Paul use Abraham to argue for the exclusion of the Jews, but rather, to show that both Jew and Gentile inherit the promise to Abraham. But Justin has taken this argument and transformed it by placing it with ideas of the new covenant, new people, and understanding of the Prophets as witnesses to Jewish unfaithfulness and rejection. 251 Thus, the Abraham material is linked with prophetic material to substantiate his claim that Christians are the true Israel.


251 Cf. Dial. 7 where Justin claims that the Prophets announce (καταγγέλλουν) the Christ. The Prophets also knew about the Jews' rejection of the Messiah. Further, the Prophets also testify to the fact that God will create a new people from among the Gentiles with whom he makes a new covenant and through which they become the new Israel (Dial. 39.1). See also Werline, "The Transformation of Pauline Arguments in Justin Martyr's Dialogue with Trypho," 82; 86.
The explanation for this transformation of Pauline arguments is quite logical. Since Paul's death Palestinian Jews had fought two wars with Rome. Further, by Justin's time, the church had become predominantly Gentile since the Jews had, in general, not embraced the gospel. Thus, the church in Justin's era had a different character than it had in Paul's era. The more Gentiles that entered the church, the more the Law faded into the background. The church became a Gentile phenomenon rather than a Jewish sect.

Ultimately the necessity of faith and the expectation of an eternal Law is fulfilled in Jesus. He is the new and eternal Law whom the Prophets predicted. In many places throughout the Dialogue Justin makes this explicit claim. Perhaps the best example of these claims is Dial. 43 where Justin states that, according to the will of the Father, circumcision, sabbaths, sacrifices, oblations and festivals originating with Abraham and Moses have their end in Him who was born of the virgin, of the race of Abraham, of the tribe of Judah, and of the family of David. Justin continues, “...in Christ, the Son of God, who was proclaimed as coming to the whole world to be an eternal law and a new covenant, just as the prophecies which were mentioned before show.”

C. Jesus as the Logos of God

The understanding of Jesus as the new and eternal Covenant is an important concept in the Dialogue as a point of contact with the Jews in his presentation of truth. Justin’s Logos concept, however, also remains an integral part of his

---


253 This, obviously, had a negative effect on Jewish-Christian relations and identity. See P. Richardson, Israel in the Apostolic Church (SNTSMS 10; Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1969) 33-38.

254 Simon, Perus Israel, 68.

255 Dial. 24; 34; 43; 51; 67; 110; 118; 121; 122.

256 Dial. 43.1 ἀληθεύει τῷ θεῷ Χριστῷ, ὅτις καὶ αἰώνιος κόσμος καὶ κατηθήθη τῷ πραγματικῷ κόσμῳ ἐκπρόσετο προελευσόμενος, οὕς τί προελευσόμεναι προβήτεται σημαίνονται.
presentation of truth. In Justin’s hands the Logos theology was able to explain to Trypho Christ’s deity (pre-existence with the Father) and his incarnation.

1. God

It is necessary to view Justin’s Logos theology in light of a necessary progression from his concept of God. In summary form Justin’s basic concept is that God, the Creator of the universe, is unlike any other being. He resides in the super-celestial realms and is unseen by humankind. He is without beginning and end and is the cause through whom all else exists. Everything that exists does so through his purposes and will.

The connection of this with Justin’s Logos theology is hinted at in Dial. 59 where Justin explains to Trypho that the theophanies which appeared to Abraham, Jacob, and Moses were not God the Creator. Then, in the next chapter, he states that his reason for this understanding is because he believes it absurd to assert that the Creator and Father of all things would leave the super-celestial realms to make himself visible in a little spot on the earth. This argument was hinted at in chap. 56 where Justin tells us that God “…remains forever in the super-celestial realms, having never been seen or ever conversing with anyone, whom we understand to be creator and father of all.” And this argument appears again in chap. 114 where Justin criticizes Trypho’s teachers for believing that the unbegotten God has hands and feet and fingers and a soul like a compound creature. This belief causes the Jews to assert that God himself appeared to Abraham and Jacob. But in Justin’s Middle Platonic influenced concept of God it is the Logos who appears to reveal the Father to humanity.

257 For a detailed treatment of Justin’s concept of God see above, pp. 58-74.
258 Dial. 56.1 τὸν ἐν τοῖς ὑπερουρανίοις δὲι λέγοντος καὶ οἰδειν ὁφθαντος ἢ ὁμιλήσαντος
2. The Logos as God’s Mode of Expression

Rather than leaving it to rest here Justin builds upon this foundation to express what is perhaps the most pivotal doctrine in all of Justin’s writings. Because Justin’s concept of God does not allow that the Father appear in space and time, Justin used the well-known Logos concept as God’s mode of expression in space and time.

What was hinted at in chaps. 56, 59, and 114 is made clear in chap. 127. An extended quotation here well illustrates Justin’s progression of thought on this matter.

Whenever God says, “God went up from Abraham,” or “The Lord spoke to Moses,” and “The Lord came down to see the tower which the sons of men had built,” or when “God closed the ark of Noah from the outside,” do not think that the unbegotten God himself came down or went up from or to his state. For the ineffable Father and lord of all neither comes to any place nor walks, nor sleeps, nor rises, but remains in his own environment, wherever that is. Keenly seeing and keenly hearing, not with eyes or ears, but with an indescribable power. And he bears and knows all things and none of us escapes his notice. Nor is this one moved or confined to a locality in the whole world, for he was existing even before the creation of the world! How, therefore, could he be talking to someone, or be seen by someone, or to appear in an insignificant place on the earth…? Therefore, neither Abraham, nor Isaac, nor Jacob, nor any other man really saw the Father and ineffable Lord of all and of Christ himself. But [they saw] him who was according to his will his son, being God, and angel because he ministered to his purpose—the one who, by his (God’s) will, became man through a virgin; the one who also became fire when he conversed with Moses from the bush. If we do not thus understand the scriptures, we must conclude that the Father and Lord of all was not in heaven when what Moses wrote took place.
The progression of thought is plain here. The understanding of God being unbegotten is used to differentiate between God and all other beings. Thus, the Middle Platonic concept of God being unbegotten and not himself desiring to leave the heavens to make himself visible is moved to the next logical step. The Logos incarnate, Jesus, is the one who appeared to the OT patriarchs and ultimately became manifest to all humankind under the auspices of the Father’s will. Thus we see that Justin’s reliance and dependence upon his Logos theology is necessary because of his Middle Platonic understanding of God being unbegotten. The progression is natural for Justin as he uses the Logos concept to show that the Son existed with the Father before the creation of the world and played a significant role in carrying out the plan of the Father.

3. The Logos and John’s Gospel

It is well known that out of all the NT documents only the Gospel of John refers to Jesus as λόγος. But Justin develops his doctrine of the Logos beyond anything found in the fourth Gospel. A number of aspects of his Logos theology have no NT parallel: the Logos as the speech and fire of God, the Logos as a “rational power,” and as the angel of the Lord in the OT theophanies. Many studies have been undertaken in an attempt to discern the source of Justin’s doctrine of the Logos. From these studies five main sources or possible influences have been suggested:

Philo, Stoicism, Neo-Platonism, Christian tradition, or a mixture of all

261 Osborn, Justin Martyr, 21.
262 This is made clear in Dial. 128-129.
264 Dial. 61.
265 Dial. 61.1 δυναμίς λόγικη
266 Dial. 56; 58; 59; etc.
268 See e.g., G. L. Prestige, God in Patristic Thought (London: SPCK, 1956).
four. To state the matter in a different way, one could ask, "Did Justin argue his Logos theology independent of John’s Gospel or was the fourth Gospel the springboard upon which Justin progressed?"

The most balanced and fair assessment of the issue appears to be the last of the five, but this must be balanced by a distinction between a total dependence on the fourth Gospel and using the same Gospel as a starting point. The idea of the Logos was a widespread concept preceding and during Justin's era. But over against all the theories concerning influence upon Justin's doctrine is the fact that he ultimately regarded the Logos as the manifestation of the Father in space and time, that is, Justin identified the Logos with the incarnate Son. Therefore, in attempting an understanding of Justin’s dependence on John’s Gospel five factors must be kept in mind. First, other than the Johannine tradition there is no evidence of an explicit Logos christology in the first century. Second, the philosophical Logos speculation present in Justin and other Apologists is not paralleled in John’s Gospel. Third, Justin never explicitly quotes the prologue of John. Fourth, even though Justin never quotes from the Prologue, verbal allusions are apparent. Fifth, it was not in Justin’s best interests to quote from the fourth Gospel. Trypho would not have been impressed by

---

270 See e.g., Barnard, Justin Martyr; M.J. Edwards, "Justin’s Logos and the Word of God," J Early Chr St 3 (1993) 261-290; Pryor, "Justin Martyr and the Fourth Gospel".
274 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 87; Kelly, Early Christian Doctrines, 96; Torrance, "Early Patristic Interpretation of the Holy Scriptures," 94.
276 Even this is limited to three passages, John 1:1-14; Rev 19:3; 1 John 1:1.
this appeal. But it must be remembered that failure to cite and failure to make extensive use of a document are not the same thing.

If the above five factors are taken into consideration it is not problematic to posit that Justin used the Johannine prologue as a starting point for his Logos christology. The belief that Justin did not know the Prologue simply because he went beyond it is not proof of Justin’s teaching being independent of the fourth Gospel. In fact, it is perhaps more probable that since he did go beyond the Gospel Justin did derive his initial understanding from it.

Justin is sometimes criticized for the apparent contradiction in his theory which states that the Logos is with God, therefore numerically distinct from the Father, yet is still designated “God”. But this corresponds to the fact that throughout John’s Gospel the Son, on the one hand, is described as being as one with the Father (10:30), and as having equal power with the Father (5:18-24), but, on the other hand, the Father is called greater than the Son (14:28), and the Son is obedient to the Father in the execution of his will (5:30; 6:38). The writer of John’s Gospel makes no attempt to clear up this apparent contradiction. Whatever the influences on Justin were in his development of his Logos theology his originality lay in drawing out further implications of the Logos idea in order to make plausible the uneasy juxtaposition expressed in John’s Gospel. In other words, he wanted to explain the two-fold fact of Christ’s pre-temporal oneness with the Father and his manifestation in space and time.

---

277 See, Osborn, Justin Martyr, 138.
279 On the improbability of Justin’s dependence on Philo for his starting point see, Barnard, Justin Martyr, 85-100; Osborn, Justin Martyr 28-43; Pryor, “Justin Martyr and the Fourth Gospel,” 160-161.
280 Dial. 56.1; 61.1, 3; 127.4; 128; 129.
4. Distinction Between the Logos and the Father

Based upon the above mentioned Middle Platonic understanding of God as apart from this mode of existence Justin makes use of the ambiguity of the term λόγος. The term has basically two meanings subsumed under the two main heads of inward thought and outward expression of that thought. Logos, therefore, in Justin is not merely "word" or "speech", but the divine Mind or Reason expressing itself and acting upon us as Word. In reference to Christ as the pre-existent Logos of God, Christ was the Father’s thought or mind, and Jesus, as manifested in creation, was the outward expression of that thought or mind.

In developing the theory of the Logos as the Father’s intelligence or rational thought Justin was sure to show that the Logos was a separate person, distinct from the Father. The proof that Justin offered of the numerical distinction of the Logos was three-fold. First, he argued that the appearances of God in the Old Testament writings were not actual appearances of the Father. Because the Father is ineffable, unbegotten, unseen and unheard, and does not come or go to any place, does not walk, sleep, rise up and is not confined to any one spot in the whole world, there must be some explanation for the Old Testament expressions of God doing such things. Justin’s explanation is found in the Logos. Concerning these appearances of God Justin states, “Therefore, neither Abraham, nor Isaac, nor Jacob, nor any other man really saw the Father and ineffable Lord of all, and of Christ himself, but [they saw] him who was according to his will his son, being God, and angel because he

281 Pannenberg, Jesus—God and Man, 160-161.
284 Dial. 41; 42; 128; 129.
285 Adapted from Kelly, Early Christian Doctrines, 96-97.
286 Dial. 127.1.
287 Dial. 127.1.
288 Dial. 3.7.
289 Dial. 127.1-2.
ministered to his purpose—the one who, by his will, became man through a virgin.\footnote{Dial. 127.4 οὔτε οὖν Ἀβραὰμ οὔτε Ἰσαὰκ οὔτε Ἰακὼβ οὔτε ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων εἶδε τὸν πατέρα καὶ ἀρρητοῦ κύριον τῶν πάντων ἀπλῶς καὶ αὐτὸν τὸν Χριστὸν, ἀλλ' ἔκεινον τὸν κατὰ βουλήν τὴν ἐκείνου καὶ θεὸν ὡστα, ὕπον αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἄγγελον ἐκ τοῦ ὑπηρετεῖν τῇ γνώμῃ αὐτοῦ· διεὶς καὶ ἄνθρωπον γεννηθηκαί διὰ τῆς παρθένου βεβούληται.} The alleged appearances of the Father are therefore described as appearances of the Logos.

The second proof offered for the numerical distinction of the Father and the Logos was the OT passages which presented God as conversing with another rational being. Justin argues that passages like Gen 1:26 (“Let us make man in our image...”) are evidence, not only of the thought or reason (λόγος) of God being pre-temporally existent with the Father before creation, but also of the otherness of this Logos. After quoting Gen 1:26, 27 to Trypho Justin states,

I inquire by quoting again the words of Moses himself, from which we unhesitatingly learn that he [God] associated with someone who was different in number and a rational being. And these are the words [of Moses], “And God said, ‘Behold, Adam has become like one of us, to know good and evil.’” Therefore, by saying, “like one of us,” he [Moses] has called to mind that [there were] a number of persons being in company with each other, and that [there were] at least two... but this offspring, being brought forth by the Father, was with the Father before all creation, and the Father associated with this one before [all creation], just as the word through Solomon made known, that he whom Solomon called wisdom was begotten as a beginning before all creation and as offspring by God.\footnote{Dial. 129.4 cf. 61.3-7; 62.4.}

The Third proof offered by Justin for the numerical distinction of the Father and the Logos is the great Wisdom texts such as Prov 8:22 (“The Lord created me a beginning of his ways”). In Dial. 129 Justin states that the only explanation for such texts is that “that which is begotten is numerically distinct from that which begets.”\footnote{Dial. 129.4 cf. 61.3-7; 62.4.}
5. *Generation of the Logos*

Since the Logos is numerically distinct from the Father in Justin's thought it is logical to ask about the generation of the Logos. With the numerical distinction of the Father and the Logos already in place we also see that the Logos is described by Justin as divine\(^{293}\) and that we worship the Logos as God.\(^{294}\) Is it logical to conclude, therefore, that Justin is speaking ditheistically about another God? A number of passages show that Justin's comments do not merit this conclusion. For example, in explaining that the Logos is not sent as an inanimate power, but as one begotten from the Father, Justin states,

For he possesses all these names because he serves the Father's will and was begotten from the Father's will. Do we not see something of like manner occurring in us? For when we put forth a word, we beget the word; not by cutting it off, in the sense that by putting forth the word in us, it is made inferior. And we see this occurring in a similar manner in a fire, which is not made inferior when it has become kindled, but it remains the same; and that which has been kindled by it appears on its own, not being inferior to that from which it was kindled.\(^{295}\)

So the Logos is not another God in the ditheistic sense. The Logos has always been with the Father and always ministers according to the Father's will.

6. *The Logos and the Will of the Father*

Justin's intent is to show that the Logos was present with God before creation, active throughout the dispensation of the old covenant and the manifestation of the

\(^{293}\) *Dial.* 56.1; 61.1, 3; 63.3; 127.4.

\(^{294}\) *Dial.* 30.3; 34.2; 63.5; 116.3.

\(^{295}\) *Dial.* 61.1-2 εἴει γὰρ πάντα προσονομάζεσθαι ἐκ τε τοῦ ὑπηρετεῖν τῷ πατρικῷ βουλήματι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἀπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς δελησεί γεγενημέναι. ἄλλῳ οὖ τοιούτῳ ὁποῖον καὶ ἐφ᾽ ἢμῶν γενόμενον δράμειν, λόγον γὰρ τινα προβαλλόμενοι, λόγον γενόμενον, οὗ κατὰ ἀποτομήν, ὡς ἠλαττώθην τῶν ἑπέ τίς λόγου, προβαλλόμενοι. καὶ ὁποῖον ἐπὶ πυρὸς δράμειν ἄλλο γενόμενον, οὗ ἠλαττωμένον ἐκείνον ἔξ οὗ ἡ ἀνάφεσις γέγονεν, ἀλλὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ μείνατος, καὶ τὸ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἀναφέθεν καὶ αὐτὸ δι᾽ αὐτὸν, οὕτω ἠλαττώσαν ἐκεῖνο ἔξ οὗ ἀνήθησθαι. Cf. also *Dial.* 128.4. "It has also been shown at length that this power which the prophetic word calls God and Angel not only is numbered as different by its name (as is the light of the sun), but is something distinct in real number, I have already briefly discussed. For I stated that this power was generated from the Father, by His power and will, but not by abscission, as if the substance of the Father were divided; as all other things, once they are divided and severed, are not the same as they were before the division. To illustrate this point, I cited the example of fires kindled from a fire; the enkindled fires are indeed distinct from the original fire which, though it ignites many other fires, still remains the same undiminished fire."
new covenant. Any time Justin discusses the participation of the Logos in these contexts it is always with the understanding that the Logos is carrying out the will of the Father, that he is a manifestation of the Father's will. Thus, in speaking of creation Justin points out that the Father talked with him (the Logos) before all creation signifying, among other things, his participation in creation.296 And the participation of the Logos during the dispensation of the old covenant is indicated by the various theophanies that Justin insists are not appearances of the Father, but rather, appearances of the Logos.

But ultimately the importance of the Logos is seen in the incarnation. In making use of the ambiguity of the term λόγος as the expression of the Divine Mind or reason Justin claims that the Logos became incarnate through an act of the Father's will.297 In the Dialogue with Trypho there is no mention of the spermatic Logos that is present in the Apologies of Justin.298 In the Apologies Justin uses the concept of the spermatic Logos to show that Jesus completed the knowledge of the Father. Here, in the Dialogue, Justin still desires to show that the incarnate Word completes the knowledge of the Father but he does so in a different way.

Trypho and his friends are exhorted to follow Jesus because it is through him that people are enlightened299 and saved.300 Throughout the stress that Justin places on the ministry of Jesus there is the underlying assertion of the unity of his ministry with the will of the Father. Not only was Christ begotten by an act of the Father's will301 but he also ministers according to the Father's will because of his generation from the

296 Dial. 62.4.
297 Dial. 61.1-2; 101.1; 102.5.
298 For more on the Spermatic Logos see below, pp. 133-135; 177; 252-255.
299 Dial. 127.
300 Dial. 127.
301 Dial. 56.11; 127.4.
Chapter 2—Truth in *Dialogue with Trypho*

Father. It is this unity in the relationship with the Father that necessarily must be stressed in Justin's presentation of the truth. The *Logos* does nothing that is outside the plan and will of the Father.

VI. Summary and Conclusion

If we now reflect back to what was stated earlier concerning the second century context of truth, we can place Justin's presentation of truth into a more understandable framework. With the merging of Hebrew and Greek concepts of truth the NT writers were seen to diverge from both thought forms. The NT presents a realized eschatology that the Hebrews only looked forward to in the OT, and still do in the second century. By affirming the historical reality of Jesus Christ the Greek thought form is also challenged. He is recognized and affirmed as being involved in the flow of history. Upon this realization, Justin's presentation of truth was investigated as philosophical and thoroughly christological.

That Justin desired to communicate something about the concept of truth, or what he believed was truth, is seen from the very genre that he chose. The genre of dialogue was thus chosen to present truth. There are some similarities between Justin's *Dialogue* and the Platonic dialogues, but it is the divergences which stand out. Justin's *Dialogue* contains elements that go beyond the basic understanding of dialogue genre. The most important of these elements is that the Platonic dialogues did not result in the attainment of truth, they acted more as a midwife leading the pupil to find truth himself. It was left to Justin, in light of this "shortcoming," to add a new twist to the dialogue genre. Because Justin believed he had found the truth, he wanted to explain it. He therefore chose the dialogue genre as the medium of his explanation.

---

302 *Dial.* 61.1.
303 See above, pp. 108-116.
Justin's presentation of truth is philosophical in that he believed that the primary task of the philosopher is the investigation of truth. Even after his conversion Justin considered himself to be a philosopher. Indeed, he thought of himself as more of a philosopher than ever before because he had attained the ultimate reality in God, the true philosophy. For Justin, truth was one of the main areas of investigation for the philosopher. Through the old man he learned that the truth which philosophers seek cannot be attained through philosophers because they had neither seen nor heard God or from the Prophets. Truth can only be known directly through someone who had seen or heard God—the Prophets. Thus, philosophy was sent down to men by God (κατανεμέω). But the philosophy that was sent down to humanity by God was not the "many-headed" version of contemporary philosophy. It was rather the philosophy which was clearly shown by the Prophets who had seen and heard God himself. It is the message of the Prophets that is the true philosophy and this is what should be investigated and understood.

Justin's presentation of truth is thoroughly christological in that it is centered on the event of Jesus Christ. Foundational to this is the fact that God is in control—everything functions according to his will and purposes. This will and purpose is ultimately presented by Justin in the historical figure of Jesus, the New covenant and the Logos of God as the new covenant. Thus, since the search for truth finds its fulfillment in Jesus Christ, and since the philosophical enterprise centers on this truth, truth is actually more christological than philosophical. Truth resides in the sensible realm in the form of the Logos incarnate. The Prophets predict this and the Apostles witness it.

In this vein, Justin uses the argument from prophecy to show that the Jewish way of justification before God is obsolete and has been surpassed. It is based upon
Jewish and Christian mutual respect for the OT scriptures and the sovereignty of God in history. The argument proceeded by an appeal to a prophecy, a christological interpretation and a sign of fulfillment in Jesus. The crux of the argument rested in the reality of a fulfillment, in truth. This is done through an appeal to evidence and facts which are received through observation and the Memoirs of the Apostles as portraying history. Thus, it is the incarnate Logos, the historical Jesus, who is the key because he is the one who brings fulfillment to the Prophecies. Without the event, there is nothing to which the prophecies point, nothing that is fulfilled.

Justin also employs the argument from prophecy to argue that Jesus is the New Covenant or Law that was prophesied in scripture. The old Mosaic Law is rejected because of its lack of provision of salvation. Salvation can only be found in the predicted New Law, which surpasses or fulfils the Old. It is based on faith, the same faith that justified Abraham.

Finally, the Logos theology of Justin presents the truth of Christianity as a master plan in the will of the Father. Because the Father does not desire to leave the heavenly realm, the Logos is employed by Justin to show the partnership in performing and exemplifying the will of God. The Logos (Jesus) was therefore present with the Father before creation, was an active agent in creation, appeared in theophanies as a true representative of God, and ultimately became the Logos incarnate—God in human form. The key in understanding the incarnation of the Logos is that he always carries out the will of the Father, his will is the Father’s will. Therefore, to see Jesus is to see the Father. He completed the knowledge of the Father.

From the foregoing understanding of Justin’s presentation of truth we return to the question of concepts of truth. Did Justin hold to his old Platonic way of
understanding truth, the Hebraic way, or, does he fall in line with the NT writers in creating a hybrid concept of truth? The answer should be clear that Justin rejects both the Hebraic and Greek concepts of truth for the NT concept. History is certainly central in his concept, a history that is centered in the prediction and the actual appearance of Jesus Christ. The Prophets predicted and the Apostles witnessed his coming. This is similar to the Hebraic concept, but the pivotal thing is that with the coming of Jesus there is a realized fulfillment of what the Prophets predicted. There can be no more waiting, the messiah had arrived. This is also similar to the Greek concept in that Justin’s presentation of truth was seen as progressive. God had a will and a plan throughout history which would prepare humanity for the appearance of the messiah. But it was an actual appearance within the changing history.

In light of this we can conclude that Justin continues the NT understanding of truth. He is within the tradition of transforming Greek and Hebrew thinking to strengthen his presentation of the Gospel of Jesus Christ. There is no “watering down” due to undue influence of Platonic thought.

So we come full circle to the concept of truth in the *Dialogue*. That Jesus was an actual historical person is beyond question to Justin. He acted and spoke and these things are recorded in the historic writings of the Apostles. These writings testify to the reality of his appearing. These things have the ability to be tested. But Justin realizes that not everything he puts forward as truth is this clear.304 Much of Justin’s presentation of truth requires a further investigation into his foundations for exegesis or interpretation of scripture, and this will be done in chapter four of this work. The fact remains, however, that Justin’s presentation of truth rested on his respect for the Prophets as hearers and observers of the ultimate reality—God.

304 *Dial.* 48.
The foundational understanding of *Dialogue with Trypho* is that it is a presentation of what Justin believed to be the ultimate truth—salvation for all men through Jesus Christ. His presentation of this truth includes the witness of scripture as well as philosophical underpinnings. But the key is that Justin sees these as realities originating with God.
CHAPTER THREE
The New Testament Canon and the Dialogue with Trypho

From the perspective of the emergence of the NT canon, Justin's Dialogue with Trypho is important and intriguing because of the time frame in which Justin lived and wrote. Justin remains the most important of all the second century apologists. He is the first post-apostolic writer whose writings are of considerable size. Further, he lived in and was acquainted with the church at Rome during a time when Christian oral and written tradition still existed side by side, although, "slowly the written documents alone were coming to be held as authoritative." It could be argued that this transition is best seen in the Apostolic Father Papias of Hieropolis (ca. 60-130), but since his extant writings are only fragmentary one is better served by the comparatively voluminous writings of Justin.

As will be seen later in this chapter, the deliberate closing of a collection of Christian writings is an event that belongs to an age beyond Justin's. This being the case, it is more proper to speak of the state of the NT writings in Justin's Dialogue with Trypho rather than the NT canon itself. In other words the direction pursued

---

1 Eusebius, H.e. 4.11.7-11; 4.16.1-9.
3 Greek texts and English translations of the fragments of Papias of Hieropolis can be found in J. B. Lightfoot, The Apostolic Fathers (London: Macmillan, 1907) 513-535.
4 Polemics concerning the "closing" of the canon have distracted constructive focus on the process of the canon closing. This is what I have in mind by using the term state of the NT canon at the time of
here is in the area of Justin’s view of the writings that eventually became part of the NT canon. Did he precede Irenaeus in the conception of a four-fold gospel canon? Did he use any extra-canonical works in his Dialogue? These and other related questions will dominate the discussion as Justin’s quotations, references, and possible allusions to NT documents are examined.

Study of Justin Martyr in reference to the emerging NT writings has centered on the ἀπομνημονεύματα. It is with good reason that this has been the case, for Justin’s conception and use of the “Memoirs” and the “Memoirs of the Apostles” give good indication about the attitude he had toward Christian writings of his time. This attitude is, of course, instructive in a study of the state of the emerging NT canon.

I. The ἀπομνημονεύματα

A. Authorship, Reliability and Content

1. Written Documents

Justin presents the Memoirs of the Apostles as written documents which were composed by the Apostles and those who followed them. It is apparent that they are written documents because Justin not only quotes from them, but he also states that they were read (ἀναγινώσκεται), along with the writings of the Prophets, during the Dialogue with Trypho. The process or state of the canon does not presuppose a closed canon, but rather focuses on attitudes toward and uses of early Christian literature on the way to canonization. See, A. C. Outler, “The ‘Logic’ of Canon-Making and the Tasks of Canon-Criticism,” in W. E. March (ed.), Texts and Testaments: Critical Essays on the Bible and Early Church Fathers (FS S. D. Currie; San Antonio: Trinity University Press, 1980) 263-276.

6 Ἀντικείμενα τῶν ἄποστόλων
7 Justin uses various introductory formulas to introduce quotations from written sources which he identifies as memoirs: Dial. 100.1 γέγραπται εἰς τῶν ἄποστόλων αὐτοῦ γέγραπται, Dial. 103.6 ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἄποστόλων αὐτοῦ γέγραπται, Dial. 104.1 ὅπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἄποστόλων αὐτοῦ γέγραπται γενόμενον, Dial. 105.6 ταῦτα εἰρηκέναι ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι γέγραπται, Dial. 106.6 ὢς γέγραπται ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἄποστόλων αὐτοῦ, Dial. 107.1 γέγραπται ἐν τοῖς ἀπομνημονεύμασι τῶν ἄποστόλων αὐτοῦ.
Sunday gathering for instruction and exhortation. These Memoirs were literally created or put together by the Apostles and their followers. It is thus clear that the Memoirs were written by the Apostles and their followers.

2. The Memoirs and the Argument From Prophecy

Justin refers to the Memoirs of the Apostles a total of fifteen times in all his extant writings, with the majority of references (13) concentrated in chapters 99-107 of the Dialogue with Trypho. In each instance the term serves to quote, or refer to Christian writings which demonstrate that the prophecy of Ps 22 had been fulfilled in Jesus. It is here that the value of the Memoirs in Justin's argument from prophecy is seen. It has already been pointed out that Justin was converted to Christianity through an appeal to the Prophets. This conversion, and the influence of the old man, sets the stage in the Dialogue for the framework which Justin would then follow throughout—a strong connection with the OT scriptures. As stated above, Trypho is clear in his appreciation of this fact.

According to Justin, the Prophets spoke God's words, thus their words are perceived as being on the same level as the words of God. This is because the Prophets spoke by "the prophetic spirit," and "the (holy) spirit of prophecy." The prophetic writings are reliable because they are the words and message of God.

But this is not the only significance of the prophetic scriptures. Another, and perhaps more important, reason is that they prophesy and testify concerning the life, death, and resurrection of Jesus. Justin uses the life of Christ, as witnessed in the

---

8 1 Apol. 67.3-4.
9 1 Apol. 66.3 γενομένοις
10 Dial. 103.8 συμμετάδχαι
11 1 Apol. 65.3; 67.3; Dial. 100.4; 101.3; 102.5; 103.6; 8; 104.1; 105.1, 5, 6; 106.1, 3, 4; 107.1.
12 Justin's argument from prophecy is discussed in more detail above, pp. 145-160.
13 Dial. 56.16; Dial. 80.1.
14 See e.g., Dial. 41.2; 44.2, 3; 46.5; 78.8; cf. 80.4-5; 84.1; 94.1; 133.2.
15 τό προφητικόν πνεύμα Dial. 43.3; 53.4; 77.3; 91.4.
16 τόν (άγιον) προφητικόν πνεύματος Dial. 32.3; 84.2; 139.1.
apostolic writings and the apostolic tradition, as a sort of proving ground for the prophetic scriptures. He therefore believes that Jesus was spoken of in the prophetic scriptures. The Jews, therefore, cannot use ignorance as an excuse,

For you [the Jews] did not offer sacrifice to Baal, as your fathers, nor did you place cakes in groves and on the high places for the host of heavens. Yet, you have not accepted his [God’s] Christ. For the one who is ignorant of this one [Christ] is also ignorant of the purpose of God, and the one who insults and hates this one [Christ] clearly hates and insults the one who sent him. And he who does not believe in him does not believe the Prophets, who offered the good news and proclaimed it to all.17

This, in essence, is the argument from prophecy. Everything asserted about Jesus in the Christian tradition was predicted by the Prophets before he came and was born a man. For Justin the OT scriptures were Christian writings.18 As Christian writings they needed to be interpreted by the Christian tradition.19 For this reason, the prophecies which are delivered or handed down (παραδίδωμι) by the Prophets, are recalled to prove the event of Jesus Christ, the Logos incarnate in space and time.20

When the concentration of references to the Memoirs in Dial. 99-107 are examined in light of Justin’s argument from prophecy we see that they are vital in his presentation. In this sense Justin uses the Memoirs as reliable written records, as documents that are accessible to all. Because these documents were written by men who lived with Jesus or, as followers of these men, received their information from them as reliable witnesses they are considered by Justin to be valuable in proving the

17 Dial. 136.3 οὕτως καὶ ὡς οἱ πατέρες ὑμῶν, οὔτε ἐν συστασίαις ή μετεώροις τόποις πέμματα ἐποίειτε τῇ στρατηγῷ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ, ἀλλ' ὅτι οὐκ ἔξεσασθε τοῦ Χριστοῦ αὐτοῦ, ὅ γαρ τούτων ἄγνωσιν ἀσκεῖ καὶ τὴν βουλὴν τοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ τούτων ἱδρύσων καὶ μισόν καὶ τοῦ πέμματος δὴλον ἂν καὶ μισεῖ καὶ ἵδρυσε καὶ εἰ ὅτι πιστεύει τὶς εἰς αὐτὸν, οὐ πιστεύει τὸς τῶν προφητῶν κηρύγματος τὸς αὐτὸν εἰσαγελειμένως καὶ κηρύχασιν εἰς πάντας.
18 Dial. 28-30.
20 See above, pp. 154-160.
fulfillment of prophecy. And this is exactly what Justin does with the Memoirs in Dial. 99-107.

3. The Memoirs and Psalm 22

In Dial. 99.1 Justin states that he will show Trypho how the whole of Ps 22 referred to Christ. Following this assertion Justin makes the thirteen references mentioned above to the Memoirs which, in his mind, prove that what was stated in Ps 22 is fulfilled in the person of Jesus and the events of his incarnation. Contained in these Memoirs are many statements about Jesus and references to specific occurrences surrounding his life, death, and resurrection. Thus, from the memoirs we can learn about the generation, birth, life, crucifixion, and resurrection of Jesus.

a. Generation

From the Memoirs one can learn that Jesus is the Son of God and that he proceeded before all creatures from the Father by his power and will. Jesus is the only-begotten of the Father of the universe, having been begotten of him as his Word (λόγος) and Power (δύναμις).

b. Birth

From the Memoirs one can learn that Jesus was born of a virgin in Bethlehem. At his nativity a star arose causing the Magi from Arabia to come and worship him. Further, King Herod plotted to kill him, so, at God’s command, Joseph took Mary and the child and fled to Egypt.

---

21 Dial. 103.
22 Dial. 100.4.
23 Dial. 105.1.
24 Dial. 100.4; 105.1.
25 Dial. 102.2.
26 Dial. 106.4.
c. Life

From the Memoirs one can learn that as soon as Jesus came out of the River Jordan at his baptism a voice said to him, “You are my Son, today I have begotten you.” The devil came and tempted Jesus, even so far as to get Jesus to worship him. But Jesus replied, “Get behind me Satan! The Lord your God you will worship and him only will you serve.” Jesus also urged his disciples to excel the Pharisees way of living by stating, “Unless your righteousness far exceeds that of the Scribes and Pharisees, you will not enter into the kingdom of heaven.” Jesus changed the names of some of his disciples including Peter, and the sons of Zebedee. When the Jews requested of him a sign, Jesus replied, “An evil and adulterous generation demands a sign, and a sign will not be given to them except the sign of Jonah.”

d. Crucifixion

From the Memoirs one can learn that the ones who saw Jesus on the cross wagged their heads, curled their lips in scorn, turned up their noses, and said, “He was calling Himself the Son of God, let him come down [from the cross] and walk! Let God save him!” In his trial before Pilate Jesus remained silent and would not answer his accusers. It is further recorded that on the night they came to capture him on the Mount of Olives that Jesus’ perspiration poured out like blood as he prayed, “If possible, let this cup pass.” Jesus was indeed crucified and that after the crucifixion those who crucified him would divide his garments among themselves. During his

---

27 Dial. 102.2.
28 Dial. 103.6 Τὸς μου ἐν σῷ, ἐγὼ σήμερον γεγένηκά σε.
29 Dial. 103.6 “Ὑπαγε ὁπίσω μου, σατανᾷ κύριον τὸν θεόν σου προσκυνήσεις καὶ αὐτῷ μόνῳ λατρεύσεις.
30 Dial. 105.6 Ἐὰν μὴ περισσεύσῃ ὡμῶν ἡ δικαιοσύνη πλείου τῶν γραμματέων καὶ Φαρισαίων, οὐ μὴ εἰσέλθῃ εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν τῶν οὐρανῶν.
31 Dial. 100.4; 106.3.
32 Dial. 107.1 Γενέα ποιμνικὰ καὶ μοχαλίς σημείον ἔπιζητε, καὶ σημείον οὐ δοθησται αὐτοῖς εἰ μὴ τὸ σημεῖον Ἰωάννα.
33 Dial. 101.3 Ὑπὸ θεοῦ ἐαυτὸν ἔλεγε, καταβὰς περιπατεῖτω σωσάτω αὐτὸν ὁ θεὸς.
34 Dial. 102.5.
trial Jesus did not utter a word in his own defense.\textsuperscript{36} As he was giving up his spirit on
the cross he said, “Father, into thy hands I commit my spirit.”\textsuperscript{37} While Jesus was with
the Apostles before his arrest, they sang hymns to God.\textsuperscript{38}

\textit{e. Resurrection}

From the Memoirs one can learn that Jesus was resurrected from the dead on
the third day after the crucifixion.\textsuperscript{39}

The above information is presented by Justin in \textit{Dial.} 99-107 as proof that the
prophecies of Ps 22 had actually occurred in Jesus. No argument for the reliability or
the existence of the Memoirs is offered, they are self-evidently presented as proving
the occurrences of certain events in the life of Jesus. Thus, it is quite clear that these
written Memoirs inform readers about Jesus and that the information which is related
in these concentrated references (99-107) are said to be contained in the Memoirs. But
can these Memoirs be more specifically identified? Much of the study about Justin
Martyr has centered on this very issue, i.e., what are the Memoirs?

\textbf{B. Identification of the Memoirs}

For our purposes, it is best to begin discussion of this issue with the
concentrated references to the Memoirs in \textit{Dial.} 99-107. There Justin actually
identifies the source of one of Jesus’ sayings as being written in the gospel
(έν τῷ εὐαγγέλιῳ). Justin states, “...but also in the gospel it is written that he [Jesus]
said, ‘Everything has been handed over to me by the Father...’”\textsuperscript{40} Here Justin uses
the term εὐαγγέλιον as a source where one may obtain sayings of Jesus in written
form. The use of the term is provocative in light of the fact that it is contained within

\textsuperscript{36} \textit{Dial.} 103.8 Παρελθήτω, εἰς δυνάτον, τὸ ποτήριον τούτο.
\textsuperscript{37} \textit{Dial.} 104.1-2.
\textsuperscript{38} \textit{Dial.} 105.5 Πάτερ, εἰς χειρὰς σου παρατίθεμαι τὸ πνεῦμά μου
\textsuperscript{39} \textit{Dial.} 106.1.
\textsuperscript{40} \textit{Dial.} 107.1.
those concentrated references to the Memoirs of the Apostles. We know that the Memoirs are written documents, and Justin has just stated that the “gospel” is a written document as well. We also know that just as the εὐαγγέλιον contains sayings of Jesus in a written form, so do the Memoirs. Could it be that the Memoirs and the εὐαγγέλιον are simply different terms for the same document(s)?

Justin does use the term εὐαγγέλιον two other times in his writings,

For the Apostles, in the Memoirs created by them, which are also called gospels, have handed down that which he [Jesus] commanded...

Trypho said... But I believe your precepts in the so-called gospel to be so wonderful and so great that no one is able to keep them. For I have carefully read them.

It does appear that these three occurrences of the term support the tentative conclusion above that when Justin refers to the εὐαγγέλιον he is referring to a written document—the Memoirs. This is indeed the scholarly consensus.

If we know that in Justin the ἀπομνημονεύματα and the εὐαγγέλιον are written documents, that both contain sayings of Jesus in written form, and that both record events surrounding the life of Jesus, then it is quite probable that both the ἀπομνημονεύματα and the εὐαγγέλιον are references to the same writing(s).

Justin often uses these as reliable demonstration that prophecies of the OT concerning...
Jesus had taken place. They are trustworthy records because the authors of these documents were men who lived with Jesus or, as their followers, received their information from them as reliable witnesses.\textsuperscript{45}

\textit{C. Non-Referenced Material in the Dialogue}

But the \textit{Dialogue with Trypho} contains additional appeals to this type of information. For example, throughout the rest of the \textit{Dialogue} Justin relates much of the same of information that he did in \textit{Dial. 99-107} concerning the generation, birth, life, crucifixion and resurrection of Jesus.\textsuperscript{46} It is only in the concentrated references, however, that Justin informs the reader that the information can be found in the Memoirs. In these other references the reader is not informed as to the source of the information which Justin communicates. But because this same information is later stated by Justin to be included in the Memoirs, we can safely conclude that wherever this information is given to the reader without indication of source, Justin most likely obtained it from the Memoirs. In other words, information that is given by Justin anywhere in the \textit{Dialogue with Trypho} that is consistent with the information contained in the concentrated section of \textit{Dial. 99-107}, is best understood as having its source in the Memoirs of the Apostles.

This leaves open the question as to the source(s) of the other information about Jesus: his life, information about John the Baptist, and sayings that are attributed to him by Justin. For example, in reference to Jesus’ life, Justin informs his readers that Jesus ascended into heaven,\textsuperscript{47} that there was no lodging place at Bethlehem at the time of Jesus’ birth,\textsuperscript{48} and that the soldiers cast lots for Jesus’
garments at the cross.\textsuperscript{49} In reference to John the Baptist, Justin informs his readers that Elijah is a forerunner of the Christ and that John the Baptist is Elijah.\textsuperscript{50} In reference to dominical sayings, one can deduce that there are no less than twenty-three sayings in the \textit{Dialogue} that Justin attributes to Jesus.\textsuperscript{51} The question at hand concerning the information contained in these references in the \textit{Dialogue} centers around the source—where did Justin get this information?

We do know that all the information contained in the concentrated section of chapters 99-107 can be found in what later became the canonical Synoptic Gospels. If we now compare the information that Justin cites or alludes to with no source reference we can also see that the majority of it is found in what later became the canonical Synoptic Gospels.\textsuperscript{52} This is strong evidence that the source for this material is also the Memoirs of the Apostles which, ultimately, contain (at least) synoptic gospel material. Thus, one possible conclusion which might be reached that is Justin, in one form or another, knew of the Synoptic Gospels, that he used them in his \textit{Dialogue with Trypho}, and that he referred to them as Memoirs of the Apostles. But, it remains to be seen that this is the most likely conclusion.

\textsuperscript{49} \textit{Dial.} 97.4. Other events referred to by Justin with no reference to source include: that he was a descendant of Abraham (32.3); that Pilate was governor of Judea when Jesus was crucified (30.3); that Christ was placed at God's right hand after the resurrection (32.3); that Christ commanded us to offer the Eucharistic bread in remembrance of his passion (40.1); that Jesus ordered his disciples to get an ass and its foal when he was about to enter Jerusalem (53.2); that the Magi presented gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh to the child (78.2); that the Magi were admonished in a vision not to return to Herod (78.2); that Joseph received a vision commanding him not to put Mary away for her conception was of the Holy Spirit (78.3); that Joseph received another vision commanding him, Mary and the child to go into Egypt and remain there until another vision should advise them to return (78.4); that the Magi failed to return to Herod as a result of the vision they received (78.7); that Herod, because the Magi had not informed him who the child was, ordered every boy in Bethlehem to be killed (78.7); that Jesus was the son of a carpenter (88.8).

\textsuperscript{50} \textit{Dial.} 49.3-5; 51.1-2. Other events surrounding John the Baptist which Justin relates with no reference to source include: a quotation of John the Baptist as he sat by the Jordan (49.3); that John was imprisoned by Herod, and while in prison the dancing of Herod's niece pleased Herod so much that he promised to give her whatever she desired. At her mother's prompting the niece asked for the head of John the Baptist (49.4); a description of John's clothing and diet, and a summary of his preaching by the Jordan, saying that he was not the Christ (88.7).

\textsuperscript{51} These include the following: \textit{Dial.} 17.3, 4 (2x); 35.2-3; 48.8; 51.3; 76.4, 5 (2x), 6, 7; 81.4; 82.1-2; 88.8; 93.2; 96.3; 112.4; 120.6; 122.1; 125.1, 4; 130.4; 140.4.

\textsuperscript{52} For a comparison of Justin's NT quotes or allusions with actual NT documents see Appendix I.
Chapter 3—NT Canon and Dialogue with Trypho

193

D. Source of the Non-Referenced Material in the Dialogue

The fact is that Justin's Dialogue with Trypho contains passages reminiscent of passages from the canonical Gospels. Few would argue with this conclusion, but the issue becomes a bit clouded when research is devoted to attempting to identify the source(s) that Justin quotes and alludes to. For the last two centuries scholars have been trying to ascertain the exact relationship between the writings of Justin and the canonical gospels.53

The investigation was initiated in 1814 by Johann Christian Zahn.54 Zahn believed that the Gospel text from which Justin quoted was the Gospel According to the Hebrews. Further investigation into this Gospel caused Zahn to conclude that quotations from the Gospel According to the Hebrews in Epiphanius show that this now lost Jewish-Christian Gospel was a harmonized work, composed from three synoptic Gospels (or, more likely, early versions of them).55 Since then Zahn's assertions have been echoed by many scholars.

Zahn's conclusions were based on both textual and circumstantial evidence. The textual evidence shows that the document used by Epiphanius shares several distinct readings with the source Justin is citing. For example, both report that a "fire" (τὸ φῶς) or "light" (φῶς) shone in the Jordan at Jesus' baptism, and both have the full

54 Petersen, "From Justin to Pepys," 71.
text of Ps 2:7 when Jesus is baptized, "this day I have begotten you." Textual agreements such as this suggest a common source.

The circumstantial evidence shows two characteristics: First, the longer the citation in Justin, the more obviously it is harmonized; second, the harmonizations consist of passages drawn only from the synoptics, Johannine elements are absent. Because Zahn knew that the Gospel According to the Hebrews appeared to be a harmony which also incorporated synoptic texts he drew the conclusion that when Justin set about to write his Apologies and Dialogue with Trypho, his Gospel citations were taken from an already existing harmonized source known to Epiphanius as the Gospel According to the Hebrews.

Zahn's conclusions have led Petersen to draw a very important observation: the Harmonized Gospel tradition antedates Tatian, and probably even Justin. Petersen then proceeds to show that there is good evidence for three other harmonies that antedate Tatian's Diatessaron. First, it is clear that the canonical Gospels are, in the strict sense, harmonies of earlier material. It does not matter if one argues that the Gospel of Matthew came first followed by Luke, and finally Mark, who harmonized Matthew and Luke. Nor does it matter if one argues that Luke and Matthew harmonized "Q" with Mark, as well as their own special traditions. The fact remains, in each of these hypotheses a harmony of an earlier Gospel(s) is apparent. Second, Eusebius mentions a man named Ammonius of Alexandria. Knowledge of this individual is very scarce. But Altaner believes him to be a contemporary of Origen. If this is so, then he would be a contemporary of Tatian. Eusebius claims that Ammonius created a Gospel "diatessaron" where he set running beside a section of

56 Epiphanius, Panarion 30.13.7; Justin, Dial. 88.3.
57 Petersen, "From Justin to Pepys," 73.
Matthew the same pericope from other Gospels. Third, According to Jerome, Theophilus of Antioch composed a harmony. As an opponent of Marcion, Theophilus would have been a contemporary of Justin. Nothing more is said of the work.

The idea of a pre-Tatianic harmony is, therefore, very probable. Because of this scholars have taken Zahn’s conclusions as a starting point from which to proceed and identify the source of Justin’s quotations. An informative exercise in this vein is collecting Justin’s citations and allusions to sources other than from OT scripture.

Once this is done it is evident that the citations and allusions contain numerous variant readings and are frequently harmonized versions of other documents.

For example, Dial. 78.4 contains a description of the Judean census and the revelation to Joseph and Mary to go into Egypt after Jesus’ birth,

Therefore, being afraid, he [Joseph] did not reject her [Mary]. But at the time when the first census was being taken by Quirinius, he [Joseph] went up from Nazareth, where he lived, to Bethlehem, to which he belonged, in order to register. For he was by birth of the people of Judah, which inhabited that land. And he was directed to go with Mary into Egypt and stay there with the child until again it was revealed to them to return to Judea.

This is a good example of the harmonizing tendency in Dialogue with Trypho. The events referred to here can be found in both Matt 2:13 and Luke 2:1-5. The interesting thing when the three passages are compared is that neither of the canonical passages

---

39 Eusebius, Ep. ad Carpianum 1.
60 Jerome, Ep. ad Algaziam 6.
This is done for the Dialogue with Trypho in Appendix I.
67 οὐκ ἐξελεύθην αὐτῷ ἄλλα, ἀπογράφης οὕτως ἐν τῇ Ιουδαίᾳ τότε πρώτης ἐπὶ Κυρίνου, ἀνελθεῖς ἀπὸ Ναζαρέτ, ἔδει ὅτι, εἰς βῆθεμὶ, δὲν ἦν, ἀπογραφόμεθα ἀπὸ γάρ τῆς κατοικουσίας τῆς γῆς ἑκείνης φυλῆς Ἰουδαία τὸ γένος ἦν. καὶ αὐτός ἀμα τῇ Μαρίᾳ κελεύεται ἐξελεύθην εἰς Ἀλγυπτοῦ καὶ εἶναι ἕκελ ἀμα τῷ πατὶδίῳ, ἄρας ἐν αὐτοῖς πάλιν ἀποκαλυφθῇ ἐπανελθήν εἰς τὴν Ἰουδαίαν.
contain every element in the passage from the *Dialogue*. The first part of the passage, which refers to the census, is found only in the Lukan passage. While the second part of the passage, which refers to the escape into Egypt, is found only in the Matthean passage. This amounts to strong evidence that Justin, or the source which Justin was using, harmonized the two passages.

Another example that strongly suggests that Justin harmonized passages or that he used a harmony is found in *Dial.* 88.7,

For John was sitting by the Jordan proclaiming a baptism of repentance, wearing only a belt made of skin and a garment of camel hairs, and eating nothing except locusts and wild honey. Men thought him to be the Christ—to which he cried out, “I am not the Christ, but the voice of one crying out. For one will come who is stronger than me, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry.”

This appears to be a harmonization of a number of verses found in the synoptics: Matt 3:1-6, 11; Mark 1:4-7; Luke 3:3, 15-16. The fact that the canonical versions are ordered differently and the fact that the canonical versions are not one continuous narrative, while Justin’s version is, suggests harmonization.

The examples presented above suggest that the source(s) for the harmony (whether it be Justin himself who is harmonizing or whether Justin is using a harmony) are the Synoptic Gospels. But there are also examples of this harmonizing tendency with variants that are not found in any of the Gospels. For example, when relating the event of the birth of Jesus, Justin states,

But when the child was born in Bethlehem, since Joseph did not have ready somewhere to stop for the night in the village, they stopped for the night in a cave which was near the village. And while they were there, Mary brought

---

64 Ιωάννου γὰρ καθεξομένου ἐπὶ τοῦ Ἰορδάνου καὶ κηρύσσοντος ἐπὶ τοῦ πλὴν ἀκρίδας καὶ μέλι ἄγριον, οἱ δὲ ἄγριοι ὑπέλαμβαν αὐτὸν εἰναι τὸν Χριστὸν πρὸς οὓς καὶ αὐτῶς ἔρχοντες ὥσπερ οὖν εἰμὶ ὁ Ἰαχωπότερος μου, οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἱκανοὶ τὰ ὑπὸ δηματὰ βαστάσαι.

65 They also point out the fact that the verbal agreement suggests written formula as opposed to merely oral.
forth the Christ and laid him in a manger, where the Magi who came from Arabia found him.  

Here we have very much the same events recorded in Matt 2:1-25 and Luke 2:7. Evidence of harmony exists by the fact that the event of laying the child in the manger, which is peculiar to Luke, is mentioned along with other material that is included in Matthew. But there are also two very important differences between Justin’s citation and the two evangelists. First, Justin states that Jesus was born in a “cave” (σπήλαιον) while Matthew states that the Magi found the child in a “house” (οίκια). Second, Justin mentions here (and several other places) that the Magi were from Arabia, but none of the canonical accounts includes this detail. This supports the previous assertion that Justin probably harmonized sources himself or that he used a harmonized source. Further, because some of the information that Justin includes is not found in our canonical documents this indicates that Justin used sources in addition to the Synoptic Gospels.

Another example of a harmonizing tendency which includes information not found in any of the synoptics is Dial. 88.3,

And when Jesus came to the Jordan River, where John was baptizing, he stepped down into the water and a fire ignited in the Jordan. And as he was coming up from the water, the Holy Spirit alighted upon him like a dove [as] the Apostles of this very Christ of ours wrote.  

The mention of the fire igniting the waters of the Jordan is mentioned in no canonical document, yet Justin accepts the handing down of this tradition through that which the Apostles wrote (ἐγραψαν).
When Justin's references are compared to the documents which later became canonical, three observations can be made. First, in all likelihood a harmony was employed by Justin. He may have harmonized the texts himself, or he may have used an already existing harmony. Second, the harmony is based on the synoptics, with most of the information paralleled there. Third, the harmony also employed some extra-canonical source(s).

For many years debate has centered on how best to understand these phenomena. In this vein, Justin's divergences from or additions to the text of our canonical Gospels has been explained from five perspectives. (1) Failure of memory. This perspective believes that when Justin quotes variations and diverges from canonical sources it is because he relies on his memory rather than referring directly to the document for his source.69 (2) The use of one or more extra-canonical source. This perspective sees Justin as dependent on a source that was not later included in the NT canon. However, the source is most likely a harmony of documents that were later included in the canon.70 (3) The use of pre-synoptic harmony. This perspective argues that the variations in Justin are due to the fact that Justin used harmonized sources that were prior to the synoptics.71 (4) The use of a post-synoptic harmony. This perspective holds that the variations are explained by the fact that Justin used a

---


71 See e.g., W. Bousset, Die Evangelienquelle Justin's Märtyrer in ihrem Werte für die Evangelienkritik (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 1891) 114-116.
Chapter 3—NT Canon and Dialogue with Trypho

harmony that was based upon the synoptics and other extra-canonical material. The use of only the canonical gospels. This position argues that Justin used only the canonical gospels, which he sometimes quoted exactly, sometimes harmonized, and sometimes modified for dogmatic or catechetical reasons.

A.J. Bellinzoni, in his monograph The Sayings of Jesus in the Writings of Justin Martyr, has carefully examined the variations of the sayings of Jesus in Justin's writings. In light of the above explanations for their occurrence Bellinzoni examines each position and concludes that the best solution is that Justin relied on a post-synoptic harmony.

Bellinzoni concludes that there is no basis for the position that Justin's variations were the result of a failure of memory. The position that Justin is dependent upon pre-synoptic material is also seen as without foundation because the evidence overwhelmingly points to a post-synoptic source. The thesis that Justin used only the canonical gospels is also given little credence because, even though the majority of Justin's sources were based upon canonical sources, there is considerable evidence that Justin's sources were not always the canonical gospels themselves but rather post-canonical sources based on the synoptics. Bellinzoni also concludes that the idea that Justin is dependent on one or more non-canonical gospels is also lacking in evidence. Not only are the parallels between the specific non-canonical gospel

---


74 Bellinzoni, The Sayings of Jesus in the Writings of Justin Martyr, 139-142.
mentioned by adherents different, but ultimately all the sayings in Justin are based in the synoptics.

Bellinzoni places his agreement with the solution that Justin used a post-synoptic harmony of Matthew, Mark, and Luke. His evidence for such a conclusion includes the following.75

(1) It is easily demonstrated that Justin used more than one source.

(2) Justin generally used as his source written tradition.

(3) Justin's written sources harmonized parallel material from Matthew, Mark, and Luke.

(4) In the case of Matthew and Luke, related material from different parts of a single gospel were often combined into a single saying.

(5) Justin's sources often derived material from a single gospel (either Matthew or Luke, never Mark or John).

(6) Justin's quotations of the sayings of Jesus show absolutely no dependence on the Gospel of John.

It should be pointed out that Bellinzoni purposed only to examine the sayings of Jesus contained in the writings of Justin. He did not examine the narrative material. But with respect to the narrative material, I agree with many scholars who say virtually the same thing, i.e., that Justin's source was a harmonized account.76

The point in this brief recount of explanations of variants in Justin is to center on the fact that Justin's use of, or even composition of, a harmony is undeniable. It is apparent that each of the above explanations somehow allows for a harmony as a source for Justin's citations. Agreement on this point is quite significant when we

75 Bellinzoni, The Sayings of Jesus in the Writings of Justin Martyr, 140.
76 See e.g., Koester, Ancient Christian Gospels, 360-402; idem, "The Text of the Synoptic Gospels in the Second Century"; Petersen, "From Justin to Pepys"; idem, "Textual Evidence of Tatian's
bring it into the subject of the shape or state of the NT canon at the time of Justin's *Dialogue with Trypho*.

II. The New Testament Canon

"When we follow the process of the formation of the canon in detail, we can hardly avoid the impression that the second century really had no need of a canon."

This provocative statement by Kurt Aland summarizes Justin Martyr's relationship to the NT canon. Once we understand that the source of some his content and quotations was a harmony we are in the proper position to understand how Justin viewed these Christian writings, thus leading to a clearer understanding of the state of the NT canon in Justin's *Dialogue with Trypho*.

Justin lived in and was acquainted with the church at Rome during a time when Christian oral and written tradition still existed side by side, although, "slowly the written documents alone were coming to held as authoritative." Just as this relationship between oral and written tradition must be placed in its proper perspective in the second century, so must the relationship between scripture and canon. In other words, if the written documents were slowly coming to gain popularity and prestige, one must take care in describing or assuming how these writings were perceived and used. This care must be manifested in the employ of specific terms to describe Christian literature used during the mid-second century. Specifically, a proper definition of the terms "scripture" and "canon" are essential if one is to understand Justin's view of and possible contribution to the formation of the NT canon. This is precisely where Aland's statement above must come into focus.


because the only "canon" in existence during Justin's era was the canon or rule of faith.

A. The Rule of Faith

The earliest reference to the rule of faith is found in the writings of Irenaeus. Because most of Irenaeus's works survive only in Latin the exact language used by him is uncertain. We know that he did use the phrase "rule of truth" (κανών τῆς ἀληθείας) among his other expressions, because this phrase occurs in one extant Greek fragment. Irenaeus also uses the words "preaching" (κηρυγμα), "the faith" (ἡ πίστις), and "the tradition" (παράδοσις) to express the same thing. His Latin translator seems to have regularly translated all words used for the rule of faith by the phrase "rule of truth" (regula veritatis). Tertullian prefers to use the phrase "rule of faith".

The rule of faith was not a fixed formula or creed. This is evidenced in the fact that no two writers of the early church express the rule in exactly the same way.

Further, not even the same writer in the same document states it in exactly the same

---


100 This paragraph is dependent on Hanson, Tradition in the Early Church, 75.

11 Haer. 1.1.20.

12 G. W. H. Lampe, "Christian Theology in the Patristic Period," in H. Cunliffe-Jones with B. Drewery (eds.), A History of Christian Doctrine (Edinburgh: T. & T. Clark, 1978) 42. Perhaps a better way to state this would be to say that the rule of faith was a fixed form for every local church, and that is why no two writers express it in the same way.
way either. Thus, the rule of faith was expressed in a more fluid way. Its content was broadly the same as most later creeds, which included one God the creator, Jesus Christ and his coming, the Holy Spirit, the Church, and the future judgment. Perhaps the best way to define or show the content of the rule of faith is to examine its use by its two main representatives, Irenaeus and Tertullian.

1. Irenaeus and the Rule of Faith

Irenaeus is well known for his major work directed against the Gnostics, Against Heresies. While this work is certainly valuable for gaining information about the Gnostic system and how Irenaeus viewed it, it is also valuable simply because it contains much positive exposition of contemporary orthodoxy. In his exposition of the true faith in contrast to the elitism of secret gnostic revelations Irenaeus posits the “gift of truth”. He states, “Wherefore it is incumbent to obey the presbyters who are in the Church,—those who, as I have shown, possess the succession from the apostles; those who, together with the episcopate, have received the certain gift of truth [charisma veritatis certum], according to the good pleasure of the Father.”

In the context Irenaeus makes reference to a process of succession from the Apostles to the contemporary church leadership safeguarding this gift of truth. The succession of which Irenaeus speaks, in his opinion, maintains the true faith. The succession safeguards the faith which is the tradition derived from the Apostles, or the apostolic tradition. In opposition to those who are forming wrong doctrines concerning the Father and the Son Irenaeus claims that,

---

83 For example, compare the three delineations of the Rule of Faith in Irenaeus in Hoer. 1.9.4; 1.10.1; 5.20.1. See also, H. Lietzmann, A History of the Early Church (4 vols.; ET B. L. Woolf; Cleveland and New York: The World Publishing Company, 1961) 2.114-115.
86 Irenaeus, Hoer. 3.3.2.
...the preaching of the Church is everywhere consistent, and continues in an even course, and receives testimony from the prophets, apostles, and all the disciples—as I have proved—through [those in] the beginning, the middle, and the end, and through the entire dispensation of God, and that well-grounded system which tends to man's salvation, namely, our faith; which, having been received from the Church, we do preserve, and which always, by the Spirit of God, renewing its youth, as if it were some precious deposit in an excellent vessel, causes the vessel itself containing it to renew its youth also. For this gift of God has been entrusted to the Church, as breath was to the first created man, for this purpose, that all the members receiving it may be vivified. 87

In Irenaeus's thinking, church leaders are both representatives and spokesmen—defenders of the apostolic tradition which is consistent everywhere the church is present. This is in direct contrast to the secret revelations of the Gnostics whom Irenaeus was combating. It is apparent that this sure gift of truth which was entrusted to the church is the faith, or apostolic tradition, or doctrine.

The faith which was entrusted to the church is often delineated by Irenaeus as the Rule of Truth. 88 A good example of Irenaeus delineating the rule is found in *Haer.* 1.10.1,

The Church, though dispersed throughout the whole world, even to the ends of the earth, has received from the apostles and their disciples this faith: [She believes] in one God, the Father Almighty, Maker of heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them, and in one Christ Jesus, the Son of God, who became incarnate for our salvation; and in the Holy Spirit, who proclaimed through the prophets the dispensations of God, and the advents, and the birth from a virgin, and the passion, and the resurrection from the dead, and the ascension into heaven in the flesh of the beloved Christ Jesus, our Lord and His [future] manifestation from heaven in the glory of the Father "to gather all things in one" and to raise up anew all flesh of the whole human race... As I have already observed, the Church having received this preaching and this faith, although scattered throughout the whole world, yet, as if occupying but one house, carefully preserves it. 89

---

88 See the three explicit delineations of the content of the rule in *Haer.* 1.9.4; 1.10.1; 5.20.1.
Here we see reference to the churches as receiving the faith from the Apostles. This represents a certain consistency of belief, a universal acceptance which guarantees the maintenance of the true faith in contrast to Gnostic systems of belief.

2. *Tertullian and the Rule of Faith*

Tertullian also appeals to a tradition that is handed down from the Apostles. This faith was first delivered by Christ, spread by the Apostles and finally deposited and safeguarded by the apostolic church.\(^{90}\) Tertullian expresses the rule of faith in a number of places,\(^{91}\) of which his expression in *Prescription of Heretics* is exemplary.

The Rule of faith is...namely, that by which we believe that there is one God, and no other besides the Maker of the world, who produced the universe out of nothing, by his Word sent forth first of all; that this Word, called his Son, was seen in the name of God in various ways by the patriarchs, was always heard in the prophets, at last was sent down, from the Spirit and power of God the Father, into the Virgin Mary, was made flesh in her womb, and born of her, lived as Jesus Christ; that then he preached the new law and the new promise of the kingdom of heaven; wrought miracles; was nailed to the cross; rose again on the third day; was caught up to the heavens; and sat down at the right hand of the Father; sent in his place the power of the Holy Ghost, to guide the believers; he will come again with glory to take the saints into the enjoyment of eternal life and the celestial promises, and to judge the wicked with eternal fire, after the resuscitation of both, with the restitution of the flesh.\(^{92}\)

The rule of faith in Tertullian is not the same as Irenaeus in wording, but it is very similar in content. The key here is that the rule of faith was a guide or standard of right belief. Its general content was seen as flowing directly from Christ, through

\[^{90}\] This sequence and defence of its accuracy is clearly laid out by Tertullian in *Præscip.* 20-29.

\[^{91}\] Virg. Vel. I; Prax. 2.

\[^{92}\] Tertullian, *Præscip.* 13. Translation from Schaff, *Creeds of Christendom,* 2.19-20. *Regula est autem fidei,...illa scilicet qua creditur. Unum omnino Deum esse, nec alium prater mundi conditorem, qui universa de nihilo produxit, per Verbum suum primo omnium demissum; id Verbum, Filium ejus appellatum, in nomine Dei varie visum a patriarchis, in prophetis semper auditum, ex Spiritu Patris Dei et virtute, in Virginem Mariam, carnem factum in utero ejus. et ex ea natum, egisse Jesum Christum: exinde pradicasse novam legem et novam promissionem regni caelorum; virtutes fecisse; fixum crucii; ieritia die resurrexisse; in caelos errectum; sedisse ad dexteram Patris; misisse vicariam vim Spiritus Sancti, qui credentes agat; venturum cum claritate ad sumendas sanctorum in vita aeterna et promissorum celestium fructum, et ad profanos adjudicandos igni perpetuo, facta utriusque partis resuscitacione, cum carnis restitutione.*
the Apostles and to the church. This was the content of the true faith. In this light, Aland’s statement that the second century church had no need for a canon is better understood. The church believed that it already possessed a reliable exposition of the faith. Tradition had handed down the content and it was thus safeguarded.

3. The Rule of Faith and Canon

A proper understanding of this rule of faith is foundational to a proper understanding of “canon” and “scripture”. The term “canon” did not come to be used as an appellation for a collection or list of Christian writings (the New Testament) until the mid-fourth century in the writings of Athanasius. Earlier in the second century, however, the word designated what the church acknowledged as having regulative control for its faith and life—the rule of faith. It was only after Athanasius that the term came to denote a closed collection of writings to which nothing could be added or from which nothing could be taken away.

The idea that the church consciously discussed or contemplated a closed or fixed collection of NT writings during the second and third centuries lacks a strong foundation. This is well illustrated in the church’s answers to Marcionism, Gnosticism, and Montanism. These three heterodox movements were not challenged by the fathers of the era with a closed collection of Christian writings. Rather, the fathers answered these challenges with a confession of faith which was defended by

---

93 See above, p. 201.
94 Athanasius of Alexandria, Decr. 5.18. Here Athanasius describes the Shepherd of Hermas as “not of the canon.” See also Athanasius’ famous Ep. fest. 39 of the year 367, wherein he describes certain Christian books as “canonical”. “Again it is not tedious to speak of the [books] of the New Testament. These are, the four Gospels, according to Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John. Afterwards, the Acts of the Apostles and Epistles (called Catholic), seven, viz. Of James, one; of Peter, two; of John, three; after these, one of Jude. In addition, there are fourteen epistles of Paul, written in this order. The first, to the Romans; the two to the Corinthians; after these, to the Galatians; next, to the Ephesians; then to the Philippians; then to the Colossians; after these, two to the Thessalonians, and that to the Hebrews; and again, two to Timothy; one to Titus; and lastly, that to Philemon. And besides, the Revelation of John.”
95 In addition to the rule as expressed by Irenaeus and Tertullian see also, Clement of Alexandria, Str. 7.15.90; Eusebius of Caesarea H.e. 6.13.3.
an appeal to the apostolic writings. Both Irenaeus\textsuperscript{96} and Tertullian\textsuperscript{97} are exemplary of this. Even as late as the third century Serapion shows this same appeal.\textsuperscript{98} In writing to his church Serapion wished to settle the question of whether the *Gospel of Peter* could be read there. He had previously allowed its reading but subsequently reversed this decision on the basis that it contained denials of the humanity of Jesus. The point here is that Serapion did not revoke his permission to allow the *Gospel of Peter* to be read in the church on the basis of an appeal to a closed collection of Christian writings (a New Testament canon), but on the basis of an appeal to a confession of faith, on the basis that certain doctrines contained in that Gospel were at variance with what was handed down through the Apostles and Bishops of the churches. The issue was dealt with on the basis of an appeal to orthodoxy that is represented in the rule of faith, not canonicity.\textsuperscript{99}

This assertion is not meant to disparage the use of Christian writings (writings that later became canonical as well as other orthodox documents) during Justin's era. It is meant simply to put the issue of canonicity in its proper chronology. Before there was a New Testament canon there existed a rule of faith which functioned as the guardian of proper doctrine. There is a close relationship between Christian writings and the rule of faith. But it is extremely important to place the relationship in its proper context. Again, Irenaeus and Tertullian best exemplify this context.

Irenaeus clearly shows the importance of the rule of faith in relation to apostolic writings. In *Haer.* 3.4.1 he speaks of the church guarding Christian doctrine like a rich man depositing his money in a bank. It is clear that the reference is to the rule of faith, which is the entrance to life (salvation). For Irenaeus only the church is

\textsuperscript{96} *Haer.* 1.8.1; 1.9.1-4.
\textsuperscript{97} *Praescrip.* 8-9.
\textsuperscript{98} Eusebius, *H.e.* 6.12.3-6.
in possession of these sacred truths. Persons who pervert this truth or add to it are thieves and robbers.

To stress the importance of this "tradition of truth," Irenaeus asks a question, "Suppose there arise a dispute relative to some important question among us, should we not have recourse to the most ancient Churches with which the apostles held constant intercourse, and learn from them what is certain and clear in regard to the present question?" We see here an appeal to the true doctrine which was faithfully safeguarded and handed down through the church universal to the contemporary church. Irenaeus then continues, "For how should it be if the apostles themselves had not left us writings? Would it not be necessary, [in that case,] to follow the course of the tradition which they handed down to those to whom they did commit the churches?" The question is rhetorical here. The rule of faith is a sufficient shepherd to salvation. In fact, Irenaeus makes explicit reference to people who are saved through it in the absence of written documents. In direct reference to the course of tradition stated in Haer. 3.4.1 Irenaeus continues,

To which course [of tradition] many nations of those barbarians who believe in Christ do assent, having salvation written in their hearts by the Spirit, without paper or ink, and, carefully preserving the ancient tradition, believing in one God, the Creator of heaven and earth, and all things therein, by means of Jesus Christ, the Son of God; who, because of his surpassing love towards His creation, condescended to be born of the virgin, He Himself uniting man through Himself to God, and having suffered under Pontius Pilate, and rising again, and having been received up in splendor, shall come in glory, the Saviour of those who are saved, and the Judge of those who are judged, and sending into eternal fire those who transform the truth, and despise His Father and His advent. Those who, in the absence of written documents, have believed this faith, are barbarians, so far as regards our language; but as regards doctrine, manner, and tenor of life, they are because of faith, very wise indeed...Thus, by means of that ancient tradition of the apostles, they do not suffer their mind to conceive anything of the [doctrines suggested by the] portentous language of these teachers, among whom neither the Church nor doctrine has ever been established.  

100 Haer. 3.4.2.
The point here is clear, the true doctrine of the church has been faithfully passed on and is sufficient to lead people to salvation.

A similar line of argument is found in Tertullian's *Prescription of Heretics* 15-19. Here Tertullian deals with how one should conduct an argument with heretics. In using scripture, the heretics were leading many astray. But Tertullian states that the heretics have no right to do so because the scriptures do not belong to them, but to the church.¹⁰¹ He continues this line of argument by explaining that even though the heretic may use scripture in his argument it is inadmissible because the heretic has produced diverse interpretations. It is the church which has possessed the scriptures since ancient times and it is the church's ordained responsibility to correctly interpret scripture.¹⁰²

The climax of Tertullian's argument appears in the nineteenth chapter. It is in the interpretation of scripture that the apostolic tradition plays an important role. Tertullian states,

Our appeal, therefore, must not be made to the Scriptures; nor must controversy be admitted on points in which victory will either be impossible, or uncertain, or not certain enough. But even if a discussion from the Scriptures should not turn out in such a way as to place both sides on par, (yet) the natural order of things would require that this point should be first proposed, which is now the only one which we must discuss: "With whom lies that very faith to which the Scriptures belong. From what and through whom, and when, and to whom, has been handed down that rule, by which men become Christians?" For wherever it shall be manifest that the true Christian rule and faith shall be, there will likewise be the true Scriptures and expositions thereof, and all the Christian traditions.¹⁰³

For Tertullian the proper interpretation of scripture is found in adherence to the rule of faith which was handed down and safeguarded by the church. It is in this rule where one finds the true faith and one must adhere to this rule in discussions with

¹⁰¹ Praescrip. 15.
¹⁰² Praescrip. 16-18.
¹⁰³ Praescrip. 19.
heretics. Scripture is open to many different interpretations. It is only the apostolic faith, which is manifested in the rule of faith, where proper interpretation of scripture is manifested.

If we now return to the statement of K. Aland at the beginning of this section we may see its accuracy. It was against this rule of faith which everything was measured, even the writings of the developing NT.\(^{104}\) The danger here may be in pressing this too far.\(^{105}\) In other words, we must not, in view of the importance of the rule of faith, take this to mean that Christian writings were relatively unimportant in the early church. In fact, the later development of a collection of these writings speaks volumes to the contrary. The point here in stressing the importance of the rule of faith in the second and third centuries is simply get a proper chronology of the development of the NT canon. Once we understand that the rule of faith was actually one of the criteria in choosing the writings which eventually made up the NT canon\(^{106}\) we have the proper perspective to understand Justin’s place in its history. However, one important distinction remains to be discussed.

**B. Scripture and Canon**

About twenty years ago A.C. Sundberg Jr. called for a more precise definition of the terms “scripture” and “canon” in order to distinguish some very important features of each.\(^{107}\) Sundberg believed that much of the discussion surrounding the history of the NT canon inappropriately applied the terms scripture and canon as

---

synonyms. This, Sundberg believed, caused great confusion for those who sought to understand the state of the NT canon during the second century. Many simply moved from scripture to canon without realizing the inherent differences between the two terms.  

At the heart of the issue is discussions on canon which employ the two terms in a rather loose sense. Sundberg states, "It is necessary to distinguish between the terms 'scripture,' meaning writings which are held in some sense as authoritative for religion and 'canon,' meaning a defined collection that is held to be exclusively, i.e. with respect to all other books, authoritative." Sundberg objects to discussions which employ "canon" and "canonical" to written documents that were widely held as, in some sense, scripture without regard to a definitive and exclusive determination of a closed group of such documents (canon). The application of "canonical" to such documents is viewed as anachronistic because a written canon, by definition, is closed and no such canon existed in the second and third centuries. In order to avoid this anachronistic perspective of canon Sundberg stresses the importance of maintaining the above distinctions between canon and scripture.

More recently, Sundberg's call for distinction have been echoed by L.M. McDonald and H.Y. Gamble. Taking his cue from G.T. Sheppard, McDonald also calls for a distinction between scripture and canon. McDonald, however, prefers

---


to express it in terms of "canon 1," and "canon 2."\textsuperscript{113} Canon 1 is essentially a rule, standard, or guide that functions in an controlling manner in a community. It is fluid or flexible and not yet fixed. Canon 1 is therefore present wherever there exists some respect for regulative control within a community, either in a written or oral form. Canon 2 occurs when canon 1 becomes fixed in a given community. Canon 2 thus becomes so well-established in a given community of faith that very little doubt arises about the status of a text thereafter. Canon 2, therefore, is more fixed in the community.

Gamble also wishes to maintain a distinction but chooses a different way to express it. His starting point is the perception that by its very existence the NT canon "calls special attention to its form, i.e., a fixed collection of precisely twenty-seven early Christian documents, and to its function, i.e., literature that is normative for the faith and life of the Christian community."\textsuperscript{114} Gamble employs the distinction with the terms "functional" and "fixed". Thus the importance of understanding canon as a \textit{fixed} collection is emphasized. On the other hand, a functional canon is one which operated in the looser sense of a norm or standard, whether written or oral. Gamble stresses that a scrupulousness about such terminology is necessary so that these real distinctions are not blurred. The history of the NT canon is not only concerned with the normative use of Christian documents (scripture), but also with the delimitation of such documents and with its meaning and function \textit{as a collection} (canon).\textsuperscript{115}

What we are dealing with here is really three ways of saying the same thing. Canon is \textit{not} synonymous with scripture. McDonald has pointed out that there is

considerable overlap. The overlap occurs in the normative status of a document, that is, both scriptural documents and documents that later became canonical were viewed as normative in the life of the community. However, a line of demarcation must be understood. This line occurs when a document is chosen to be placed between two distinct poles. At one end of the pole is a rule, standard, ideal, norm, or regulative office or literature. The focus here is on the internal signs of an elevated status within a community of faith. At the other end of the pole is a fixation, standardization, enumeration, listing, register, or catalog of exemplary writings. The emphasis here rests on the precise boundary, limits, or measure of what, from some preunderstood standard, belongs within or falls outside of a specific canon.

In this light I again call attention to the fact that the term "canon" did not come to be used as an appellation for a collection or list of Christian writings until the mid-fourth century with Athanasius. Before that time, as I have shown above, the word designated what the church acknowledged as having regulative control for its faith and life. Only after Athanasius did the term "canon" come to denote a closed collection of writings.

On the other hand, the term "scripture" designates writings which were religiously normative. They are used as such without regard to their systematic enumeration or limitation. This is, in fact, how Christian writings were used.

---

117 Sheppard, "Canon," 64.
118 McDonald describes this as "canon 1" while Gamble calls it a "functional canon". It appears to me that some confusion could be avoided if Sundberg's description of it as "scripture" were consistently and properly maintained.
119 McDonald describes this as "canon 2" while Gamble calls it a "fixed canon". Again, confusion could be avoided here as well if Sundberg's description of it as "canon" was also consistently and properly maintained.
120 Athanasius, Decr. 5.18. Here Athanasius describes the Shepherd of Hermas as "not of the canon." See also Athanasius's famous Ep. fest. 39 of the year 367, wherein he describes certain Christian books as "canonical".
throughout the second century. The concept of canon presupposes scripture, but the concept of scripture does not necessarily entail the notion of canon.

C. Rule of Faith, Scripture, and Canon in the Second Century

The two sections above on the rule of faith and on the distinction between scripture and canon are intended as a warning against attributing canonical status to a document that attained only scriptural status. The section concerning the rule of faith does so by pointing out the chronology of the rule of faith in relation to a closed canon of Christian writings. The rule of faith was actually used as a criterion in the eventual collection of certain Christian documents into a closed canon. The section on the distinction between scripture and canon warns us not to apply canonical status to a document that had attained only scriptural status. This is particularly important when dealing with the reception of Christian literature during the second and third centuries. This is so because of the lack of evidence that the church consciously discussed or contemplated a closed or fixed collection of NT scriptures during this time. Being aware of the concept of the rule of faith and of the distinction between scripture and canon should act as a guard to an anachronistic understanding of canonicity in the second and third centuries.

At the very least, the discussions above show us that the NT canon was not a topic of discussion during the second and third centuries. Further, the very fact that discussions concerning canonicity were occurring well into the fourth century make it extremely difficult to apply canonical status to Christian documents in the second century. Eusebius’s famous list of recognized, disputed, and rejected books is illustrative of this point. Since the notion of a canon of scripture entails a fixity, discussions of this sort, by their very occurrence, argue strongly against a closed

---

121 Eusebius, H.e. 6.12.3-6.
canon. If this is the case in the early fourth century, it is most certainly the case in the second and third centuries as well.

The above understanding of the rule of faith and of the proper distinction between scripture and canon has implications for the study of Justin’s *Dialogue with Trypho* and the NT canon. It is in this context that our discussion of Justin’s understanding of and contribution to NT canonicity must be placed. One must remain aware of the function and importance of the rule of faith as well as the misunderstandings that may occur in using scripture and canon synonymously in reference to Christian literature of the second century.

III. Justin’s Memoirs and the NT “Canon”

E.J. Goodspeed confidently asserts that the deliberate creation of the four-fold Gospel occurred in AD 115-125.122 This date was chosen because Goodspeed believes the *Preaching of Peter*, 2 Peter, the *Gospel of Peter*, Papias, the *Epistle of the Apostles* and Justin Martyr all show acquaintance with or use of all four canonical documents. Similarly, R.L. Harris, in reference to the scriptures (apostolic writings) to which Justin refers, states, “Justin’s importance lies in the fact that he refers to a well-defined corpus of sacred books.”123 Later, in specific reference to the four gospels, he claims that they are clearly a regulative corpus for Justin.124 F.F. Bruce also indicates his belief that Justin knew of a gospel collection.125

All three of the above men have made statements about a fixed collection of Gospels based solely on Justin’s use of or acquaintance with what later became canonical Gospels. But this confuses acquaintance with, and even use of, the Gospels

---

124 Harris, *Inspiration and Canonicity*, 213.
125 Bruce, *The Canon of Scripture*, 126-127.
with a conscious attempt to arrange them into a collection. A fixed collection
necessarily entails a deliberate catalog of exemplary writings, a standard which
requires or allows no alteration. But in Justin we see no indication that it was his
purpose to form such a collection, nor was it his assumption that this was already
completed and accepted by him. In this respect, two issues merit attention here: The
Apostolic Writings as Scripture; and, The Implications of Justin’s use of a Harmony.

A. The Apostolic Writings as Scripture

There is no arguing that Justin held the Prophetic scriptures in high esteem. He used and referred to them often. This esteem goes back to his conversion to
Christianity when the respectable old man taught Justin that only those who had seen
or heard from someone who had seen God can truly give knowledge concerning him.
Philosophers have no qualification in this area, but the Prophets do because “they
alone, being filled with the Holy Spirit, communicated that which they heard and
saw.” This communication, which amounts to knowledge about God and his plan of
salvation, is written down and still available for study. When Justin accepted the
old man’s argument it changed the way he attained knowledge about God. Instead of
inquiring from philosophers who had neither seen nor heard from someone who had
seen, Justin appealed directly to those who had seen—the Prophets. The Prophets
were, therefore, viewed as writings which were used as scripture by Justin.

But what about the Apostolic writings—the Memoirs? Reference has been
made to the fact that Justin used the Memoirs as trustworthy documents which prove
the prophecies concerning Jesus had actually occurred. This is certainly true.

126 See above, pp. 74-82.
127 Dial. 7.1 ἀλλὰ μόνα ταύτα εἰπόντες ἡκούσαν καὶ εἶδον ἄγιω πληρωθέντες
πνεύματι.
128 Dial. 7.2.
However, does this mean it is proper to speak of the Memoirs simply as "historical" records and viewed in a lesser light than the Prophets?

God can be known through the writings of the Prophets, they possess a special knowledge which was revealed by God. Because of this they were held in high esteem. But in Justin's appeal to the Prophets as a place to attain knowledge about God, he also mentions that his heart was set on fire and an affection for the "friends of Christ" took hold of him. This appellation can be nothing less than a reference to the Apostles. In several places in the Dialogue the Apostles figure quite prominently as equal to the Prophets because they preach the same message. Justin even states that the Prophets preached the gospel of Jesus and proclaimed him to all men—a task performed also by the Apostles in their Memoirs.

But the crux of the relationship between the Prophets and the Apostles is located in the significance of seeing and hearing. In other words, the qualification of the Prophets for communicating knowledge of God rested in the fact that they had seen and heard God. The qualification of the Apostles also rested in the fact that they had seen and heard God, as well as reading the Prophets. This is shown in two ways. First, because knowledge about God required communication from someone who heard from someone who had seen, the Apostles rested on the communication of the Prophets. The Prophets had seen and heard that which they communicated, therefore the Apostles were able to use their writings for gaining knowledge of God.

The second way in which the Apostles are qualified to communicate knowledge about God is because the Apostles witnessed the ultimate revelation of

---

129 Dial. 7.2-3.
130 See above, pp. 82-86.
131 Dial. 42.1-2; 76.6; 88.3; 106.1; 109.1; 110.2; 119.6.
132 Dial. 136.3.
133 Dial. 3; 7; 8.
God in the incarnation of his Logos.\textsuperscript{134} Thus the significance of the Memoirs does not lie solely in their function as “historical” records. It rests also in the fact that they saw and heard the ultimate revelation of God. The Apostles witnessed that to which the Prophets pointed. They thus fulfil the criteria by which knowledge of God may be attained and communicated.

The Prophets saw and heard. In Justin’s eyes this qualified them to communicate knowledge about God. The Apostles read the writings of the Prophets who had seen God, but more importantly, they actually saw God’s plan for salvation played out before their eyes. Through the incarnate Logos, the Apostles saw the fulfillment of God’s will in his very being, and in his actions. As witness to this action the Apostles have the qualification to communicate this to humankind—this is the significance of their writings.

Thus, in a very real sense, the Prophets and the Memoirs must be viewed together in that they are witnesses to God. In this respect, the Memoirs can be viewed as scripture. They can be viewed as scripture because they were used by Justin as invaluable for gaining knowledge about God and his plan of salvation through his Logos incarnate.

\textbf{B. The Implications of Justin’s use of a Harmony}

If Justin’s use of the memoirs can allow us to conclude that he used them as scripture can we take the next step, as Goodspeed, Harris and Bruce have done above, and conclude that they are a fixed collection? In light of the probability that he used a harmony the answer must be negative.

If the four Gospels were all included in a fixed collection at the time of Justin it is highly unlikely that he would choose to use a harmony. A fixed collection

\textsuperscript{134} This is discussed in detail above, pp. 86-96.
suggests a catalog of exemplary writings. If these writings were seen as exemplary one must ask why Justin saw fit to ignore this collection and employ a harmony which attempted to form an even better picture than the separate Gospels produced. Even though the majority of the harmony was based on the synoptics, we still must understand that the very act of Justin employing a harmony indicates that a four-fold Gospel canon was not in existence, or, at the very least, not recognized. Even if we recognize the probability that Justin's harmony lent a certain amount of prestige to the Gospels it is a mistake to assume that this recognition shows that they were canonical. Perhaps the lines have become blurred because the main sources employed by Justin are known to us today as canonical. But the fact remains, Justin used the Gospels in much the same way that the Gospel writers employed their sources, but no one has ever argued that because Matthew used Mark and Luke used Mark that Mark was therefore canonical.

The text of what later became the canonical Gospels was apparently not free from major revision in wording and context. For in harmonization both these are done. This very act argues against a fixed collection of exemplary writings for the Gospels at the time of Justin. For Justin the Memoirs were scripture, but they were not canonical. Because of this Justin felt free to either construct a harmony himself or employ a harmony upon which to base his understanding of the coming of the Logos of God.

IV. Summary and Conclusion

This chapter has focused on the Memoirs of the Apostles and the question of their canonical standing. The probability that the Memoirs were, in fact, the Synoptic

\(^{133}\) For the motives of harmonization see, Tj. Baarda, "Διαλόγισμα—Συμφωνία. Factors in the Harmonization of the Gospels, especially in the Diatessaron of Tatian," in Essays on the Diatessaron (Contributions to Biblical Exegesis & Theology 11; Kampen: Kok Pharos, 1994) 29-47; O. Cullmann,
Chapter 3—NT Canon and Dialogue with Trypho

Gospels is high. We know that they were documents written by the Apostles or those who followed them. We also know that the Memoirs contain information pertaining to the life of Jesus. As such they are treated as reliable in proving that the prophecies concerning Jesus actually occurred.

But it is not enough to simply state that the Memoirs are the Synoptic Gospels. Investigation into Justin's method of citing the memoirs reveals that the source Justin used (the memoirs) was a harmony. The harmony was based on the Synoptics, with some indication of the use of some source which did not later become part of the canon. Thus, while it may be accurate to say that Justin used the Synoptic Gospels in the Dialogue with Trypho, it must be clarified that he used a source that was based on the synoptics and not actually the separate synoptics.

This realization has implications for the emerging NT canon during Justin's era. And it is here that the proper distinction between scripture and canon must come into play. The temptation to form conclusions about canon based simply on the use of the synoptics must be resisted. Use or acquaintance of any document in a writer does not automatically imply that the writer had this in some sort of exemplary canon. At the most this may imply the scriptural status of a document, but even this must be measured by other indicators. There is indication in Justin that he held the Gospels (or at least a harmony of them) to be scripture. But there is no indication that canonical status was given to his source. In fact, the application of canonical status in Justin's day is anachronistic in light of later discussions concerning a NT canon.

The application of canonical status to Justin's source is further tempered by his use of a harmony. If a canon of the Gospels was accepted by Justin it would be

"The Plurality of the Gospels as a Theological Problem in Antiquity," in The Early Church (London: SCM, 1956) 37-54; Petersen, "From Justin to Pepys".
highly unlikely that he would deviate from that accepted collection and use a different
source which attempted to improve on the separated Gospels.

The study of Justin’s contribution to the NT canon is best understood as a
process toward a fixed collection Christian writings. This process should be
understood as having occurred over a fairly long period of time. The Christian
documents that were eventually accepted into the NT canon underwent a period of use
in the church before the closure of the canon. During this time it is not inaccurate to
say that the church viewed these writings as scripture, but it is inaccurate to say that
these writings were canonical. The place of Justin within the history of the NT canon
is in the period where the church was still in the position of sifting through and
employing whatever Christian document was useful to them.

136 The history of the NT canon has been admirably presented in recent years by J. Barton, Holy
Writings, Sacred Text. The Canon in Early Christianity (Louisville, KY: Westminster John Knox
Canon; J. F. Kelly, Why is There a New Testament? (London: Geoffrey Chapman, 1986); McDonald,
The Formation of the Christian Biblical Canon.
Chapter Four
Interpretational Foundations in Dialogue with Trypho

I. Introduction

The interpretation of scripture in the Dialogue with Trypho is a study that could lead in many directions. A natural tendency in such a chapter is to attempt to boil the Dialogue down to its core method and list the interpretive rules followed by Justin. By so doing, Justin is then described as following the rules of typological interpretation, or allegorical interpretation, or Hellenistic interpretation. But this kind of delineation tends to overlook important contextual and motivational issues involved in Justin's exegesis. Here we are speaking of the difference between the methods or forms of exegesis and the function of exegesis. In other words, we must understand that the function of Justin's exegesis was not necessarily governed by any precise rules. It followed, instead, the needs which Justin was required to meet, in situations that were apologetic rather than exegetical.

1 The decisive feature of early Christian interpretation is found not in the methods or forms but in the function of the exegesis. See, J. L. Kugel & R. A. Greer, Early Biblical Interpretation (Library of Early Christianity 3; Philadelphia: Westminster, 1986) 126-128.

2 This is not to say that Justin simply practiced a random interpretation of the scriptures. He did employ hermeneutical principles. It would, however, be inaccurate to assume that Justin made the same distinction modern scholars make between different exegetical practices. See H. M. Knapp, "Melito's Use of Scripture in Peri Pascha: Second Century Typology," VC 54 (2000) 348-352.

This functional understanding of interpretation requires a clear understanding of the foundations and presuppositions of the exegete, in this case, Justin. For if the apologetic aspects of Justin's discussion with Trypho necessitated a certain explanation, it is incumbent on the historical theologian to uncover the presuppositions, polemics, and resulting interpretation. All three aspects are required in an understanding of Justin's functional exegesis.

A functional understanding of Justin's interpretation of scripture in the Dialogue will give a clear picture of the reasons why Justin employed certain arguments. Its basis is in the contextual framework of the Dialogue as a work directed toward Jews. It is this contextual basis that governs Justin's use of scripture. Throughout the Dialogue he is dealing with issues that are of particular concern to the second century Jewish/Christian debate. This type of approach necessitates some clarification of the presuppositions of both participants in the Dialogue as the foundation upon which the discussion proceeds. When these presuppositions are clarified, the stage is set for a discussion of the interpretation of scripture in the Dialogue.

The chapter is divided into three main sections. First, the foundation of Justin's OT interpretation is presented under the explanatory headings of "Two Laws," and "Two Advents." Without a clear understanding of this foundation, one is ill prepared to understand Justin's exegesis. The second section discusses two

---

5 In spite of arguments to the contrary, I hold to an intended audience that is Jewish. While the Jews are most likely the main readers whom Justin had in mind, this does not negate the fact that any writing produced within the Christian community would be seen as valuable by the members of that community. In this respect, a Christian readership may also have been in Justin's mind. But this Christian readership was not primary in writing the Dialogue. A history of the discussion of the intended audience of the Dialogue is presented in Appendix II. There, I offer a more detailed explanation of my reasons for accepting a Jewish/Christian readership.
6 I would not describe these categories as rules because they form the context through which Justin interprets scripture. They are the foundations upon which he proceeds to understand OT texts.
important concepts in Justin’s presentation: baptism and illumination. These are both discussed in relation to his OT interpretation. The third section is an evaluation of Justin’s OT interpretation. Here Justin is placed squarely in the typological tradition.

One main question has governed the approach set out in this chapter—“How is it possible that two different interpretations can arise from the same scriptural passage?” This is a vital question, especially in view of the fact that both Justin and Trypho accept the OT as containing knowledge of God.

II. Foundations for Interpretation

In order to understand Justin’s interpretational concerns in the Dialogue it is axiomatic that one should understand the audience to which Justin addresses the work. It has only been in this last century that scholars have seriously started to doubt a Jewish audience for the Dialogue. This is based on both internal and external evidence surrounding the document. There has been no consensus reached on this issue but this does not negate the fact that it is necessary to state my conclusion on the matter. Appendix II is devoted solely to a history of the discussion in this century, giving the main reasons for denying a Jewish readership. In spite of these denials, however, I believe that there is adequate evidence for an intended Jewish audience on the part of Justin. These, I would hold, are the main readers whom Justin had in mind upon writing his Dialogue. There is, however, a strong probability that an apologetic of this standard, written as it was within the Christian community, would lend itself as a valuable tool to that community in its proselytization of the Jews. In that respect I further conclude, in Appendix II, that a Christian readership may also have been in Justin’s mind. But this Christian readership was not primary to Justin in writing the Dialogue.⁷

⁷ This is also the position of Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 10-20; 169-175.
Justin’s presuppositions must also be clarified if we are to get an accurate understanding of his exegesis. Just as Trypho approached the discussion with certain preconceived understandings upon which he argued, so did Justin. Justin follows a suggestive “pattern of twos”\textsuperscript{8} in the \textit{Dialogue}. This pattern is based on the two most important concepts with which he deals—the two Laws and the two advents of the Messiah. This “pattern of twos” is important because the two Laws and the two advents form the hermeneutical key to Justin’s interpretation of OT scripture in the \textit{Dialogue}.

\textbf{A. Two Laws}

For Trypho, the Law is all important. It is the means by which one is looked upon with favor by God, and is the only means by which one may attain salvation.\textsuperscript{9} This creates a problem for Justin. He believes that the salvific value of the Law has been negated by the coming of Jesus the Messiah.\textsuperscript{10} Hope for the salvation of humankind, in Justin’s mind, is no longer through the Law because a new and eternal Law has been foretold, and only it can give salvation.\textsuperscript{11} With regard to the Law then, Justin must show why Christians do not observe the Law and yet still claim to hold a privileged position before God.\textsuperscript{12}

The covenant idea was a central category in the Jewish faith.\textsuperscript{13} This can be seen in the importance placed in the Law by Trypho. But Justin’s position on the covenant had to be carefully presented, for in accepting the Jewish scriptures as his own he had to explain how he could thus reject the Law that was so clearly presented

\textsuperscript{8} My own designation, for lack of a better term.
\textsuperscript{9} \textit{Dial.} 8.3-4; 10.4.
\textsuperscript{10} \textit{Dial.} 11.1-2.
\textsuperscript{11} \textit{Dial.} 11; 24; 34; 67. This new and eternal Law is Jesus Christ, see above, pp. 160-168.
\textsuperscript{12} This will be shown as we progress.
in those scriptures. Justin thus had to use the common ground of the Jewish scriptures to show that the old Covenant had been surpassed by a new Covenant. To do so Justin employed four arguments: (1) Prophecies of a new Covenant point to the cessation of the Law through the coming of Christ; (2) The Law was for the Jews only; (3) Patriarchs such as Noah, Job, Abraham, and others were justified without keeping the Law; (4) The Prophets declared that God did not really desire observance of the ritual Law but a spiritual obedience.

I. New Covenant Foretold

Justin recognizes the fact that Christianity and Judaism would have the same rites and customs if Christianity's hope was through Moses or the Law. So, in offering his reasons why Christians do not place their hope of salvation there, Justin claims that a "final Law and Covenant" which is above all others has been prophesied. This new and everlasting Covenant is Jesus Christ himself, and as scriptural proof of his assertions Justin cites Isa 51:4-5, Jer 31:31-32, Isa 55:3-5, and Isa 6:10.

The difference between the old Covenant and the new Covenant is decisive in Justin's argument—it gets right down to the issue of salvation. This is seen in Dial. 24


14 In Justin's thinking the Covenant and the Law went together. In other words, in order to remain in the Covenant, the Jew had to fulfil the Law. See above, pp. 160-166.


16 Dial. 11.1.

17 Dial. 11.2. νομι δέ ἀνέγνων γὰρ, ὡς Τρώφω, ὅτι ἐσείς καὶ τελευταῖος νόμος καὶ διαθήκη κυριωτάτης πασῶν. See also Dial. 34.1; 67.9.

18 Dial. 11.2-3.

where Justin states that "this blood of circumcision has been rendered useless, and we now have come to trust in the blood of salvation. [There is] now another covenant, and another law has come out of Zion." In Dia. 12-24 Justin has been referring to circumcision as symbolizing the entire Mosaic Law. So, here when Justin states that the blood of circumcision is abolished he is unmistakably referring to the abolition of the Mosaic Law. But if the old Law has been abolished, why was it instituted in the first place? Justin answers why the Mosaic Law was initially instituted in the second of his four arguments.

2. **Old Law for Jews Only**

Justin believes that the old Law was for the Jews only. In this context he gives four basic reasons for this belief. First, he states that circumcision was given to the Jews to mark them off for suffering. The Sabbath, among other precepts, is also claimed by Justin to have been imposed as a sign. Second, Justin claims that the sacrifices were commanded by God in order to keep the people from idolatry. Third, the Law was given to the Jews so that they would remember God. In this respect, specific rites such as the Sabbaths and the eating of certain kinds of meat were imposed so that the Jews would always remember God. But commandments in general are also stated by Justin to have been instituted so that the Jews may always have God before their eyes. The fourth reason why Justin believes that the Law was given to the Jews is the one mentioned the most in the Dialogue. Justin reasons that it was because of sin or the hardness of hearts that God instituted the Law. He alludes to

---

20 Dia. 24.1. τὸ αἷμα τῆς περιτομῆς ἐκείνης κατήγαγεν, καὶ αἵματι σωτηρίων πεπιστευκαμεν·

21 Dia. 11.2.

22 Dia. 19.2.

23 Dia. 21.1.

24 Dia. 19.6; 22.1; 67.8.

25 Dia. 19.6.

26 Dia. 20.1.

27 Dia. 46.5.
this when he explains that God adapted his laws to a weak people,²⁸ but other passages make it clear that the weakness referred to here is sin.²⁹

3. Justification of Patriarchs

The third argument employed by Justin to show the obsolescence of the old Law is the fact that the patriarchs were justified without keeping the Law. Here again, circumcision functions as representative of the old Law. In Dial. 19, Justin explicitly states that circumcision is not necessary for salvation. If it was, God would neither have created Adam uncircumcised,³⁰ nor would he have accepted the sacrifice of the uncircumcised Abel, nor would he have been pleased with the uncircumcised Enoch (Gen 5:24). Further, Lot was led out of Sodom, even though he was uncircumcised, and Noah, the uncircumcised father of the Jewish race, was safe in the ark. Even though Melchisedech was uncircumcised, Abraham paid tithes to him and was blessed by him. Indeed God, through David, announced that he would make him a high priest forever according to the order of Melchisedech. Justin also explains the keeping of the Sabbath in the same manner. All the men mentioned above kept no Sabbaths, yet they were just and pleasing in the sight of God. In Dial. 23 Justin extends his argument from circumcision and Sabbaths to include festivals and sacrifices. He states that if circumcision was not required before Abraham, and if there was no need of Sabbaths, festivals, and sacrifices before Moses then they are not needed now.

Yet the fact that the first Law was instituted only for the Jews and that the patriarchs were justified apart from carrying out the works of the Law does not fully explain Justin’s belief in its obsolescence. It did serve its purpose for the Jews. But, in Justin’s thinking, God’s purpose in instituting the old Law was not merely to carry out the physical acts described therein. While it is true that the old Law was instituted to

²⁸ Dial. 19.6.
²⁹ Dial. 18.2; 21.1; 22.1; 23.2; 27.2; 44.2; 46.5, 7; 47.2; 67.8; 114.4.
mark off the Jewish people, aid in keeping them from idolatry, and cause them to remember God, it is equally true that the old Law could not completely succeed in this. In this light, Justin explains the further, and perhaps most important, significance of the old Law.

4. Spiritual Obedience

The crux of Justin’s argument concerning the new Covenant lies here, in its “true” purpose. Since a new Covenant has been foretold, since the old Law was for Jews only, and since the patriarchs were justified apart from the old Law, it is necessary for Justin to offer explanation concerning the purpose of the Law. Here Justin’s foundation is built upon the incarnation of the Logos.

The fact that the content of the old Law was for Jews only severely restricted its adequacy for a universal salvation. But the effect of the Law was also inadequate. Its temporary purpose was fulfilled, but it also prefigured future realities of the new Law by preparing human minds for those future realities. By insisting on the prediction of a new Law, Justin was thus insisting on a Law that could truly give a person salvation and righteousness before God. This new Law is eternal and has the power to save all humankind, not just Jews.

30 This argument concerning uncircumcision at birth is extended to all men in Dial. 29.2.
31 Proof of this is seen where Justin gives the reasons for the institution of the old Law, but also claims that in spite of these reasons, the Jews still failed to remember God, fell into idolatry and continued to sin. See e.g., Dial. 19.6; 20.1; 21.1; 22.1; 23.2; 27.2; 44.2; 46.5; 7; 47.2; 67.8; 114.4.
32 Dial. 11.2; 19.6.
33 Dial. 11; 24; 34; 67.
34 Dial. 122.5. The concept of a new law is not new to Justin Martyr. Its foundation is in Jer 31:27-40. It is continued in the writings of the New Testament (e.g., Luke 22:20; 2 Cor 3:6; Heb 7:11ff). The Epistle of Barnabas (2; 4; 13; 14), also an Adversus Judaeos writing, makes many appeals to this new law (Greek text and ET can be found in K. Lake (ed.), The Apostolic Fathers [LCL; 2 vols.; London: William Heinemann/New York: The Macmillan Co., 1914] 1.335-409). Christian art also illustrates this concept. On sarcophagus sculptures and on wall paintings and mosaics, Peter is frequently pictured as the new Moses. He is as shown receiving from Christ the lawgiver the scroll of the new covenant. This signifies the early Christian belief that the new law (the law of Christ) does not merely oppose the law of Moses, rather, it replaces it. See Simon, Verus Israel, 76.
Fulfilling the precepts of the old Law, therefore, is not the foundation upon which the new Law is based. This is shown in Justin’s discussions about the justification of Abraham. In explaining that Abraham received circumcision as a sign, Justin’s main point is that he was justified because of his faith. Indeed, Abraham was justified before he was circumcised. Thus, Abraham’s justification was based not on doing the Law, but on faith in God. Further, the new Law is also not tied to fleshly descent from Abraham. Justin thus makes it clear that no Jew will participate in the legacy of benefits promised by Christ simply because they are descendants of Abraham. The only participants will be those who have the same ardent faith as Abraham. The new Law, therefore, is not for Jews only, but for those who display this same faith.

The necessity of faith and the expectation of an eternal Law is fulfilled ultimately in Jesus. He is the new and eternal Law whom the Prophets predicted. Exemplary of Justin’s claims for Jesus as the new and eternal Law is Dial. 43. There he asserts that, according to the will of the Father, circumcision, Sabbaths, sacrifices, oblations and festivals originating with Abraham and Moses have their end in Him who was born of the virgin, of the race of Abraham, of the tribe of Judah, and of the family of David. Justin continues, “...in Christ, the Son of God, who was proclaimed as coming to the whole world to be an eternal law and a new covenant, just as the prophecies which were mentioned before show.”

Justin thus argues that the new Law surpasses and fulfils the old. Because of this, he recognizes his responsibility to explain how he can use the Jewish scriptures,
which clearly argue for strict adherence to the old Law, to prove that adherence to this old Law is no longer necessary. In other words, Justin must offer his reasons for denying the continuing validity of something that is clearly commanded in scripture. The issue really gets down to the basic question of the purpose of the old Law.

In this light Justin presents the old Law as a collection of symbols to prepare humankind's minds for Christ. He states in this connection, "'And sincerely gentlemen,' I said, 'by enumerating all the other precepts of Moses, I would be able to demonstrate that they were types, and symbols, and proclamations of what was about to happen to Christ...'" 41 Without the fulfillment, the symbol is useless, there is no symbol without the reality. So, for Justin, the symbol is essential and the key to understanding the fulfillment since the fulfillment stands in direct continuity to the symbol. 42 The Law, therefore has a "true" or "real" meaning which surpasses its original intent and points to Christ. This concept is seen especially in the section devoted to a discussion on the Law (11-30).

a. Perpetual Sabbath

Thus in Dial. 12, after Justin quotes Isa 55:3-5 in support of a new Covenant, he explains the new Law demands observance of a perpetual Sabbath in contrast to the Sabbath which requires abstinence from work. Justin states that if one believes this abstinence on the Sabbath leads to piety, then the real meaning 43 of that precept is not understood. So Justin asserts that the way to keep the true Sabbath is repentance of evil ways.

41 Dial. 42.4. καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξ πάντα ἀπλῶς, ὃ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, τα ἕως Μωυσέως διαταγάθεντα δύναμαι καταρθηματίᾳ ἀποδεικνύμαι τύπους καὶ σώματα καὶ καταγγελίας τῶν τῆς Χριστῷ γίνεσθαι μελλόντων
43 Dial. 12.3. μὴ νοεῖν τε διὰ τῷ ἤμιν προσετάγη.
b. Unleavened Bread

The same way of thinking is applied to the unleavened bread. Justin states that the unleavened bread is a symbol to teach people not to commit the old deeds of the bad leaven. Justin takes issue with the fact that the Jews interpret this in a carnal way. That is, the Jews believe that practice of the precept of the unleavened bread leads to piety, even when souls are filled with deceit and other kinds of sin. Then, in explaining the true significance of the unleavened bread, Justin claims that its purpose was to implore the people not to repeat old sinful deeds.

c. Fasting and Circumcision

Fasting is also explained by Justin as having a “true” meaning. In support of this he quotes Isa 58:1-2. The impact of the quotation is easily observed. Isaiah states that it is not the action of fasting that God desires, but the practical outworking of a person whose heart is truly repentant. In this context, true fasting is linked with true circumcision, that is, circumcision of the heart. This is the true circumcision.

d. Lasting Precepts

In the Dialogue Justin uses circumcision as representative of the old Law and its stress on outward action as a sign of piety. This being the case, Justin summarizes his position on the old Law versus the new Law, “But even if someone is a Scythian or a Persian, but has knowledge of God and his Christ, and keeps the eternal righteous [decrees], [this one] has been circumcised with the good and profitable circumcision, and is a friend of God, and his gifts and offerings cause God to be full of joy.”

---

45 Dial. 15.
46 See also Dial. 16 where Justin quotes Deut 10:16-17 and Lev 26:40-41 in support of a circumcision of the heart.
47 Dial. 18.2; 41.4.
48 Dial. 28.4. ἄλλα καὶν Σκύθης ἢ τις ἢ Πέρσης, ἔχει δὲ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ γνώσιν καὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ φυλάσσει τὰ αἰώνια δίκαια, περιτέμηται τὴν καλὴν καὶ ὑφέλιμον περιτομήν, καὶ φίλος ἔστι τῷ θεῷ, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῖς δώροις αὐτοῦ καὶ ταῖς προσφοραῖς χαίρει.
point here is that there are lasting precepts which render the temporary precepts obsolete. It is these lasting and true precepts that Justin points to when he desires to show the purpose of the old Law.

In the *Dialogue* Justin has employed the new Covenant as a way to rescue the Jewish scriptures from an interpretation based on the old Covenant. Justin realizes that the old Law was imposed on the Jewish people for reasons that are now unnecessary since the coming of Jesus the Christ. Before Christ, the Jewish scriptures required interpretation based on the Law. But after the advent of Christ, because he was the new and eternal Covenant, interpretation needed to be based on him. Thus the old Law was seen as foreshadowing Christ or containing an underlying "true" or "real" meaning. It is this christocentric interpretation of the Jewish scriptures that Justin applies in the *Dialogue*. It is the key by which Justin unlocks the true and lasting precepts. But the Jews, because they do not accept Jesus as Messiah, understand everything in a carnal (σαρκικῶς) way.⁴⁹ And although they read scriptures, they do not understand its sense or meaning (νοɵς).⁵⁰

**B. Two Advents**

Because the new and eternal Law is Jesus himself, Justin is obligated to interpret scripture christocentrically. By so doing he has already ruled Trypho's method of interpretation, based as it is on the old Law, obsolete. Thus, Justin's overarching understanding of scripture is that some passages in the Prophets refer to the first advent of Christ, in which he is described as coming in disgrace and obscurity, and mortality, while other passages in the Prophets speak of his second advent, when he will appear in glory.⁵¹

⁴⁹ *Dial.* 14.2.
⁵⁰ *Dial.* 29.2.
⁵¹ *Dial.* 14.8.
Just as the Law had a true meaning that was represented by the rituals, so the two advents of Jesus have been foretold symbolically by the Prophets. For example, the scapegoat and the sacrificial goat which had to be offered up during the fast were an announcement (καταγγέλλω) of the two advents Jesus, "...the first in which the elders of your people, and the priests, sent him away as a scapegoat, laying hands upon him and putting him to death; and his second advent, because in that place in Jerusalem you will recognize him, the one who you dishonored, and was a sacrificial offering on behalf of all sinners willing to repent."52

Justin’s discussion of the two advents in relation to the Law betrays an important aspect of his presentation. It was shown above that the core issue with respect to the Law was salvation. The old Law could not save people. A new and eternal Law was required that could provide that salvation. In placing the discussion of the two advents above in sacrificial language, Justin points to the issue of salvation as it relates to the advents as well.

1. The Problem of a Suffering Messiah

The implicit belief in the two advents of Jesus is dependent upon the belief that Jesus is Messiah. Justin adhered to this belief while Trypho did not. Trypho believes the Messiah is yet to come. In this light we may understand why much of the Dialogue records Trypho’s objection to Justin's claim that Jesus is the Messiah. Trypho simply cannot accept a suffering Christ. 53 But Justin is clear in his understanding that Jesus is the long awaited Messiah and that he suffered in

52 Dial. 40.4 μιᾶς μέν, ἐν ή ὡς ἀποστολαίαν αὐτὸν παρεπήμφαντο οἱ πρεσβύτεροι τοῦ λαοῦ ἱμῶν καὶ οἱ ἱερεῖς, ἐπιβαλόντες αὐτῷ τὰς χεῖρας καὶ βανανάσαντες αὐτόν, καὶ τῆς δεύτερας δὲ αὐτοῦ παρουσίας, ὅτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων ἐπισυναφθησεθε αὐτῶν, τῶν ἄμωμων ὑπὸ τῆς ἱμῶν, καὶ προσφορὰ ἦν ὑπὲρ πάντων τῶν μετανοοῦντων καὶ ποιμένων καὶ ἀμαρτωλῶν...

53 Dial. 89.1.
accordance with the plan of God.\textsuperscript{54} By denying the Messiahship of Jesus, Trypho is thus denying the coming of a new and eternal Law.

Trypho has one overarching reason for denying messianic claims for Jesus—the fact that Jesus was crucified. Trypho believes that Justin’s quotations from scripture prove that the Messiah will be glorious, but that the one whom the Christians call Christ was without glory and honor to the extent that he was crucified, thus incurring the last curse of God’s law (Deut 21:23).\textsuperscript{55} Later in the Dialogue, the seriousness of this for Trypho is clarified when he states,

\begin{quote}
You are right...that the whole of our nation waits for the Christ, and that all the scriptures which you have quoted profess him...But we doubt if the Christ was to be crucified in this ignoble way. For the one crucified is declared to be accursed in the law. Consequently, I am still not convinced on this point. It is clear that the scriptures proclaim that the Christ is destined to suffer. But we wish to learn if you can demonstrate if it was by a suffering accursed in the law.\textsuperscript{56}
\end{quote}

Once again, the issue of the Law rears it head. This makes perfect sense, in the light of Trypho’s attitude toward the Law as essential for salvation. If the Law places a curse upon the crucified one, it would be impossible for Trypho to accept an accursed one as Messiah. But in Justin’s mind, accepting the obsolescence of the old Law is part and parcel of accepting Jesus as Messiah. Indeed, the old Law is obsolete because Jesus is Messiah. But Trypho is still hung up on the Law.

2. The Prediction of a Suffering Messiah

This necessitates a certain plan of action on Justin’s part. He thus argues, in much the same way as in the above section on the Law, that the Prophets actually

\textsuperscript{54} Dial. 89.3.  
\textsuperscript{55} Dial. 32.1.  
\textsuperscript{56} Dial. 89.1-2. EU 108L... ÖTL Kal TlaV T6 yEVOS 1111wV TÖV XpiaTÖV 4KUXfTQt, Ka. ÖTt TTQQQt al ypa4a(, aS WT Etc a1JT6V EtplIV rat, 6ILOXOYOÜ LEV... et & KQI ciTilitc otTWS QTQUpuMval TÖV XpLQTÖv, QTrOpOt tEV' glTLKQTäpaTOS yap Ö QTQUpot111EVOS IV TGl äp. XfyETQl dvav aaTE TtpÖS TOTO dKg tV 8UQTiE(aTWS ? XW. rra9TlT6v RN Tdv XpL T6v ön at ypa4ai Knpýaoouat, 4atEp6v iaTly' EL & SL& TOO IV TW VÖlitil KEKQTgpaREVOU mieovT, (IOVX64EOa $ QOEiv, El lXElS Kal TrEpl TOÜTOU Q1To&LlaL.
predicted the crucifixion and death of Christ. If the Prophets had not predicted these things, Trypho and the Jews would be justified in their feelings of surprise about the crucifixion. But Justin states that the event of the crucifixion is a distinguishing mark (τὸ χαρακτηρίζον) which declares or announces (μηνύω) the Christ to all. And if this is the distinguishing mark of the Messiah, the only choice is belief in Jesus as the Messiah.57 The crucifixion as a τὸ χαρακτηρίζον is related to the σφραγίς.58 In its technical sense the σφραγίς refers to the imposition of the sign of the cross on the forehead of the candidate at the rite of baptism. The word was used by both secular and Christian writers, but our interest in the term centers on its use by Christian writers.59 In Christian writers the term may denote two general things.60 First, a stone in a signet ring, the design or inscription which it bears, the stamp which it makes upon wax, and hence a seal which is an authentication, guarantee or proof. Second, it may denote a token of agreement or affirmation, a mark of ownership, a seal set upon a letter, parcel, book, or other object as a mark of ownership, and also a safeguard or protection against interference.61 Thus, we see that it may mean that which closes or seals up and is equivalent to "completion" or "perfection," in the sense of that which completes and sums up a process or a series.62 It could be that Justin has this idea of completion or perfection in mind when he describes the event of the crucifixion as a distinguishing mark (τὸ χαρακτηρίζον) which declares or announces the Christ to all. Justin's position is that the Messiah could be none other than Jesus because the events

57 Dial. 89.3.
59 For its use by non-Christian writers see, Dölger, Sphragis; Daniélou, The Bible and the Liturgy.
60 Lampe, The Seal of the Spirit, 8.
61 These various uses are detailed in Daniélou, The Bible and the Liturgy, 54-60.
of his death prove that he is Messiah. The one who understands this understands the Prophets. “Whoever understands the Prophets, upon merely hearing that he was crucified, will say that this is he [the Christ] and no other.”

Trypho is intrigued by Justin’s assertion that the Prophets predict a crucified Messiah. He thus states,

Show us this [the prediction of a crucified messiah] therefore...from the scriptures, that you might seek to persuade us. For we know [that he was] to suffer and be led as a sheep. But prove to us that he had to be crucified and die such a dishonorable and ignoble death which is accursed in the law. For we cannot even bring ourselves to think of this.

Justin's reply to Trypho’s challenge continues in the vein of understanding what the Prophets really wrote—the “true” meaning. Justin thus states, “You know...that whatever the Prophets said and did they revealed in parables and types, as you confessed to us; so it was not easy for most to comprehend all [of what they were saying], since they concealed the truth by these means, that the ones who are searching to find and to learn will do so with much labor.” In saying this, Justin is claiming that there is something that unlocks the hidden truth—the crucifixion. The hidden truth would have remained so were it not for the event. Thus, the event of the crucifixion of the incarnate Logos was revelation. Truth has been made manifest and revealed by this event. Again, without the event, the symbol is useless. He then proceeds to show Trypho a number of symbolic acts which portray the cross and crucifixion in the scriptures.

---

63 Dial. 89.3. Καὶ δόσῃ νενοίχας τὰ τῶν προφητῶν, τοῦτον φήσουσιν, οὐκ ἄλλον, εἰ μόνον ἀκούσεις ὅτι οὗτος ἐσταυρωμένος.
64 Dial. 90.1. Καὶ ἡμᾶς οὖ...προβάσασον ἐκ τῶν γραφῶν, ἵνα σοι πεισθῆμεν καὶ ἡμεῖς παθεῖν γάρ καὶ ως πρόβατον ἀφθησεσθαι οἴδαμεν· εἰ δὲ καὶ σταυρωθῆναι καὶ οὕτως αἰσχρῶς ἐπεβαίνειν διὰ τοῦ κεκατημένου ἐν τῷ νόμῳ βασιλέως, ἀποδειξάτως ἡμῖν· ἡμεῖς γὰρ οὕτως εἴς ἑαυτοὺς τούτου ἔλθειν ἐνυστέθανα.
65 Dial. 90.2. Ὁθε...διὶ δει εἴπον καὶ ἐποίησαν οἱ προφῆται, ὥς καὶ ὠμολογηθή ἐμῖν,
3. **Examples of a Suffering Messiah**

Justin asserts that the actions of Moses and Joshua symbolically announced (προσκηρυσσόμενον συμβολικῶς) the crucifixion of the Messiah. According to Justin, Moses is a type (τύπος) of the cross in Exod 17:8-15. This is the narrative of the war with Amalek. When Moses held his arms up, Israel prevailed. But when Moses let his arms down, Amalek prevailed. This is clearly a type for Justin because “…if he [Moses] gave up this figure, which was imitating the cross, the people were vanquished, as it is written in the writings of Moses. But if he was remaining in this disposition, Amalek was defeated, and the one prevailing was prevailing through the cross.”

Joshua, on the other hand, is a type of the name of Jesus. Justin places great importance in the fact that the Hebrew name Joshua in Greek is Ἰησοῦς. He thus asks Trypho to consider that it was Jesus (Joshua) who led the patriarchs into the promised land. So the passage concerning the war with Amalek, which records Joshua as victorious in this battle, was really a type of Christ who was also victorious over death.

The cross was further announced through Jacob in the blessing pronounced over Joseph. Contained in that blessing is a phrase which refers to the Lord having the horns of a rhinoceros, with which he will push the nations from one end of the...
earth to another. These horns represent (μυμέομαι) the type (τύπος) of the cross, while the reference to the pushing of the nations describes what is taking place among the nations. Justin clarifies this, by stating that people of all nations have been convicted and goaded into compunction by the mystery of the cross. They have thus turned from idols and demons to worship the true God. But the ones who do not believe are condemned and destroyed by the same figure of the cross. Just as when the people had come out of Egypt when Israel was victorious over Amalek by the sign of Moses’ outstretched hands and by the imposition of the name Jesus upon the son of Nun.

Just as Moses’ outstretched hands, Joshua’s victory over Amalek, and the horns of the rhinoceros were types of the cross, so was the type (τύπος) and sign (σημείον) erected to counteract the effects of the serpents that bit Israel. It is here that Justin makes the link of the cross with salvation. He says that

the type and the sign, which was erected to counteract the serpents, came into existence to bring to light the salvation of the ones believing that death was previously declared to come upon the serpent through the one who was about to be crucified, but salvation to the ones who had been bitten by it and those who fled for refuge to the one who was being crucified, the son of him who sent him into the world.

Justin appeals to these four “types” of the cross because they show that the cross, in the writings of Moses, has an intimate relationship to salvation and victory.
The above four types clearly show this, and it is in these types that Justin believes the Jews have a means of understanding that the man crucified on the cross is the Christ. But Justin is disgusted by the fact that, in spite of these signs described by Moses, the Jews still refuse to believe. 78

4. Recapitulation of the Curse

Justin now furthers the discussion of the raising of the brazen serpent in the context of the Law in order to counteract Trypho’s contention that Jesus is accursed by the Law because he was crucified. 79 He asks Trypho why God would command Moses to construct the serpent and set it up as a sign even though he had forbade the making of any image or likeness in the heavens or on the earth. Justin then repeats his belief that this is because it was the announcement of the mystery of the cross. Trypho and his companions are then challenged to refute Justin’s interpretation, but no refutation is recorded. So, with respect to the brazen serpent, Justin concludes, “Therefore, when God commanded that a sign come into existence in the manner of the brazen serpent, he is innocent [of the charge of making graven images]; even so, a curse is established in the law upon men who are crucified. But no curse is established upon the Christ of God through whom all who have committed acts worthy of the curse are saved.” 80

The discussion on the curse continues in Dial. 95 where Justin claims that all men are under the curse. Both Jews and Gentiles fail to keep the whole Law. But God willed that the Christ would shoulder the curse of the whole human race on the cross for the remission of sins. The shouldering of the curse should force the Jews to bewail

78 Dial. 93.5.
79 Dial. 94.
80 Dial. 94.5. "Ομοιο τον τρόπον το σημείον διά τον χαλκού δείγμα γενέσθαι ο Θεός ἐκείνου καὶ ἀναπτομόν ἐστιν, οὕτω δ' ἐκλειστόν κατά τῆς κατάρας κατακαλεῖ, καὶ τῶν σταυροῦμεν ἀθρόων. οὖς ἐπίθετο καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ Θεοῦ κατάρα μετάγγει μᾶς κατάραμεν ἀεί πράξαντας"
their own sin, rather than accusing Jesus of being accursed. The fact that Jesus was crucified actually strengthens hope because that which was predicted to happen to Christ has actually taken place.\textsuperscript{81} This is what Justin then proceeds to show in the section with the concentrated references to the Memoirs of the Apostles.\textsuperscript{82} Referring especially to Psalm 22, Justin proves, by an appeal to the writings of the Apostles as witnesses to the events, that the prophecies contained in Ps 22 actually took place.

Justin then comes full circle in his discussion on the curse by repeating his interpretations of the two goats, Moses' outstretched hands, and the victory of Joshua over Amalek.\textsuperscript{83} Each show the importance of the cross as the means of salvation. Even though these types are expressed through various persons and events, the actual event which they prefigure is attributed to the suffering and crucified Christ who was not cursed by the law, but rather, showed that he alone could save those who hold firm to faith in him.\textsuperscript{84} In this light Justin further explains the necessity of the crucifixion by focusing on the blood of the Messiah. Thus, the Passover was a sign that salvation was to come to humankind through the blood of Christ. For just as the blood of the Passover saved those who were in Egypt, so shall the blood of Christ save those who believe in him.\textsuperscript{85}

With this description of the necessity of the crucifixion of Jesus, Justin has shown how the apparent disgrace of the crucifixion is turned into the glory of salvation for humankind. He has shown how something which the Jews understand as a curse must be understood as a blessing and hope. For just as the old Law brought a
curse because of humankind’s inability to keep it, the new Law brought hope because it fulfilled and completed the old Law. All that was now required was faith.

5. Subjugation of the First Advent

But still Justin views the first advent of Jesus as somehow subjugated in importance to the second advent,

But if he [Jesus] so shone forth and was so strong at his first advent (which was without honor and ugly and contemptible) that in no nation he is unknown, and citizens of all nations have repented of their old evil way of living, so that even the demons are submissive to his name, and all authorities and kingdoms fear his name more than they fear the dead; shall he not at his glorious advent destroy all the ones hating him and the ones who unrighteously left him, but give rest to his own, rewarding them with all they have looked for? 86

Reference is here made to the second advent being even greater than the first. 87 For at that advent, Jesus’ enemies will be destroyed, and his followers rewarded. This appears to be the glory of the second advent, of which Justin states that the Jews will recognize that the one they have pierced is indeed the messiah. 88

The contrast between the first and second advents is employed by Justin as a means of showing Trypho that passages of scripture which speak of a glorious Messiah are references to this second advent. This is seen in an exchange between Justin and Trypho that is recorded in Dial. 32. In the preceding chapter Justin had just quoted Dan 7:9-28 to Trypho, which stresses the glory of the Messiah. Trypho, quite naturally objects to this on the grounds that the one called Christ by Christians was

86 Dial. 121.3. εἰ δὲ ἐν τῇ ἁτίμῃ καὶ δειδεὶ καὶ ἐξουθενημένῃ πρώτῃ παρουσίᾳ αὐτοῦ τοκούτων ἐλημόσῃ καὶ ἴσχυον, ὡς ἐν μηδενὶ γένεις ἀγνοεισθαι αὐτὸν καὶ ἀπὸ παντὸς μετάνοιαν πετοῦσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς πολιτείας καθῆς ἐκάστου γένους πολιτείας, ὡστε καὶ τὰ δαιμόνια ὑποτάσσεσθαι αὐτὸν τῇ ὁμοστ σκιᾷ καὶ πᾶσας τὰς ἀρχὰς καὶ τὰς βασιλείας τούτου τῇ ὁμοια τάρα πάντας τοὺς ἀποδινάντας δεδοκείναι, οὐκ ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τῇ ἑνδόξῳ αὐτοῦ παρουσίᾳ καταλύει πάντας τοὺς μισήσαντας αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἀδίκους ἀποστάντας, τοὺς δὲ ἱδίους ἀναπαύει, ἀποδίδοις αὐτοῖς τὰ προσδοκώμενα πάντα;

87 Justin is still very conscious of the possibility that some Jews may still accept salvation before the second advent. He has a very strong commitment that a remnant of the Jews remains to be saved (Dial. 32.2; 55.3; 64.2-3). See Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 39-44 and Appendix II where these passages and the eschatological remnant are discussed in greater detail.

88 Dial. 14.8; 32.2; 64.7.
without this glory and honor. Justin's response is to claim that there should be two advents, one in disgrace and the other in glory. Justin admits that a failure to understand this basic point results in a lack of understanding with respect to the prophetic descriptions of the Messiah.

Ultimately, however, the glory of the second advent is shown to outshine the glory of the first advent because the second advent is the culmination of the plan of God. Justin speaks fairly often of the divine οἶκονομία or plan. In each occurrence of the terms Justin has in view the fact that all things that happened to Christ were in accordance with the will of the Father. Thus, for example, by his crucifixion, Christ fulfilled the Father's οἶκονομία of our redemption. And Jesus' birth through the virgin was in accordance with the divine οἶκονομία of our redemption. In fact, the events of the life, death and resurrection of the Logos fulfilled the Father's plan of humankind's redemption.

The first advent, therefore, may be described as being dependent upon the divine οἶκονομία. But it would be difficult to maintain a plan for only part of Justin's argument on the advents. Thus, Justin also maintains that the second advent is vital in the Father's plan. The second advent is shown by Justin to be dependent on the first. He explains that even though Christ was pre-existent, he still became incarnate and was born of the virgin, in order that by this οἶκονομία he might conquer death and...
bring it to an end, so that at the second advent the serpent would no longer have any 
power over those who believe in Christ and live according to his principles. 97

Thus, the second advent is not only presented as being dependent on the first, 
but as also fulfilling it. Much in the same way that the new Law fulfils the old Law. 
At the second advent the glory of the first will be recognized because no one will be 
able to deny the completion of God's plan through his Christ.

Because the Jews did not understand this concept of the two advents, Justin 
believes they were hampered in their ability to understand what scripture truly says 
about the Christ, thus making it impossible for the Jews to recognize that Jesus is the 
Christ. 98 Justin's answer, therefore, to Trypho's denial that the Prophets predict a 
crucified Messiah is that the things which the Prophets said or did were often veiled 
(ἀπεκάλυψαν) in parables (παραβολαῖς) and types (τύποις). Consequently, it is not 
easy for most people to understand what they actually said. 99 The way to understand 
these parables and types, however, is through an understanding of the advents. If one 
understands that the advents are the reason why parables were spoken, 100 then one is 
able to differentiate between prophecies of the first advent and prophecies of the 
second advent. Thus, the meaning of the words of the prophecy is dependent upon 
prior understanding that these two advents were foretold, and that they all fit into the 
plan of God.

III. Baptism, Illumination, and Interpretation

Justin believes that the Jews simply do not understand the true meaning of the 
scriptures, and as a result, they are unable to discern what scripture portrays. 101 But 

97 Dial. 45.4. 
98 Dial. 89. 
99 Dial. 90.2. 
100 Dial. 52.1.
cannot. This is not an arbitrary understanding on Justin's part, nor is it Justin's belief that Christians have received some sort of spiritual illumination, akin to the Prophets, which enables them to correctly discern scripture. Rather, Justin's assertion is based upon his thoroughly christological understanding of scripture. The key to Justin's meaning here is contained in what may be called his doctrine of illumination. This doctrine of illumination is, in turn, helpful in understanding Justin's interpretation of scripture.

It is necessary here to start, as background, with a passage from Justin's 1 Apology, which links baptism and illumination. In this passage Justin describes the Christian rite of baptism. Christian baptism has been described as the sine qua non of being a Christian in the second century. This is to say that the time had not yet arrived when people could think of themselves as being saved yet unbaptized—the two went together quite naturally through a more or less set order. In the passage at hand we see Justin Martyr reflecting this order.

Justin explains the manner in which Christians dedicate themselves to God after they had been made new through Christ. The order of baptism, as Justin relates it, can be set out in four sections.

(1) The candidate for baptism is one who is convinced of the truth of Christianity. In the words of Justin he or she is "persuaded and believe[s] that what we teach and say is true." Because of the conviction of the truth of Christianity the candidate resolves to live accordingly.

---

101 Dial. 29.2; 38.2; 55.3; 112; 114.5.
102 Dial. 39.1; 110.2.
103 My designation.
104 1 Apol. 61 & 65.
106 1 Apol. 61.1.
107 1 Apol. 61.2 ....πεισθωσι καὶ πιστεύωσιν ἀληθῆ ταῦτα τὰ υἱῶν διδασκόμενα καὶ λέγομεν εἶναι.
(2) The candidate is then instructed to pray and entreat God with fasting for the remission of past sins. In this step, Justin points out that the local congregation prays and fasts along with the candidate.108

(3) The candidate is then brought to a place where there is water and “in the name of God, the Father and Lord of the universe, and of our Saviour Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit” is baptized (ἀναγεννάω) in water.109

(4) Following the baptism Justin explains that the one who has been convinced and assented to Christian teaching is brought to a place where all the brethren are assembled in order that they may pray,110 salute one another with a kiss,111 and partake of the Eucharist.112

Historians of the early church have concluded that the catechetical instruction was a very important part of the rite of baptism.113 Indeed, this can be traced in the Didache,114 Hippolytus’ Apostolic Tradition,115 and into the later catechetical lectures of Cyril of Jerusalem, John Chrysostom, and Augustine of Hippo. This order of

108 / Apol. 61.2.
109 / Apol. 61.3 ἐπ’ ὄψιματος γὰρ τοῦ πατρὸς τῶν ἁλών καὶ δεσπότου θεοῦ καὶ τοῦ αὐτῆρος ἠμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ πνεύματος ἁγίου... / Apol. 65.1.
110 / Apol. 65.2. “The kiss of charity, the kiss of peace, or “the peace” (ἡ εἰρήνη), was enjoined by the Apostle Paul in his Epistles to the Corinthians, Thessalonians, and Romans, and thence passed into a common usage. It was continued in the Western Church, under regulations to prevent its abuse, until the thirteenth century” (A. Roberts & J. Donaldson, Ante Nicene Fathers [10 Vols.; Peabody: Hendrickson, 1994] 1.185, FN #3).
111 / Apol. 65.3-66.4.
112 L. W. Barnard, Justin Martyr. His Life and Thought (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1967) 135; E. Ferguson, “Baptismal Motifs in the Ancient Church,” RestQ 7 (1963) 202-216; Lewis, “Baptismal Practices in the Second and Third Century Church”; E. F. Osborn, Justin Martyr, (BHT Gerhard Ebeling; Tübingen: J. C. B. Mohr [Paul Seibek], 1973) 179. J. N. D. Kelly, in his monumental Early Christian Creeds (London: Longmans, Green and Co., 1950) explains that there are several situations that arose in the life of the church that called for a statement of doctrine thus leading to development of declaratory creeds. Of these situations baptismal catechism is said to be the most important. According to Kelly there are two moments that stand out in the ritual of baptism that call for this doctrinal statement. The first is the actual act of baptism while the second is the time of baptismal preparation or catechetical instruction which led up to the rendering of the creed (See Kelly, Chap. 2). G. Hinson (“Confessions or Creeds in the Early Christian Tradition,” RevExp 76 [1979] 6) indicates that this procedure for baptism included five steps: 1) a preliminary presentation of Christian doctrine for inquirers; 2) a catechumate of up to three years; 3) a concluding period of instruction and preparation for baptism; 4) baptism on Easter Sunday (or, in some cases Pentecost); and 5) instruction in the “mysteries” (Baptism and the Eucharist) following baptism.
baptism in *I Apology* lends support to this conclusion. This instruction was concerned with both moral behavior and doctrinal training. In Justin we see that the candidate is “persuaded and believe[s] that what we teach and say is true,” and that the candidate is “instructed.” Later, in *I Apol. 65*, Justin indicates once again that the one who has been baptized has been convinced and has assented to Christian teaching. All of this implies some sort of catechetical instruction that was at least as important in the rite of baptism as the actual washing. Justin calls this rite of baptism a new birth (ἀναγέννησις) which was learned from the Apostles.

While this passage has tremendous importance for information on the liturgy of the second century church, it is not in that capacity where its interest for us lies. In this passage Justin also alludes to another washing—a washing that is called illumination (φωτισμός). It is with Justin Martyr that we see for the first time the connection between baptism and illumination or enlightenment.  

---

116 S. G. Hall, *Doctrine and Practice in the Early Church* (Grand Rapids: Eerdmans, 1991) 16-17. 117 *I Apol. 61.2* & διδάσκονται. 118 *I Apol. 65.1*. 119 Barnard (*Justin Martyr*, 137) states that a period of pre-baptismal instruction is presupposed in Justin. 120 *I Apol. 61.3*. 121 Barnard, *Justin Martyr*, 141; Ferguson, “Baptismal Motifs in the Ancient Church,” 214; Lewis, “Baptismal Practices of the Second and Third Century Church,” 6; Osborn, *Justin Martyr*, 179. J. Ysebaert (*Greek Baptismal Terminology: Its Origin and Early Development* [Graecitas Christianorum Primææ; Nijmegen: Dekker & Van de Vegt N. V., 1962]157-178) points out that both the verb (φωτίζων) and the noun (φωτισμός) are used metaphorically in the NT of Christian belief as enlightenment (2 Cor 4:4; Eph 1:18; 2 Tim 1:10). In Heb 6:4 (cf. 10:32) the verb is used in the passive voice of the enlightenment received at baptism. However, φωτίζων only became a technical term for baptism from the second century onwards (Ignatius of Antioch, *ad Rom. Inscript.*). Justin clearly uses φωτίζων in this technical way (*I Apol. 61.13; 65.1; Dial. 39.2; 122.1, 3*), but he is the first to use the noun φωτισμός specifically of baptism (*I Apol. 61.12*). By the time of Clement Alexandria it is used of baptism without further explanation. Lewis (“Baptismal practices of the Second and Third Century Church,” 6) states that the term is no doubt an echo of Heb 6:4 and 10:32 and which Clement explains as a description of baptism (Clement of Alexandria, *Paed 1.6.26*). But in Cyril of Jerusalem (*Procat. 1; Cat. 18.32*) enlightenment is applied to the process of instruction before baptism. Irenaeus is explicit that it is the preaching of the truth which enlightens (*Haer. 1.10.2* cf. 4.14). From this time on φωτισμός becomes common, cf. Clement of Alexandria (*Paed. 1.6.26*), Cf. Cyril of Jerusalem (*Procat. 1-2*) where a clear distinction is made between dipping in water and the illumination of the heart. Simon Magus, says Cyril, enjoyed only the former.
Justin believes that salvation occurs before baptism.\textsuperscript{122} This is seen in five ways. The first two refer to the general context of Justin's extant writings while the final three refer to the specific context at issue. First, Justin urges repentance in all his writings.\textsuperscript{123} Second,\textsuperscript{124} Justin indicates that the acceptance of the doctrine of Christianity must be accompanied by repentance.\textsuperscript{125} Christ died for those who are willing to repent.\textsuperscript{126} This repentance is a condition of mercy,\textsuperscript{127} and a prerequisite for baptism.\textsuperscript{128} Third, there are several statements in \textit{1 Apol.} 61.2 that indicate a volitional repentance before the actual rite of baptism is performed. In 61.2 Justin states that those who have been taught and believe Christianity undertake to live accordingly. 61.6 indicates that there must be repentance from past sins. 61.10 has two statements concerning the fact that the ones baptized are children of choice who have repented of past sins. 65.1 indicates that the one baptized is seen as a good citizen because of his/her good works. This dovetails with the statement in 61.2 which claims that Christians undertake to live accordingly. Fourth, Justin's uses a quotation from a passage in Isaiah\textsuperscript{129} to show how it is only those who repent who shall be saved. This passage has no mention of an external washing or baptism, but exhorts the readers to wash their souls. This washing cleanses from sin. Fifth, Justin indicates in 61.3 that candidates for baptism "wash themselves" (\textit{kouTpbv TroLoüvrai}). This use of the

\begin{footnotesize}
\textsuperscript{122} For Justin's understanding of salvation see above, pp.96-105.
\textsuperscript{123} Goodenough, \textit{The Theology of Justin Martyr. An Investigation Into the Consequences of Early Christian Literature and Its Hellenic and Judaistic Influences} (Amsterdam: Philo Press, 1968) 263. Cf. \textit{1 Apol.} 40.7; \textit{Dial.} 95.3; 108.3; 118.1; 138.3.
\textsuperscript{124} Goodenough, \textit{The Theology of Justin Martyr}, 263.
\textsuperscript{125} \textit{Dial.} 26.1.
\textsuperscript{126} \textit{Dial.} 40.4.
\textsuperscript{127} \textit{1 Apol.} 28.2; \textit{Dial.} 26.1; 141.2-3.
\textsuperscript{128} \textit{1 Apol.} 61; \textit{Dial} 47.5.
\textsuperscript{129} \textit{1 Apol.} 61.7 quotes Isa 1:16-20. "Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from your souls; learn to do well; judge the fatherless, and plead for the widow: and come and let us reason together saith the Lord. And though your sins be as scarlet, I will make them white like wool; and though they be as crimson; I will make them white as snow. But if ye refuse and rebel, the sword of the Lord hath spoken it." Translation from A. Roberts & J. Donaldson, \textit{Ante-Nicene Fathers} (10 Vols.; Peabody: Hendrickson, 1994) 1.183.
\end{footnotesize}
middle voice may be taken in one of two ways. It could mean that the candidate goes under the water unassisted while the 3-fold formula is pronounced over him. But, more probable is the idea that the rite cannot be possible without the complete volition of the participant.

These five ways in which Justin indicates that salvation precedes baptism, along with the implied period of catechetical instruction, fits well with Justin's use in this passage of illumination in connection with baptism. The washing that is involved in the choice of being born again, and the repentance of sins is called illumination. "And this washing is called illumination, because they who learn these things are illuminated in their understandings. And in the name of Jesus Christ, who was crucified under Pontius Pilate, and in the name of the Holy Spirit, who through the Prophets foretold all things about Jesus, he who is illuminated is washed." 

In I Apol. 61 Justin claims that the external rite of baptism is the manner in which Christians show devotion (ἀναθηματίζει) to God. Although Justin describes the importance of this external rite for Christians, he stresses the washing of which Isaiah speaks. This washing is focused on an internal cleansing for sin. It is the internal washing that is called illumination, because by it individuals are illuminated in their understanding. This understanding of baptism as illumination is continued, and even expounded more clearly in the Dialogue with Trypho.

130 E. R. Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 266. For a good explanation on the uses of the Greek middle voice see S. E. Porter, Idioms of the Greek New Testament (Biblical Languages: Greek 2; Sheffield: JSOT Press, 1992. "...the Greek middle voice expresses more direct participation, specific involvement, or even some form of benefit of the subject doing the action" (p. 67).
131 1 Apol. 61.12-13. καλεῖται δὲ τοῦτο τὸ λουτρὸν φωτισμός, ὡς φωτιζομένων τὴν δάκρων τῶν ταύτα μαθηματίων. καὶ ἐπ’ ἄνωματος δὲ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, τοῦ σταυρωθέντος ἐπὶ Ποντίου Πιλάτου, καὶ ἐπ’ ἄνωματος πνεύματος ἀγίου, διὰ τῶν προφητῶν προεκτίμησε τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἰησοῦν πάντα, ὁ φωτιζόμενος λοῦται.
A. Baptism

Justin repeats his admonition to the readers of *I Apol.* 61.7 to wash their souls clean in *Dial.* 18.2.\(^{133}\) He relates this washing with the true (ἀληθινός) circumcision. This is clearly an admonition to a spiritual obedience, since true circumcision is the lasting precept by which Abraham was saved.\(^{134}\) Justin repeats his assertion that fleshly circumcision was not essential for all men, but only for Jews.\(^{135}\) Fleshly circumcision is then compared to the Jewish baptism of cisterns which, “has nothing to do with this baptism of life.”\(^{136}\) The comparison of the baptism of life with the baptism of cisterns is Justin’s way of criticizing the minute regulations of the ceremonial use of the *Migveh* in baptism.\(^{137}\) The concern that thus comes to the fore with this comparison and with the above comparison to true circumcision, is a better baptism.

Earlier in the *Dialogue*, this better baptism is clarified by an appeal, once again, to the washing mentioned in Isa 1,

> For Isaiah was not sending you to a bath, there to forgive murder and other sins which even all the water in the sea would be sufficient, but, as might have been expected, this was that saving bath of old which followed those who changed their minds and who were no longer cleansed by the blood of goats and sheep or ashes of an heifer or offerings of fine flour, but through the blood of Christ, and through his death, who died for this very reason...\(^{138}\)

\(^{132}\) This fits well with Justin’s doctrine of redemption as imparting saving knowledge. See above, pp. 86-96.

\(^{133}\) Again Justin quotes here the same passage (Isa 1:16) that he quoted in *I Apol.* 61.7.

\(^{134}\) See above, pp. 229-233.

\(^{135}\) *Dial.* 19.1.

\(^{136}\) *Dial.* 19.2. οὐδὲν γὰρ πρὸς τὸ βάπτισμα τούτῳ τὸ τῆς (ὡς ἦστι.


\(^{138}\) *Dial.* 13.1. Οὐ γὰρ δὴ γε ἐὰς βαλακαίων ὑμᾶς ἐπεμπεν Ἡσαῦς ἀπολωσόμενους ἐκεῖ τῶν φόνων καὶ τῶς ἄλλας ἀμαρτίας, οὐ δὲ τῆς βαλάνσις ἰκανοῦ πάν τῶν καθαρίσαι, ἀλλὰ, ὡς εἰκὸς, πάλαι τούτῳ ἐκείνῳ τοῦ εὐτυχίαν λούσαν ήν, δὲ εἶπε, τὸ τῶς μεταγινώσκω ς καὶ μηκέτει αἴματος τράγων καὶ προβάτων ἢ σπόδω δαμέλεως ἢ σεμιδάλεως προφοράς καθαρισμένως, ἀλλὰ πίστει διὰ τοῦ αἰματός τοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ τοῦ θανάτου αὐτοῦ, διὰ διὰ
The baptism spoken of here is salvation. In Dial. 14.1 Justin calls it a baptism of repentance instituted for the sins of the people, which alone can purify those who repent. The value of baptism which cleanses only the flesh and the body is said to be useless. Justin thus exhorts Trypho to wash his soul free of anger, avarice, jealously and hatred—this purifies the body. This is clearly a reference to a spiritual baptism that is possible only through salvation.

Later in the Dialogue Justin refers to baptism in relation to salvation once more. In explaining that the rites of the Law found their end in Jesus, the new and eternal Law, Justin asserts that Christians have come to God through Jesus Christ. In so doing they have received not a carnal circumcision, but a spiritual circumcision. This spiritual circumcision is then said to have been received by means of baptism. The validity of taking these references to baptism as synonymous with salvation is dependent upon their connection with the obsolescence of the old Law. The old Law could not cleanse from sin, but the new Law does—and this is through faith in the blood of Christ, not animals. That is why Justin encourages Trypho to be washed with the true baptism of life. It is only through faith in the blood of Jesus Christ that one may be purified with this washing. Thus it is entirely consistent that the baptism of life is synonymous with salvation. As Justin expresses to Trypho, “There is no other way than this, that you come to know this Christ and be cleansed by the cleansing proclaimed by Isaiah for the forgiveness of sins; and thus live a life free of sin.”

\(\text{τούτο ἀνέβανεν...}\)

139 This is supported in the same chapter where Justin quotes Isa 52:10-15; 53:1-12; and 54:1-6 as christological prophecies of the death of Christ for salvation. This must be understood through Justin’s apparent belief that salvation is primarily the impartation of saving knowledge, see above, pp. 96-105.

140 Dial. 43.1-2.

141 Dial. 44.4. ἔστι δὲ οὐκ ἄλλα ἢ αὕτη, ἣν τούτων τῶν Χριστῶν ἐπιγνώστες καὶ λουσάμενοι τῷ ὑπὲρ ἀφέσεως ἁμαρτιῶν διὰ Ησαίου κηρυχθέν λουτρόν ἀναμαρτητῶς λουτρόν ζησάτε.
According to Justin, true baptism is that cleansing from sin which every person may receive through faith in Jesus Christ.

B. Illumination or Enlightenment

Just as true baptism, with its emphasis on salvation, is intimately linked with Christ, so is illumination. Thus, Justin claims that some Jews are actually becoming disciples in the name of Christ, and are thus "being illuminated through the name of this Christ."  

Again, Justin does not describe what this illumination is here. But two things merit special attention in connection with this illumination. First, the ones who are being saved are illuminated, and second, Christ is the one who illuminates. The importance of these two observations will become clear as we proceed.

Justin makes no more mention of this illumination until the last part of Dialogue. And it is in Dial. 122 that Justin’s meaning of the term becomes apparent. The larger context of the chapter lies within the section dealing with Christians as true Israel. Chapters 119-120 contain Justin’s claim that the Jews are not true Israel, but that Christians, by virtue of their standing in Christ, actually are. In Dial. 121, Justin claims that it was prophesied that all nations would be blessed “in him”. If all nations are blessed in Christ, and Christians from all nations believe in him, then, Justin reasons, Jesus is the Christ, and Christians are the ones who are blessed by him. It has been granted to Christians to hear, understand, and be saved by this Christ, and to recognize all the truths revealed by the Father. In support of this, Justin offers Isa 49:6 as the Father speaking to Christ.

142 Dial. 39.2. φωτιζόμενοι διὰ τοῦ ἀδύνατος τοῦ Χριστοῦ τούτου.
143 Dial. 119-142.
144 Dial. 121.4. ἀκούσαι καὶ συνεῖναι καὶ σωθῆναι διὰ τοῦτο τοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ τὰ τοῦ πατρὸς ἐπηγγέλαι πάντα.
145 "It is a great thing for thee to be called my servant, to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and turn again the dispersed of Israel, I have appointed thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be their salvation unto the end of the earth."
In *Dial. 122* Justin anticipates Trypho's objection to Isa 49:6 as being a reference to Christians. Jews would understand it as referring to Jewish proselytes, but Justin answers that it refers to Christians "who have been illumined by Jesus." This line of argument continues as Justin offers scripture that he says refer to Christ and concern the "illuminated nations" (Christians). Finally Trypho and his companions speak. They protest that the passages which are quoted by Justin refer to the Law and to those who are illumined by it. Justin's answer is worth quoting at length.

For if the law was able to enlighten the nations, and the ones possessing it, why is there a need for a new covenant? But since God foretold that he would send a new covenant, and an eternal law and commandment, we will not understand this as of the old law and its proselytes, but of Christ and his proselytes—as Gentiles, whom he has enlightened, as he says somewhere, 'Thus says the Lord, In an acceptable time I have heard you, and in a day of salvation I have helped you, and I have given you for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, and to inherit the deserted. What then is the inheritance of Christ? Is it not the nations? What is the covenant of God? Is it not Christ?'

The fact that Christ is the new Covenant becomes very important here in connection with Justin's doctrine of illumination. Once again (as in *Dial. 39.2* above) it is those who are saved through Christ who are illumined, and it is Christ who is the "illuminator". It is here where the rubber meets the road, so to speak, in Justin's doctrine of illumination. We can at once see the connection of salvation with illumination. The old Law could illumine neither the Gentiles nor the Jews who possessed it. There was need, therefore, of a new and eternal Law—Christ himself.

He has illumined the Gentiles. In the context, this can mean nothing less than

---

146 *Dial. 122.1* τοὺς διὰ Ἡσαῦ πεφωτισμένους.
147 *Dial. 122.3* τῶν ἑβδομῶν τῶν πεφωτισμένων.
148 *Dial. 122.4*.
149 *Dial. 122.5-6* ἐπεὶ εἰ νόμος εἶχε τὸ φωτίζειν τὰ ἑθη καὶ τοὺς ἑξουσίας αὐτῶν, τὴς χρείας καινῆς διαθήκης: ἐπεὶ δὲ καινὴν διαθήκην καὶ νόμον αὐώναν καὶ πρόσταγμα οὗ θεὸς προεκτίθησε πέμψειν, οὐχὶ τὸν παλαιὸν νόμον ἀκουσίμαθα καὶ τοὺς προσηλίτους αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Χριστὸν καὶ τοὺς προσηλίτους αὐτοῦ, ἡμᾶς τὰ ἑθη, οὕς ἐφώτισες, οὐ δὲ φησὶν. Οὕτω λέγει κύριος: Καὶ ἐκείνῳ ἐπηκυώσα αὐτούς, καὶ ἐν ἡμέρᾳ σωτηρίας ἐβοηθήσα αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐδώκας σας εἰς διαθήκην ἑθων, τούτων καταστήσας τὴν γῆν καὶ κληρονομίαν κληρονομήσαι ἐρήμων. τίς οὖν ἢ κληρονομία τοῦ Χριστοῦ; οὐχὶ τὰ ἑθη; τίς η διαθήκη τοῦ θεοῦ; οὐκ ὁ Χριστός;
salvation. For salvation was the whole purpose of the Law, and by it Jews believed
they were reconciled to God. But now, through Christ, all may be reconciled to
God because he illumines.

Justin's doctrine of illumination may thus indicate one of two things, although
the two are not necessarily mutually exclusive. First, it may indicate the fact that
because of the baptismal catechism (which was synonymous with the act of baptism)
the candidates are illuminated in their understanding. Christ truly becomes the key
by which all is understood. He makes sense of salvation history, and it is through him
that Hebrew scripture is interpreted.

Second, it may build upon the idea in Justin's 2 Apology of the spermatic
Logos wherein illumination indicates that the candidate for baptism receives the
whole Logos. "For whatever the philosophers or lawgivers continually uttered well,
they achieved by finding and contemplating part of the Word. But since they did not
know all of the Word, which is Christ, they often contradicted themselves in what
they said." By becoming human the Logos thus completed the knowledge of the
Father. Thus, since the whole Logos has now come into a candidate's life, he or she
was now empowered with a divine force which will enable them to live a truly moral
life. "It is here [in baptism] that man receives the great enlightening from God
which gives the power of the entire Logos in place of the defeated fragment which
man naturally possesses."

---

150 Dial. 8-11. See also, pp. 166-172.
151 Lewis, "Baptismal Practices of the Second and Third Century Church," 6; Osborn Justin Martyr,
179.
152 1 Apol. 32.10; 33.6; 2 Apol. 10.8; Dial. 128.2. See above, pp. 127-136; Barnard, Justin Martyr, 141;
153 2 Apol. 10.2 ὁς ἁγιὸς καλῶς δέλεφεγξαντο καὶ εὕρον οἱ φιλοσοφήσαντες ὡς
νομοθετήσαντες, κατὰ λόγου μέρος δι' εὐρέσεως καὶ θεωρίας ἔστι ποιηθέντα αὐτῶς ἐπεὶ θεὶ
δὲ οὐ πάντα τὰ τοῦ λόγου ἐγνώρισαν, δὲ ἐστὶ Χριστός καὶ ἐναυτία ἐαυτῶς πολλάς εἶπον.
154 1 Apol. 32.10; 33.6; 2 Apol. 10.8; Dial. 128.2.
155 Barnard, Justin Martyr, 141.
156 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 266.
As stated, the two are not mutually exclusive. There is no denying that Justin is referring to an illumination of understanding. Because the will of humanity is involved in his concept of salvation this must be included. But of the second possibility in attempting to define Justin’s doctrine of illumination Justin is less clear. Justin clearly regards the rite as external. Yet by indicating an illumination he is also asserting that something takes place spiritually, “in a sense which Justin does not explain.” So, because there is a definite illumination of understanding and a claim by Justin that the external rite (taken as a whole) confers a spiritual benefit, I must conclude that the two may be held together in a way that Justin does not fully explain.

C. Interpretation

The fact that Justin’s use of illumination here is a reference to salvation has implications for interpretation. It is clear that Justin is not speaking of a special inspiration that Christians receive in some supernatural way. Rather, Justin is speaking of the necessity and centrality of Christ in salvation. But this idea must also be understood in light of the interpretation of scripture. For if old Covenant governed the understanding and interpretation before the coming of the new Covenant, then Christ must govern the interpretation of scripture since he is the new Covenant which fulfills the old.

Justin’s doctrine of illumination goes hand in hand with what has already been presented concerning the centrality of Jesus as the new Covenant. Christ is the one

---

157 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 266.
158 K. McDonnell (The Baptism of Jesus in the Jordan: The Trinitarian and Cosmic Order of Salvation [Collegeville, MN: The Liturgical Press, 1996] 42) states, “Justin Martyr is in a bind. He feels constrained to talk about baptism, but he cannot make too much of it, as he has attacked the Jews for their exterior rites. How can he, then, comfortably talk about the exterior rites of Christians?” While McDonnell relates this to Jesus’ baptism in the Jordan, it may also apply to the way he speaks of Baptism in general. As we have seen, the external rite encompasses more than simply the act of baptism, but includes a catechism. Further, Justin is more than likely claiming that the external rite confers a spiritual blessing that empowers the candidate to live a moral life.
who brings illumination to those who believe in him because he is the one of whom scripture speaks. Failure to believe in Jesus as the Christ virtually eradicates any hope of understanding the scriptures. But belief in Jesus as Messiah illuminates the believer to understand scripture, which ultimately prophesy about Christ. Christ is thus the key to understanding scripture. Christians, by virtue of their salvation, possess this key. But Jews, by virtue of their unbelief in Jesus as messiah, possess a key that no longer fits the lock—the old Law.

This explains why the two major themes throughout the Dialogue are the Law and the Messiah. For if Jesus is the new Law and the Messiah, the Jews have the answers before their very eyes.

IV. Evaluation of Justin’s OT Interpretation

In evaluating Justin’s method of interpreting scripture one thing becomes very clear—the belief in and importance of the historical figure of Jesus as the Christ. Justin’s interpretation is thoroughly christocentric. That is, it has Jesus as Messiah at the forefront of interpretation. The OT scriptures must be interpreted through an understanding of the events of his pre-existence, incarnation, death, resurrection and ascension to the right hand of the Father. A proper understanding of the Law and prophecy are built upon this foundation.

Justin has expressed the importance of the Jesus of history to his interpretation in many ways throughout the Dialogue with Trypho. His argument from prophecy was designed to show that Jesus was the one of whom the Prophets spoke. He is the fulfillment of their predictions. That fulfillment is proved in the Memoirs of the Apostles. As records of the historical event of Jesus, the Memoirs show the various events in his life as corresponding to the various OT prophecies concerning him. The prophecies were spoken and they were actually fulfilled in the person and work of
Jesus. They are grounded in history because Jesus was a historical figure who existed at a particular era in human history. This is clear for all to see because the events are recorded also for all to see and read.

The christocentrism which Justin employs governs his scriptural interpretation. It gives him a foundation upon which to base his arguments as well as a focus upon which all things are directed. The Prophets spoke of a coming Messiah, Jesus came as Messiah and fulfilled all the prophecies. As Messiah, Jesus made the old Law obsolete and provided a new Law—a way of salvation for all, not just Jews. Without the historical reality of Jesus as Messiah, Justin’s OT interpretation collapses. He stakes his whole method on this one incontrovertible fact.

The stress on the historical reality of Jesus by Justin must not be underestimated if one is to properly evaluate Justin’s exegesis. It is, in fact, the key in defining his exegesis as typological as opposed to allegorical. Foundational to the typological interpretation of scripture is historical correspondence. This is in stark contrast to allegorical interpretation which treats the text as a mere symbol, or allegory of spiritual truths. Typology does not mean that there is a relation between things invisible and visible, but there is a correspondence between historical realities at different stages in history. This definition has three important points that must be understood. First, it is not a question of the hidden sense in the text of scripture, but the realities themselves which are the types. Second, it is a question of a relation.


between realities both of which are historical, and not between historical realities and a timeless world. Third, the resemblance between the type and the anti-type, or the figure and the reality, is contributed not by anything in the persons or events in question, but by the fact that both form part of a single divine plan and both manifest the way the same God deals with his people.

Justin's exegesis clearly fits each of these three important points. First, it is clear that Justin does not focus on some hidden meaning in the text. While it is true that, for Justin, Christ is the key that unlocks the meaning, that meaning is clear for all to see in light of Christ. He focuses on the reality of Christ as fulfillment of the OT types. Thus, his explanation of the sign of the serpent was a type of the cross shows that there is historical reference to the type. 162 Second, it is also clear that the relationship that Justin points out is a relationship between two historical realities. In other words, the connection Justin makes between Christ and something in the OT always corresponds to a reality. For example, the actions of Moses and Joshua are types of Christ because they display the victory which Christ also won on the cross. 163 The connection is made between the historical reality of the Moses and Joshua and the historical reality of the crucifixion. Third, it is also clear that all things are considered to be under the divine oikouμoμια or plan. 164 All this occurs as a fulfillment of the plan of the Father. He is at its beginning and end.

It is thus clear that Justin's OT interpretation is typological in its outworking. It was stated at the beginning of this chapter that Justin's exegesis was not governed by any precise rules, but that it followed the needs that Justin was required to meet. In other words, it was a functional exegesis. This is what has been seen in this chapter.

162 Dial. 91.4.
163 Dial. 111.
164 Dial. 30.3; 45.4; 67.6; 87.5; 103.3; 120.1; 134.2.
Justin's task in relating Christianity to the Jew Trypho required Justin to explain certain doctrines in Christianity which were scoffed at by the Jews. Justin attempted to use the same foundational documents as the Jews to show them that Jesus was, in fact, their Messiah. He appealed to historical realities which shows that he remains in the typological tradition.
Appendix I
Gospel Quotations and Allusions Found in the Dialogue with Trypho

I. Passages in Dialogue with Trypho which are indicated by Justin to be contained in the Gospel or memoirs.¹

A. Dial. 88.3, “And then, when Jesus had gone to the river Jordan, where John was baptizing, and when he had stepped into the water, a fire was kindled in the Jordan; and when He came out of the water, the Holy Ghost lighted on Him like a dove, [as] the apostles of this very Christ of ours wrote.”
> Mention of the fire igniting the waters may have been learned from oral tradition or from some apocryphal work. The Ebionite Gospel and the Praedicatio Pauli both mention this phenomenon.

B. Dial. 100.1, “…but also in the Gospel it is written that he said, 'All things have been delivered to me by my Father; and no one knows the Father except the Son; nor does anyone know the Son except the Father, and those to whom the Son will reveal him.'”
> Mat 11:27; Luke 10:22

C. Dial. 100.3, “Hence also, among His words he said, when he was discoursing about His future sufferings: ‘The Son of man must suffer many things, and be rejected by the Pharisees and Scribes, and be crucified, and on the third day rise again.’”

D. Dial. 100.4, “For [Christ] called one of his disciples—previously known by the name Simon—Peter; since he recognized Him to be Christ the Son of God, by the revelation of His Father.”
> Mat 10:2; Mat 16:16-17; Mark 3:16; Luke 6:13-14

E. Dial. 100, Jesus is called “Son of God.”
> Mat 4:3; Mat 8:29; Mat 16:16-17; Mark 3:11; Mark 14:61; Luke 1:35; John 3:18; John 11:27.

F. *Dial.* 100 Jesus is said to be "born of a Virgin."

G. *Dial.* 100.5 - "But the virgin Mary, filled with faith and joy, when the angel Gabriel announced to her the good tidings that the Spirit of the Lord would come upon her, and the power of the highest would overshadow her, and therefore the Holy one born of her would be the Son of God, answered, 'Be it done according to they word.'"

H. *Dial.* 101.3, "Those that beheld him on the cross wagged their heads, curled their lips in scorn, turned up their noses and said, "He called himself the Son of God, let him come down from the cross and walk! Let God save him!"

I. *Dial.* 102.5, "He kept silence, and chose to return no answer to any one in the presence of Pilate; as has been declared in the Memoirs of His apostles..."
   > Mat 27:14; Mark 15:5; Luke 23:9; John—No mention of Jesus' silence but records a conversation between Jesus and Pilate.

J. *Dial.* 103.1, "For on that night when some of your nation, who had been sent by the Pharisees and Scribes, and teachers, came upon Him from the Mount of Olives, those whom scripture called butting and prematurely destructive calves surrounded Him."

K. *Dial.* 103.6, "For this devil, when [Jesus] went up from the river Jordan, at the time when the voice spake to Him, 'Thou art my Son: this day have I begotten Thee,' is recorded in the memoirs of the apostles to have come to Him and tempted him, even so far as to say to him, 'Worship me;' and Christ answered him, 'Get thee behind me Satan: thou shalt worship the Lord thy God and Him only shalt thou serve.'"

L. *Dial.* 103.6, "For this devil, when [Jesus] went up from the river Jordan, at the time when the voice spake to Him, 'Thou art my Son: this day have I begotten Thee,' is recorded in the memoirs of the apostles to have come to Him and tempted him, even so far as to say to him, 'Worship me;' and Christ answered him, 'Get thee behind me Satan: thou shalt worship the Lord thy God and Him only shalt thou serve.'"

M. *Dial.* 103.8, "For in the memoirs which I say were drawn up by His apostles and those who followed them, [it is recorded] that His sweat fell down like drops of blood while he was praying, and saying, 'If it be possible, let this cup pass.'"
Appendix I—Gospel Quotations and Allusions

N. Dial. 104.2, "And this is recorded to have happened in the memoirs of His apostles. And I have shown that, after His crucifixion, they who crucified Him parted His garments among them."


O. Dial. 105.1, "For I have already proved that he was the only-begotten of the Father of all things, being begotten in peculiar manner Word and power by Him, and having afterwards become man through the Virgin, as we have learned from the memoirs."

> John 1 (?)

P. Dial. 105.1, "For I have already proved that he was the only-begotten of the Father of all things, being begotten in peculiar manner Word and power by Him, and having afterwards become man through the Virgin, as we have learned from the memoirs."


Q. Dial. 105.5, "For when Christ was giving up His spirit on the cross, He said, 'Father, into Thy hands I commend My spirit,' as I have learned also from the memoirs."

> Mat 27:50; Mark 15:37 (In the Greek, Jesus' words in Luke are identical with those recorded by Justin.); John 19:30.

R. Dial. 105.6, "For He exhorted His disciples to surpass the pharisaic way of living, with the warning, that if they did not, they might be sure they could not be saved: and these words are recorded in the memoirs: 'Unless your righteousness exceed that of the Scribes and Pharisees, ye shall not enter the kingdom of heaven.'"

> Mat 5:20 (Justin's quote matches exactly the Greek of Matthew.)

S. Dial. 106.1, "...and when living with them [the apostles] sang praises to God, as is evident in the memoirs of the apostles."

> Mat 26:30; Mk 14:26.

T. Dial. 106.3, "And when it is said that He changed the name of one of the apostles to Peter; and it is written in the memoirs of Him that this so happened..."

> Mat 10:2; Mat 16:16-17; Mark 3:16; Luke 6:13-14.

U. Dial. 106.3, "...and it is written in the memoirs of Him that this so happened, as well as that he changed the names of other two brothers, the sons of Zebedee, to Boanerges, which means sons of thunder;"

> Mat 3:17

V. Dial. 106.4, "Accordingly, a star arose in heaven at the time of His birth, as is recorded in the memoirs of His apostles, the magi from Arabia, recognizing the sign by this, came and worshipped Him."

> Mat 2:10-11

W. Dial. 107.1, And that he would rise again on the third day after the crucifixion, it is written in the memoirs that some of your nation, questioning Him, said, 'Show
us a sign;' and he replied to them, 'An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign; and no sign shall be given them, save the sign of Jonah.'

\[\text{Mat 12:38-39; Mat 16:1, 4; Mark 8:11-12; Luke 11:29.}\]

II. Passages in *Dialogue with Trypho* which are indicated by Justin to be the words or commands of Jesus.

A. *Dial. 17.3*, "For He appeared distasteful to you when he cried among you, 'It is written, My house is the house of prayer; but ye have made it a den of thieves!'"

\[\text{Mat 21:13; Mark 11:17; Luke 19:46.}\]

\[\text{Cf. Dial. 112.4.}\]

B. *Dial. 17.4*, "He overthrew also the tables of the money-changers in the temple, and exclaimed, 'Woe unto you, Scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! Because ye pay tithe of mint and rue, but do not observe the love of God and justice. Ye whited sepulchers! Appearing beautiful outward, but are within full of dead men's bones.'"


\[\text{Cf. Dial. 112.4.}\]

C. *Dial. 17.4*, "And to the Scribes, 'Woe unto you Scribes! For ye have the keys, and ye do not enter in yourselves, and them that are entering in ye hinder; ye blind guides!'"

\[\text{Mat 23:13; Luke 11:52.}\]

\[\text{Cf. Dial. 112.4.}\]

D. *Dial. 35.3*, "For he said, 'many will come in my name, clothed outwardly in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.'"

\[\text{Mat 7:15.}\]

E. *Dial. 35.3*, "And, 'There shall be schisms and heresies.'"

\[\text{Quoted in no canonical document.}\]

\[\text{Also quoted in *Didascalia*, Didymus the Blind *De trinitate* 3.22, and *Lactantius De Inst.* 4.30.}\]

F. *Dial. 35.3*, "And, 'Beware of the false prophets, who shall come to you clothed outwardly in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.'"

\[\text{Mat 7:15.}\]

G. *Dial. 35.3*, "And, 'Many false Christs and false apostles shall arise, and shall deceive many of the faithful.'"

\[\text{Mat 24:5; Mat 24:11; Mat 24:24; Mark 13:5-6; Luke 21:8.}\]

H. *Dial. 47.5*, "Wherefore also our Lord Jesus Christ said, 'In whatsoever things I shall take you, in these I shall judge you.'"

\[\text{In no canonical document. Perhaps in *Gospel of Hebrews*.}\]

\[\text{Cf. John 12:47-48.}\]
I. Dial. 48.4, "...since we were enjoined by Christ Himself to put no faith in human doctrines, but in those proclaimed by the blessed prophets and taught by Himself."

J. Dial. 49.3, "And, accordingly, our Lord in His teaching proclaimed that this very thing would take place, saying that Elijah would also come."
   > Mat 11:13-14; Mat 17:10-13; Mark 9:11-13; John 1:19-28.

K. Dial. 49.5, "Wherefore also our Christ said, [when He was] on earth, to those who were affirming that Elijah must come before Christ: 'Elijah shall come, and restore all things; but I say unto you, that Elijah has already come, and they knew him not, but have done to him whatsoever they chose.' And it is written, 'Then the disciples understood that he spake to them about John the Baptist.'"
   > Mat 17:10-13; Mark 9:11-13.

L. Dial. 51.3, "Moreover, He [Jesus] referred to the fact that there would be no longer in your nation any prophet, and to the fact that men recognized how that the New Covenant, which God formerly announced [His intention of] promulgating, was then present, i.e., Christ Himself; and in the following terms: 'The law of the prophets were until John the Baptist; from that time the kingdom of heaven suffereth violence, and violent take it by force. And if you can receive it, he is Elijah, who was to come. He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.'"

M. Dial. 76.4, "For He alone taught openly those mighty counsels which the father designed both for all those who have been and shall be well-pleasing to Him, and also for those who have rebelled against His will, whether men or angels, when he said, 'They shall come from the east [and from the west], and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven: but the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness.'"
   > Mat 8:11-12; Luke 7:28-29.
   > Cf. Dial. 120.6; 140.4.

N. Dial. 76.5, "And, 'Many shall say to me in that day, lord, lord, have we not eaten, and drunk, and prophesied, and cast out demons in Thy name? And I will say to them, Depart from Me.'"

O. Dial. 76.5, "Again, in other words, by which He shall condemn those who are unworthy of salvation, he said, 'Depart into outer darkness which the Father has prepared for Satan and his angels.'"
   > Mat 25:41.

P. Dial. 76.6, "And again, in other words, He said, 'I give unto you power to tread on serpents, and on scorpions, and on centipedes, and on all the might of the enemy.'"
   > No mention of "centipedes" in the canonical documents.
Appendix I—Gospel Quotations and Allusions

Q. Dial. 76.7, "For He exclaimed before His crucifixion: 'The Son of man must suffer many things and be rejected by the Scribes and Pharisees, and be crucified, and on the third day rise again.'"  

R. Dial. 81.4, "Just as our Lord also said, 'They shall neither marry nor be given in marriage, but shall be equal to the angels, the children of the God of the resurrection.'"  

S. Dial. 82.1-2, "And just as there were false prophets contemporaneous with your holy prophets, so are there now many false teachers amongst us, of whom our Lord forewarned us to beware; so that in no respect are we deficient, since we know that He foreknew all that would happen to us after His resurrection from the dead and ascension to heaven. For He said we would be put to death, and hated for His name's sake; and that many false prophets and false Christs would appear in His name, and deceive many: and so it has come about."
> Mat 7:15; Mat 24:5, 9, 11, 24; Mark 13:5-6, 9; Luke 21:12, 18.

T. Dial. 88.8, "...but then the Holy Ghost, and for man's sake, as I formerly stated, lighted on Him in the form of a dove, and there came at the same instant from the heavens a voice, which was uttered also by David when he spoke, personating Christ, what the father would say to Him: 'Thou art My Son: this day have I begotten Thee;' [the Father] saying that His generation would take place for men, at the time when they would become acquainted with Him: 'Thou art My Son: this day I have begotten thee.'"

U. Dial. 93.2, "And hence I think that our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ spoke well when He summed up all righteousness and piety in two commandments. They are these: 'Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy strength, and thy neighbor as thyself.'"

V. Dial. 96.3, "And in addition to all this we pray for you, that Christ may have mercy upon you. For He taught us to pray for our enemies also, saying, 'Love your enemies; be kind and merciful, as your heavenly Father is.'"
> Mat 5:38; Luke 6:36.

W. Dial. 99.1, "For when crucified, He spake, 'O God, my God, why hast Thou forsaken me?'
> Mat 27:46; Mark 15:34.

X. Dial. 99.2, "For on the day on which he was to be crucified, having taken three of His disciples to the hill called Olivet, situated opposite to the temple in Jerusalem, He prayed in these words: 'Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me.' And again He prayed: 'Not as I will, but as Thou wilt;' showing by this that he had become truly a suffering man."
Y. Dial. 101.2, "For when on earth He acted in the very same manner, and answered to the one who addressed Him as 'Good Master:' 'Why callest thou me good? One is good, my Father who is in heaven.'"

Z. Dial. 112.4, "...will they not deserve to hear what our Lord Jesus Christ said to them [Trypho's teachers]: 'Whited sepulchers, which appear beautiful outward, and within are full of dead men's bones; which pay tithe of mint, and swallow a camel: ye blind guides!'
   > Cf. Dial. 17.3-4.

AA. Dial. 120.6, "'For they shall come,' He said, 'from the west and from the east, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven; but the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness.'"
   > Mat 8:11-12; Luke 7:28-29.
   > Cf. Dial. 76.4; 140.4.

BB. Dial. 122.1, "For Christ would have borne witness even to them; but now you are become twofold more the children of hell, as he said Himself.'"
   > Mat 23:15.

CC. Dial. 125.1, "...but I speak all things simply and candidly, as my Lord said: 'A sower went forth to sow the seed; and some fell by the wayside, and some among thorns, and some on stony ground, and some on good ground.'"
   > Mat 13:3-9; Mark 4:3-9; Luke 8:5-8.

DD. Dial. 125.4, "But He destroyed and overthrew the devil, having proved him to be wicked, in that he asked to be worshipped as God, contrary to the Scripture; who is an apostate from the will of God. For He answers him, 'It is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and Him only shalt thou serve.'"

EE. Dial. 140.4, "And our Lord, according to the will of Him that sent Him, who is the father and lord of all, would not have said, 'The shall come from the east, and from the west, and shall sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into outer darkness.'"
   > Mat 8:11-12; Luke 7:28-29.
   > Cf. Dial. 76.4; 120.6.

III. Passages in Dialogue with Trypho which contain no indication of source.

A. Dial. 12.2, "The Lawgiver is present, yet you do not see Him; to the poor the Gospel is preached, the blind see, yet you do not understand."
   > Mat 11:4-5; Luke 7:22.

B. Dial. 23.3, "For if there was no need of circumcision before Abraham, or of the observances of Sabbaths, of feasts and sacrifices, before Moses; no more need of
them is there now, after that, according to the will of God, Jesus Christ the Son of 

God has been born without sin, of a virgin sprung from the stock of Abraham."

- Descendant of Abraham—Mat 1:1-17.

C. *Dial. 27.3,* “For they are all gone aside,” He [God] exclaims, ‘they are all 

become useless. There is none that understands, there is not so much as one. With 

their tongues they have practiced deceit, their throat is an open sepulcher, the 

poison of asps is under their lips, destruction and misery are in their paths, and the 

way of peace they have not known.’ "

- Rom 3:10-17.

D. *Dial. 30.3,* “…Jesus Christ, crucified under Pontius Pilate, governor of Judea…”

- Mat 27; Mark 15; Luke 8:1; John 19.

E. *Dial. 32.3,* “In order, therefore, that the matter inquired into may be plainer to 

you, I will mention to you other words also spoken by the blessed David, from 

which you will perceive that the Lord is called the Christ by the Holy Spirit of 

prophecy; and that the Lord, the father of all, has brought Him again from the 

earth, setting Him at His own right hand, until He makes His enemies His 

footstool; which indeed happens from the time that our Lord Jesus Christ 

ascended to heaven, after he rose again from the dead…”


F. *Dial. 41.1,* “And the offering of the fine flour, sirs, which was prescribed to be 
presented on behalf of those purified from leprosy, was a type of the bread of the 
Eucharist, the celebration of which our Lord Jesus Christ prescribed, in 
remembrance of the suffering which he endured on behalf of those who are 
purified in soul from all iniquity, in order that we may at the same time thank God 
for having created the world, with all things therein, for the sake of Man, and for 
delivering us from the evil in which we were, and for utterly overthrowing 
principalities and powers by Him who suffered according to His will.”


G. *Dial. 49.3,* “He [John the Baptist] cried, as he sat by the river Jordan, ‘I baptize 
you with water to repentance; but He that is stronger than I shall come, whose 
shoes I am not worthy to bear: He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost and with 
fire: whose fan is in His hand, and He will thoroughly purge His floor, and will 
gather the wheat into the barn; but the chaff He will burn up with unquenchable 
fire.’ “

H. Dia. 49.4, "And this very prophet your King Herod had shut up in prison; and when his birth-day was celebrated, and the niece of the same Herod by her dancing had pleased him, he told her to ask whatever she pleased. Then the mother of the maiden instigated her to ask the head of John, who was in prison; and having asked it, [Herod] sent and ordered the head of John to be brought in on a charger."

I. Dia. 51.1-2, "If the prophets had not ceased, so that there were no more in your nation, Trypho, after this John, it is evident that what I say in reference to Jesus Christ might be regarded perhaps as ambiguous. But if John came first calling on men to repent, and Christ, while [John] still sat by the river Jordan, having come, put an end to this prophesying and baptizing and preached also Himself, saying that the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and that He must suffer many things from the Scribes and Pharisees, and be crucified, and on the third day rise again, and would appear again in Jerusalem, and would again eat and drink with His disciples; and foretold that in the interval between His [first and second) advent, as I previously said, priests and false prophets would arise in His name, which things do actually appear; then how can they be ambiguous, when you may be persuaded by the facts?"
> John exhorting men to repent—Mat 3:2; Mark 1:4; Luke 3:3.
> Jesus predicting his suffering at the hands of the scribes and Pharisees, to be crucified, and rise again on third day—Mat 16:21; Mark 8:31; Luke 9:22.
> Jesus appears at Jerusalem to eat and drink with his disciples—Mark 16:14; Luke 24:36-43.
> Prediction of Jesus that there would arise heresies and false prophets in his name—Mat 7:15; 24:5, 11, 25; Mark 13:5-6; 21:22; Luke 21:8. These passages contain no mention of heresies, but only false prophets.

J. Dia. 53.5, "And truly our Lord Jesus Christ, when He intended to go into Jerusalem, requested His disciples to bring to Him a certain ass, along with its foal, which was bound in an entrance of a village called Bethpage; and having seated Himself on it, He entered Jerusalem."

K. Dia. 53.5, "Moreover, the prophet Zechariah foretold that this same Christ would be smitten, and His disciples scattered: which also took place. For after His crucifixion, the disciples that accompanied Him were dispersed, until He rose from the dead, and persuaded them that so it had been prophesied concerning Him, and that He would suffer; and being thus persuaded, they went into all the world, and taught these truths."
L. *Dial. 77.4,* "For at the time of His birth, Magi who came from Arabia worshipped Him, coming first to Herod, who then was sovereign in your land, and whom the Scripture calls king of Assyria on account of his ungodly character."

> Mat 2:1-12. Does not state that the Magi came from Arabia, but from the east.

M. *Dial. 78.1,* "Now this King Herod, at the time when the Magi came to him from Arabia, and said they knew from a star which appeared in the heavens that a King had been born in your country, and that they had come to worship Him learned from the elders of your people that it was thus written regarding Bethlehem in the prophets: 'And thou, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, art by no means least among the princes of Judah; for out of thee shall go forth the leader who shall feed my people.'"

> Mat 2:2-6.

N. *Dial. 78.2,* "Accordingly, the Magi from Arabia came to Bethlehem and worshipped the Child, and presented Him with gifts, gold and frankincense, and myrrh; but returned not to Herod, being warned in a revelation after worshipping the Child in Bethlehem."

> Mat 2:9-12.

O. *Dial. 78.3,* "And Joseph, the spouse of Mary, supposing her to be pregnant by intercourse with a man, i.e., from fornication, was commanded in a vision not to put away his wife; and the angel who appeared to him told him that what is in her womb is of the Holy Ghost."

> Mat 1:18-21.

P. *Dial. 78.4,* "Then he was afraid, and did not put her away; but on the occasion of the first census which was taken in Judea, under Cyrenius, he went up from Nazareth, where he lived, to Bethlehem, to which he belonged, to be enrolled; for his family was of the tribe of Judah, which then inhabited that region. Then along with Mary he is ordered to proceed into Egypt, and remain there with the Child until another revelation warn them to return into Judea."


Q. *Dial. 78.5,* "But when the Child was born in Bethlehem, since Joseph could not find a lodging in that village, he took up his quarters in a certain cave near the village; and while they were there Mary brought forth the Christ and placed Him in a manger, and here the Magi who came from Arabia found Him."

> Mat 2:1-25; Luke 2:7. The cave as the birthplace is mentioned in no canonical document. Matthew states that the birth was in a "house" (οἶκος).

R. *Dial. 78.7,* "So Herod, when the Magi from Arabia did not return to him, as he had asked them to do, but had departed by another way to their own country, according to the commands laid on them; and when Joseph, with Mary and the Child, had now gone into Egypt, as it was revealed to them to do; as he did not know the Child whom the Magi had gone to worship, ordered simply the whole of the children then in Bethlehem to be massacred."

> Mat 2:12-16.
S. Dial. 81.4, “And further, there was a certain man with us, whose name was John, one of the apostles of Christ, who prophesied, by a revelation that was made to him, that those who believed in our Christ would dwell a thousand years in Jerusalem; and that thereafter the general, and, in short, the eternal resurrection and judgment of all men would take place.”
   > Rev 20:4-5.

T. Dial. 88.1, “And let this be proof to you, namely, what I told you was done by the Magi from Arabia, who as soon as the Child was born came to worship Him…”
   > Mat 2:9-12.

U. Dial. 88.2, “...for even at His birth he was in possession of His power; and as He grew up as all other men, by using the fitting means, He assigned its own [requirements] to each development, and was sustained by all kinds of nourishment, and waited for thirty years, more or less, until John appeared before Him as the herald of His approach, and preceded Him in the way of baptism, as I have already shown.”
   > Possessed his powers at birth—No canonical document.
   > Grew up like any other man—Circumcised (Luke 2:21); Grew and became strong (Luke 2:40); Continued in subjection to his parents (Luke 2:51).
   > Exercised appropriate powers at each stage of growth—Luke 2:40 (?)
   > Waited thirty years—No canonical document.

V. Dial. 88.7, “For when John remained by the Jordan, and preached the baptism of repentance, wearing only a leather girdle and a vesture made of camels' hair, eating nothing but locusts and wild honey, men supposed him to be Christ; but he cried to them, 'I am not the Christ, but the voice of one crying; for He that is stronger than I shall come, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear.'”

W. Dial. 88.8, “And when Jesus came to the Jordan, He was considered to be the son of Joseph the carpenter; and he appeared without comeliness, as the Scriptures declared; and He was deemed a carpenter (for He was in the habit of working as a carpenter among men, making ploughs and yokes; by which He taught the symbols of righteousness and an active life)...”
   > Mat 13:55; Mark 6:3; Luke 4:22; John 6:42.
   > None of the above mention that Jesus used to work as a carpenter making ploughs and yokes.

X. Dial. 94.5, “Just as God commanded the sign to be made by the brazen serpent, and yet He is blameless; even so, though a curse lies in the law against persons who are crucified, yet no curse lies on the Christ of God, by whom all that have committed things worthy of a curse are saved.”
Y. *Dial.* 97.1, "For indeed the Lord remained upon the tree almost until evening, and they buried Him at eventide; then on the third day He rose again."

- Remained on cross until evening—Mat 27:57; Mark 15:42.
- Rose from the dead on third day—Mat 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20.

Z. *Dial.* 97.4, "For when they crucified Him, driving in the nails, they pierced His hands and feet; and those who crucified Him parted His garments among themselves, each casting lots for what he chose to have, and receiving according to the decision of the lot."


AA. *Dial.* 115.6, "...in order that, when you are judged with the very same judgment by God, you may have a much heavier account to render for your great audacities, whether evil actions, or bad interpretations which you obtain by falsifying the truth. For with what judgment you judge, it is righteous that you be judged withal."

Appendix II
The Purpose and Destination of the *Dialogue with Trypho*

At a perfunctory level of understanding, the interpretation of scripture in Justin's *Dialogue with Trypho* presents us with interpretive issues directed toward a Jewish audience. Thus it appears clear that Justin's choice and use of certain OT texts are made because of the presuppositions of his audience, who are Jews. The *Dialogue* has often been described as a foundational document for an understanding of the theological discussions and contacts between Christians and Jews of the second century.¹ This is based on the foundational understanding that the intended audience of the *Dialogue* was Jews, as a defense of the Christian faith to them.

This traditional view concerning the intended audience of the *Dialogue* was held by the majority of scholars until the twentieth century. But since then it has been faulted for being uncritical.² But it is not difficult to assert that the *Dialogue* was written to and for the Jews of the second century. Any casual reading of the document reveals its focus on the Law, the Jewish messianic hope, and the concept of Israel as the chosen people of God. Further, the two main participants, Justin, a Christian, and

Trypho, a Jew, tends to support the idea that the target audience is Jewish. These appear to be distinctly Jewish concerns in order to convince them that the messianic expectation of Israel is found in Jesus.

In spite of this, however, the present century has offered several reasons for arguing against the traditionally held understanding of Jewish addressees. In this vein, some have argued for a pagan audience, some for a gentile Christian audience, and some for a combined Jewish and Christian audience. The major arguments for denying Jewish addressees will be summarized and examined below.

I. Pagan Destination

A. The Address to Marcus Pompeius

The possibility that the Dialogue is addressed to a man named Marcus Pompeius has been used to deny Jewish addressees and posit pagan addresses.

Marcus is explicitly referred to in Dial. 141.5 as ὃ φίλατάτε Μάρκε ποιμήν. Earlier in the Dialogue there is simply a reference to φίλατάτε. In spite of the fact that only 141.5 makes explicit reference to Marcus, Nilson takes the term φίλατάτε to be a

---

3 The information Justin gives us about Trypho can be collected from Dial. 1.1-3; 9.3; 18.3; 38.1; 94.4. From this data L. W. Barnard ("The Old Testament in the Writings of Justin Martyr," VT 14 [1964] 395-396) describes Trypho as a Jew who fled from the war in Palestine, spending much time in Greece and Corinth. His culture was Gentile because he states that he was instructed by Corinthus the Socratic in Argos. Trypho distinguishes himself from "our teachers" and includes himself among those who have been warned against entering into discussions with Christians. Barnard believes this to be a good indication that Trypho was a layman and not a Rabbi—a fact corroborated by his lack of knowledge of the Hebrew language. Trypho's "conception of Judaism will represent a position different from the strict Palestinian Pharisaic orthodoxy which was being enforced following on the reconstruction of Jamnia after 70 AD." (p. 396)


5 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon."


7 I must acknowledge, at the outset, a relative dependence upon Stylianopoulos' outstanding Appendix in Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 169-195.

8 Dial. 8.3.
reference to him as well. Nilson believes he has good reason for so doing because of the mutilated state of the Greek text of the *Dialogue*. Thus, if one considers the mutilated state of this text it would not be hard to conceive of the *Dialogue* as originally featuring an introductory dedication which included the name of the addressee. Nilson accepts this possibility and posits Marcus Pompeius in the position of addressee. Because the name Marcus Pompeius is strongly Roman, it suggests, therefore, that Marcus is a Roman, and, as such, a Gentile. Thus, if he is a Roman and the *Dialogue* is addressed to him, the hypothesis that the *Dialogue* is addressed to a pagan audience gains considerable weight and argues against a Jewish audience.

Four criticisms of this point have been offered. First, it is entirely possible that the name Marcus Pompeius could belong to a Gentile Christian or even a Jew. For "...the adoption of Greek and Roman names by Jews in hellenistic times was not unusual as in the case of Flavius Josephus. The name Marcus is a good Jewish name." Second, the name only explicitly appears once in the entire *Dialogue*, and there is evidence that the work went through more than one edition. Third, the references in 8.3 and 141.5 really say nothing about the addressees of the *Dialogue*.

---

9 Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's *Dialogue with Trypho* Addressed?" 540.
10 Concerning the mutilation of the text of the *Dialogue*, the details are well-known. They centre mainly in the lost part of the Introduction and lacuna in lxiv.3 and a more serious lacuna in lxiii where the exposition of Ps. 96 is suddenly interrupted and not resumed. From a quotation by Eusebius (H.e. 4.18.6-8) and internal evidence (Dial. 56.16; 85.4; 92.5) it is apparent that the discussion was presented as lasting two days or more. But there is no trace in the *Dialogue* either of the ending of the first day or the beginning of the second. See, H. P. Schneider, "Some Reflections on the Dialogue of Justin Martyr With Trypho," SJT 15 (1962) 166.
11 This possibility is also asserted by E. R. Goodenough, *The Theology of Justin Martyr*, 97.
12 Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's *Dialogue with Trypho* Addressed?" 540.
15 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 212. Cosgrove does not offer any support for his assertion of multiple editions and it is difficult to see where he is headed with the point. Perhaps he intends to imply that the name could actually be a scribal addition.
Appendix II—Purpose and Destination of Dialogue with Trypho

They are simply isolated references which add nothing to a work that focuses on the encounter between a Jew and a Christian. Goodenough’s suggestion that the Dialogue originally contained a dedication which included the name of the addressee and a key to the purpose of the book has neither textual nor internal support. But, in light of the probability that the Dialogue is an imitation of Platonic style, the work may begin as it does for maximum dramatic effect. This would mean, then, that the question of the identity of Marcus Pompeius, much like the identity of Luke’s Theophilus, recedes into the background with minimal significance on the question of the addressee(s) of the work. Thus, both the dedication (if it did exist) and the two references to the stated addressee may merely be a literary gesture. Fourth, Dial. 80.3 presents strong evidence for moving away from a single addressee, as well as confirming the formality of Justin’s address to Marcus.

In Dial. 80.3 Justin says to Trypho, “But so that you know that I do not say this to you alone, I promise to create a whole book, as far as I am able, of all the arrangements we will make, in which I also will write all that I confess to you.” This is the only place in the entire Dialogue where Justin takes note of his own intention in writing it. The wider context of chapter 80 is on Christian eschatological hope.

Trypho questions Justin as to whether he actually believes in the rebuilding of Jerusalem, the millennium, and the resurrection, or whether he has simply asserted these in order to win the argument. Justin states that he says exactly what he means and that, in order to prove it, he will commit their discussion to writing. This passage

---

16 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 170-171.
17 I argue this above, pp. 118-123.
19 This was suggested by R. Hirzel, Der Dialog: ein literarhistorischer Versuch (Leipzig, 1895) II.368ff. See Stylianoploulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 171.
20 Dial. 80.3. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτως ὑμῖν τὸ τοῦτο λέγειν με επιστασθε, τῶν γεγενημένων ἡμῖν λόγων ἀπόστων, ὡς δύναμις μου, σύνταξιν ποιήσωμαι, ἐν αἷς καὶ τοῦτο ὁμολογοῦμεν με, δὲ καὶ πρὸς ὑμᾶς ὀμολογῶ, ἐγγράψω.
Appendix II—Purpose and Destination of Dialogue with Trypho

in itself does not prove who the addressees of the Dialogue are, it is merely an incidental point in the work. But the passage does show that the work appears to be directed at a wider audience than simply Trypho and his friends. This wider audience argues against a single addressee such as Marcus Pompeius which certainly does not rule out the possibility of the audience being Jewish.

B. The Philosophical Prologue

The philosophical prologue of Dial. 1-9 is also used to argue against a Jewish audience. Justin's introductory presentation here of Christianity as the true philosophy, in comparison with the "many-headed" versions of philosophy which neglect God, is said to create a setting in the Dialogue which is much more appealing to a Gentile than a Jewish audience. Nilson states that in the prologue "Philosophy is given a position of highest esteem; indeed, it is the category under which revelation itself is treated. Discussing revelation in terms of philosophy would give a Gentile audience a way to relate revelation to their own cultural background and appeal to those who had been disillusioned by its inability to fulfill its promise." The argument continues that for a Jew philosophy is not a category for discussing revelation.

Goodenough takes issue with the discontinuity between the prologue, which discusses philosophical questions, and the main body, which discusses issues arising out of the Jewish-Christian debate. He concludes that the Dialogue must therefore be recognized as addressed to a man interested in philosophy and not as a record of controversy. Thus, the Dialogue is a vindication of revelation over philosophy. The main body of the Dialogue shows the unity of this revelation, which disagreements

---

1 Stylianopoulous, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 172-173.
22 See above, p. 127-136.
23 Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?" 540.
24 Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?" 540.
between Christians and Jews may set into question. This concept of the purpose of the Dialogue, thus prefers a pagan reader.26

Nilson's position above that philosophy is not a category for a Jew to discuss revelation is somewhat misleading. The question which must be asked of Nilson’s assertion is this; Does Justin present philosophy as the category to discuss revelation? The answer must be no. Justin defines philosophy as knowledge of all that exists.27 In Justin’s concept of God, existence was dependent upon God as the First Cause, the Unmoved Mover, or as the Unbegotten and Incorruptible.28 Thus, everything which exists does so because of him and according to his will, and is dependent upon his sovereignty. In defining philosophy, therefore, as knowledge of that which exists Justin was postulating a definition which had knowledge of God at the very center. He was actually defining philosophy as knowledge of God.

In defining philosophy as knowledge of God (or a search for the knowledge of God) Justin also indicates that revelation is where this knowledge is attained. The whole point of the inclusion of the discussion with the old man in the Dialogue is to show Trypho where one may attain knowledge of God. This knowledge cannot be attained through philosophy because philosophers have not fulfilled the requirements of seeing and hearing. The sources of this knowledge are the Prophets and the Memoirs of the Apostles.

According to Justin this is how knowledge of God is attained. This is the revelation. In this light, Nilson’s assertion that revelation is discussed within philosophical categories must be radically revised and placed within its contextual understanding. Nilson misunderstands the fact that Justin desires to show that

21 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 96-100.
26 Goodenough, The Theology of Justin Martyr, 100.
27 Dial. 3.4. For a discussion of Justin’s understanding of philosophy see pp. 125-145.
contemporary philosophy is inadequate for discussing revelation, and posits a corrective definition of philosophy in its place. In so doing revelation is discussed in terms of witness, not philosophical categories. Thus Nilson’s argument is inconsistent with the context of the prologue.

Goodenough recognizes the fact that Justin places revelation over contemporary philosophy, yet he still posits a pagan audience. He does so by maintaining that the prologue shows that the whole is to be seen not as a record of controversy but as addressed to a man interested in philosophy, thus it must be addressed to a pagan. The obvious question here is; Why can’t a Jew be interested in philosophy? Of Trypho we know that he had philosophic training, for upon his meeting with Justin he started the conversation because he was taught in Argos by Corinthius the Socratic to converse with anyone wearing a philosopher’s cloak. 29 From the first chapter of the Dialogue it is easy to deduce that Trypho was most likely a Hellenistic Jew. 30 And this would certainly not rule out the possibility that Trypho could be interested in philosophy. Further, as Stylianopoulos queries, “must the Dialogue’s philosophical aspects exclude this document from being a record of a controversy, or a text book for controversy, against Judaism?” 31 There is no reason to discount the understanding that the Dialogue may well arise out of the Jewish-Christian debate and still contain philosophical interests sustained by the larger cultural climate.

29 Dial. 1.2.
31 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 188.
C. The Use of the Hebrew Scriptures

Another argument used to cast doubt upon an intended audience that is Jewish is the manner in which Justin employs OT scripture. This assertion generally has two parts. First, it is argued that because the quotations of OT scripture are so long and numerous and never alluded to as common knowledge of the participants, this rules out Jewish addressees. Certainly Justin could approach the OT with a common knowledge as to its contents if the audience was Jewish. But this characteristic is only understandable if the audience had little or no familiarity with the texts.32

The second part of this argument centers on Justin's exclusive use of the Septuagint in his quotations. Justin's use of the Septuagint was during a time of increasing Jewish resentment over the Christian appropriation of their sacred texts. If Justin was addressing his Dialogue to Jews it is thus argued that he would be ill-advised to use the Septuagint because of Jewish discontent. But if Justin was addressing his Dialogue to a Gentile audience his use of the Septuagint would not be surprising.

These arguments, however, fail to convince. The length of the citations of scriptural passages is not necessarily indicative of a pagan audience. As Stylianopoulos points out, a comparison between the OT citations in the Apology and in the Dialogue shows that the citations in the Apology, a work unquestionably addressed to pagans, are actually much less extensive.33 In fact, the Dialogue appears to presuppose a familiarity with and even intimate knowledge with Judaism which cannot be presupposed of a wider Graeco-Roman audience.34 Both knowledge of the OT and the Mosaic Law are presupposed in the Dialogue, as is knowledge of the

32 Nilson, "To Whom is Justin's Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?" 541. See also Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 215-216.
33 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 193.
34 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 192.
Gospels. Each of these topics is introduced into the discussion with no explanation.\textsuperscript{35} Further, some passages in the Dialogue even presuppose knowledge of OT contexts.\textsuperscript{36}

The extensive use of scripture by Justin certainly does not argue against the address of the Dialogue to a pagan audience.\textsuperscript{37} But, by the same token, the primary stated purpose of the Dialogue was to commend the Christian faith to a group of Jews, and this was done by an appeal to a mutual respect for the OT scriptures. This appeal gave the arguments force because they proceeded from a common ground. On the other hand, however, arguments from scripture tended to lose some of their force when Christian addressed them to pagans.\textsuperscript{38} Because the acceptance of scripture is assumed by both Jew and Christian in the Dialogue, the main issue is proper interpretation of said scripture. Thus, the extensive use of OT scripture tends to argue against a pagan audience.

The issue of Justin's use of the Septuagint must be considered on internal grounds. Nilson does recognize\textsuperscript{39} that official Jewish rejection of the Septuagint was not until long after the Dialogue was written.\textsuperscript{40} And I agree that Justin does reflect the Jewish discontent with the Septuagint during the middle of the second century.\textsuperscript{41} But the way in which Justin deals with these issues surrounding the Septuagint show that they are not of great consequence to him.

\textsuperscript{35} See Dial. 8.4; 9.1; 10.2; cf. 1.3.
\textsuperscript{36} See e.g., Dial. 10.3-4 where Gen 17:14 is quoted. The references to the purchased slaves and to circumcision as a “covenant” presuppose the wider context of Gen 17.
\textsuperscript{37} A. Harnack (“Die Altercatio Simonis Judaei et Theophili Christiani nebst Untersuchungen über die antijüdische Polemik in der alten Kirche,” TU I [1883]) argued that any adversus Judaeos literature in the second century can not be used as evidence of any real Jewish-Christian polemic. In fact, Harnack argues that there was no real relations between Jews and Christians at this time. Because of this he sees adversus Judaeos literature as necessarily directed toward a pagan audience. See M. Simon, \textit{Verus Israel. A Study in the Relations Between Christians and Jews in the Roman Empire (135-425) (ET I L. McKeating; The Littman Library of Jewish Civilization; Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1986) 136-141.}
\textsuperscript{38} Simon, \textit{Verus Israel}, 139.
\textsuperscript{39} Nilson, \textit{To Whom is Justin’s Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?} 542.
\textsuperscript{40} Simon, \textit{Verus Israel}, 299. “From the third century onwards the Jews as a community seem to have abandoned it and substituted for it new translations, in particular, that of Aquila.”
\textsuperscript{41} See Dial. 43; 68; 71.
The *Dialogue* reveals only one OT passage which Trypho objects to Justin quoting from the Septuagint, Isa 7:10-17. All other differences in translation between the Hebrew and Greek text are pointed out by Justin himself. The Isaiah passage hinges on the insertion of “virgin” in the Septuagint in place of the Hebrew “young woman.” While it is true that Justin argues for the accuracy of the Septuagint translation, he also points out that his point is proven even without it. This is done in two ways. First, Justin is aware that he will get nowhere in trying to admit passages into the discussion which Trypho will not admit as genuine. This being the case, he states that he will only use scriptures which the Jews admit as genuine. In other words, he will only use scriptures with which Trypho will have no objection. Even after Trypho asks Justin to list the passages which Justin claims were deleted by the Jews, Justin claims that these will not be admitted because they make no difference to what has already been proven in the *Dialogue* by scriptures accepted by Trypho.

The second way in which Justin argues that his point about Christ is proven is through the occurrence of an event. *Dial.* 84 is illustrative of this. There the discussion is on the difference in translation of Isa 7:14. Justin makes the point that the irrefutable proof of what he is asserting is that it actually took place. This, in effect, places the stress of the issue on the proof from prophecy. It is after the event occurs that it is properly understood. And this is no less true for the virgin birth of Christ.

So, the argument that Justin’s use of the Septuagint militates against a Jewish audience is weakened. In the grand scheme of things Justin is perfectly willing to

---

42 *Dial.* 43; 66; 67; 68; 71; 84.  
43 Gen 49:10 (*Dial.* 120); Ps 81:1-8 (*Dial.* 124); Deut 32:7-9 (*Dial.* 131). In *Dial.* 72-73, at Trypho’s request, Justin also lists passages which he claims the elders omitted from their translation. Trypho is presented as being ignorant of these.  
44 *Dial.* 43; 66; 67; 68; 71.  
45 *Dial.* 71.
prove his points, and he believes that he has, with appeals to passages which the Jews accept as genuine. He is perfectly aware of the Jewish disdain for certain translations. But the fact that he believes he can prove his argument without appeal to these passages shows that the Septuagint is not problematic in his argument. Further, his emphasis on the event proving the proper interpretation is key in understanding that the differences in translation fade into the background of the larger picture.

D. Appeals to Gentiles

Also used to argue against a Jewish audience is the hypothesis that certain passages of the Dialogue seem to ring out as appeals to Gentiles, not Jews. T. Zahn was the first to suggest that Dial. 23.3; 24.3; and 32.5 are addressed to Gentile readers. Later Harnack suggested the same for Dial. 29.1; 64.2; 80.3; and 119.4. Both Cosgrove and Stylianopoulos have shown the inadequacy of the hypothesis held by these scholars. Each requires examination.

I. Dialogue 23.3

And when no one was answering [I continued], “Wherefore, O Trypho, I proclaim to you, and to the ones who may want to become proselytes, the divine message which I heard from that [old] man. Do you not see that the elements are idle and keep no sabbaths? Stay as you were at birth! For if there was no need of circumcision before Abraham...[they are] not [needed] now...”

The key to this passage being understood as an address to pagans is the use of the term προσήλυτοι (“proselytes”). Zahn views this term in a purely technical sense designating only Gentile converts to Judaism, and not Jewish or Gentile converts to

---

46 Dial. 71-73.
47 Dial. 73.6.
50 Cosgrove, “Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon,” 212-215; Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 173-187. The above summary and criticism depends on these sources.
51 Kai µηδὲν µήθεν αὐτοκρισίνων· δἰα ταῦτα σοι, Ο Τρόφων, καὶ τοῖς Βουλωνισταῖς προσήλυτοις γενόμεθα κηρύξεως ἐγὼ θεὸς λόγον, ὅπερ έκείνου ἡκουσα τοῦ ἄνδρος, ὅταν διὸ τὰ στοιχεῖα σοι ἀργεὶ οὐκ ἀπαθεῖτε, χρείας γεγενησθε. εἰ γάρ τρόφων τοῦ Ἀβραὰμ οὐκ ἠν χρεία περιτομῆς...οὐδὲ οὖν...
Christianity. So, Zahn identifies the προσήλυτοι here as Gentile converts to Judaism, who are not yet full proselytes but only “feareς of God”. These proselytes, according to Zahn, have not yet been circumcised because Justin supposedly alludes to this when he states, “Stay as you were at birth”, that is, uncircumcised.

Zahn’s argument is unconvincing for three reasons. First, Justin does not use the term προσήλυτοι or the phrase φοβούμενοι τὸν θεόν in the technical sense which Zahn intimates. Second, the same is true of the phrase φοβούμενοι τὸν θεόν, which is used in a general, rather than a technical, sense. Third, the distinction that Zahn wishes to maintain between Justin’s address to Trypho and his address to Trypho’s friends is difficult to maintain. Throughout the Dialogue the distinction is rather between Trypho and his teachers, not between Trypho and his companions. Thus, the appeal to “Stay as you were at birth” (uncircumcised) includes Trypho and his companions.

2. Dialogue 24.3 and 29.1

These are parallel passages and may be examined together.

Come with me, then, all the ones fearing God, the ones wanting to see the good of Jerusalem. Come, let us proceed to the light of the Lord. For he has liberated his people, the house of Jacob. Let us gather together in Jerusalem.
Let us glorify God together with all the nations, for he is concerned about us. Let us glorify him through the King of glory, through the Lord of power. For he was gracious towards the nations, and he receives our sacrifices more gratefully than yours.\(^59\)

Here we have to do unambiguously with gentiles (τὰ ἔθνη). The horatory subjunctive is used in both these passages as indicating the direct audience of the passage—Gentiles. The question is, however, whether these references signify pagan Gentiles, and not rather Christian Gentiles.

Basing their argument on an article by D. Gill,\(^60\) Cosgrove and Stylianopoulos point out that although the horatory δοξάσωμεν of 29.1 appears to include Trypho and his companions, the passage closes with a contrasting our/your motif which makes this unlikely. Further, the probability that these are Christian Gentiles here is further demonstrated by the wider use of the term ἔθνη in the Dialogue.\(^61\) If this is the case, then the call of Dial. 29.1 is not to conversion, but to worship.\(^62\)

\(^59\) Dial. 29.1. δοξάσωμεν τῶν θεῶν, ὡμα τὰ ἔθνη συνελόντα, ἵνα καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐπεσκέψατο· δοξάσωμεν αὐτοῦ διὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῆς δόξης, διὰ τοῦ κυρίου τῶν δινάμεων. εὐδόκησε γὰρ καὶ εἰς τὰ ἔθνη, καὶ τὰς θυσίας ἥσουν παρ’ ἡμῶν λαμβάνειν.


\(^61\) Justin uses the term ἔθνη in the Dialogue primarily as a designation for Christians. The term is Septuagintal language derived from prophetic texts which Justin quotes as predictions of the true Israel, the church, now fulfilled (Dial. 11.3-5; 24.4; 26.2-4; 28.5; 30.2-3; 118-141). Justin can use the same term to designate unbelieving pagans in general (Dial. 10.3; 17.1; 21.1) but in each case the fact that they are unbelievers is made clear. See Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 179-180.

\(^62\) The idea that this is a call to worship is furthered by Gill ("A Liturgical Fragment in Justin, Dialogue 29.1") who believes 29.1 to be a liturgical fragment inserted into the Dialogue at this point by Justin. Stylianopoulos (Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 177-178), based on Gill's assertion, sees no reason why the same cannot be said for 24.3.

\(^63\) Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 178-179. True Israel is treated in concentration in Dial. 119-125 and 130-141. The theme is also present throughout the Dialogue breaking in at many points of the discussion (Dial. 11.4-5; 32.5; 39.1-5; 43.2).

\(^64\) ὀντὸς αἵμα τῆς περιτομῆς
have believed in “the blood of salvation.” The “righteous nation” and the “faith-
keeping people” of 24.2 are the Gentiles who, unlike Israel, have already responded
to God’s call. The theme of true and false Israel is actually the subject of the larger
context of both of these passage. This corroborates the probability that references
to ἐθνη in 24.3 and 29.1 are to Christian Gentiles, not pagans.

3. Dial. 32.5

But all this I said to you in digression, in order that you may now be
convinced of that which has been prescribed against you by God, that you are
foolish sons...Stop leading yourselves astray, and those hearing you, and
learning from us, the ones having been made wise (enlightened) by the grace
of Christ.

The important reference here is Justin’s appeal for Trypho and his companions
to stop leading themselves astray, as well as the ones hearing them. So, the question
is, who are the ones hearing the Jews and consequently being lead astray by them.

Zahn’s conclusion that they are, like Trypho’s friends, students of Jewish teachers has
been adequately dismissed above. But this does not dismiss the possibility that they
are pagans. This possibility is in fact confirmed upon a closer examination of the
passage. There appears to be three distinct groups here. Justin includes himself in “the
ones having been enlightened by the grace of Christ,” which must be a reference to
Christians. The Jews are set off from the Christians as “yourselves” (καὶ ἐαυτοὺς),
while the other group is set off from these as the ones being lead astray by the Jews
(καὶ τοὺς ὑμῶν ἄκουοντας πλανῶντες). The only option, therefore, is that they are,
in fact, pagans.

65 άματι σωτηριώ
66 ἔθνος δίκαιον καὶ λαός φυλάσσων πίστιν
67 Dial. 24-26 and 28-30.
68 Dial. 32.5. καὶ ταῦτα δὲ πάντα ἃ ἔλεγον ἐν παρεκκλησίᾳ λέγω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ὡς ἥδη ποτὲ
πειθότες τῷ εἰρημένῳ καὶ ὑμῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ, διʼ τούτοις ἀκούοντας πλανῶντες, καὶ παρʼ ὑμῶν μαθήματες τῶν σοφιαθέντων ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ Χριστοῦ χάριτος.
69 See above, p.282.
Given the fact that pagans are in view here, does this argue for a pagan destination? The probability for this is low. This is most likely a remark made in passing by Justin. The isolated remark is quite lost in the entire Dialogue, and arguing that this rather insignificant remark is indicative of the audience as a whole violates Justin’s straight-forwardness and boldness in the work. In other words, a writer with Justin’s passion and candor is not likely to leave matters of important concern merely in the background. Thus, Dial. 32.5 simply contains an indirect and allusive reference to pagans who are receptive to Judaism but cannot be considered the addressees of the Dialogue.

4. Dialogue 64.2

and in fact, I do the same to all men of every nation, who wish to examine along with me, or make inquiry at me, regarding this subject.

Harnack’s claim that this passage implies a pagan readership is easily overcome. It is quite obvious that Justin is simply indicating that, despite Trypho’s belligerence, he will continue his explanation—just as he would for any other person. He is not addressing Gentiles here, he is simply indicating his willingness to engage any person in conversation about the Christian faith, the passage does not disclose the addressees of the Dialogue.

5. Dialogue 119.4

Wherefore, we are not a contemptible people, nor a tribe of barbarians, nor just any nation as the Carians or the Phrygians, but the chosen people of God who appeared to those who did not seek him. “Behold,” He said, “I am God to a nation that has not called upon my name.” For, this is really the nation promised to Abraham by God, when he told him that he would make him a father of many nations.

---

70 See Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 183, footnote #45.
71 Dial. 64.2. Καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ πρὸς πᾶντας ἄπλος τοὺς ἐκ παντὸς γένους αὐθαίρετος, συγχρόνως ἡ πνευματικὰς ὑπενθύμισαν μου περὶ τούτων μαθημάτων πρακτικῶν.
72 Dial. 119.4. Οὐκὼν οὐκ εὐκαταφρονώς δῆμος ἐγείρει οὐδὲ βαβυλόνιος φίλον οὐδὲ ὅποια καράων ἢ φρονεῖν θέτει, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐξέλεξα τὸ θεὸς καὶ ἐνεχώρησεν προς τὰς μὴ ἐπεριστασάτοις αὐτῶν. Ἡτοίμας θεὸς εἰμι, φησί, τῷ ἔθνεσι, οἱ οὐκ ἐπεκαλέσαντο τὸ δυσμά μου. τούτῳ γὰρ ἄστιν ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἔθνος, ὃ πάλιν τῷ Ἄβρααμ ὁ θεὸς ὑπέσχετο, καὶ πατέρα πολλῶν ἐθνῶν θάσεων
Harnack's contention that Justin has pagans in view here is contradicted by two things. First, it is clear that Justin identifies himself with the group here in view. Thus leading us to believe that he has Christians in mind. Second, this is confirmed by the preceding context of the passage. Justin, in Dial. 119.3 has already identified ημείς as those who are already God's people ("But we are not only a people, but a holy people"). Therefore, the references in 119.4 to personal pronouns in the first person plural are further explanation of the initial ημείς of 119.3.

From the foregoing it must be concluded that arguments for pagan addressees of the Dialogue with Trypho based on the above passages are unconvincing.

E. The Literary Form of the Dialogue

This point argues that the literary form of the Dialogue, which is neither Jewish nor Christian, but pagan and Greek, implies that this document has been written for cultured pagan readers. But several things argue strongly against such a conclusion. This point is fundamentally flawed in that it identifies the question of cultural setting with that of the addressees. The mistake here is that a literary feature indicating cultural milieu of the Dialogue also indicates the actual addressees of the Dialogue. But, as Styianopoulos explains, "...just as a Christian or a Jew living in the Graeco-Roman world, as well as a pagan, can be expected to share the philosophical concerns of the age, so also a Christian or a Jew, as well as a pagan, can equally be expected to find the literary form of the dialogue attractive." We must not forget that Justin himself wrote the Dialogue as a Christian. Further, the Jews had already

73 Styianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 191.
74 Styianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 191.
adopted Greek literary forms prior to Justin’s *Dialogue*, and Christians employed such forms as is evidenced in the Greek epistolary style of NT letters.\(^{73}\)

The above five arguments may be considered the classical arguments for a pagan readership of the *Dialogue with Trypho*. But these arguments appear to be decisively controverted by the evidence presented above. In addition to the above five points J. Nilson has provided three others that demand consideration if we are to properly dismiss the pagan readership hypothesis.\(^{76}\)

**F. Other Arguments for a Pagan Readership**

1. **Misconceptions About Christianity**

Nilson notes five times in the *Dialogue* where Justin complains about the Jews spreading misconceptions about Christianity.\(^{77}\) Justin accuses the Jews of disseminating their slanders “into all the earth”,\(^{78}\) and not only among the Jews. In other words, the Gentiles are hearing these misconceptions and are being deceived by them. Nilson believes that this points to a widespread proselytization effort of the part of the Jews. He suggests that it would be very unlikely that Christians would allow this type of thing to continue without some sort of challenge. Thus, he posits the *Dialogue* as Justin’s attempt, in the form of a dialogue with a Jew, to correct these Gentile misunderstandings.

While it may be true that Christians in general desired to correct these Gentile misconceptions about Christianity, it does not necessarily follow that the *Dialogue* is an attempt to do so. It is perfectly understandable that Justin makes these accusations against the Jews in a document that is addressed to Jews. In fact, this would be a more

---


\(^{76}\) Nilson, “To Whom is Justin’s *Dialogue with Trypho* Addressed?” 542-546.

\(^{77}\) *Dia* 17; 32; 93; 108; 117.

\(^{78}\) *Dia* 17.1. εἰς τᾶς τὴν γῆν
likely explanation. Here Justin is simply voicing his objections that the Jews are spreading these misconceptions about Christianity. He is confronting the Jews on a point of order.

2. The Theme of Forgiveness

Nilson also believes that the theme of forgiveness in the Dialogue is something that should not be taken lightly when considering its audience. The admission of one of Trypho’s companions in Dial. 94 concerning the correct interpretation of the brazen serpent is key here. The significance of this admission is relative to the meaning of the serpent as it is given by Justin. The serpent was a foreshadowing of forgiveness of sins through Jesus who died on the cross. Nilson appeals to J. Parkes79 who claims that it was exactly this lack of a doctrine of forgiveness of sins that put Judaism at a disadvantage vis-à-vis Christianity in appealing to Gentile converts. Therefore, in the context of a proselytization effort by both Christianity and Judaism, Justin was showing to pagans that even the Jews admit their lack of a doctrine of forgiveness.

The problem here is that Christians would employ the same argument in appeals to Jews. The foundational theme in presenting Christianity’s supremacy over Judaism is the fact that the old covenant has been surpassed by the new covenant because the old covenant could not supply forgiveness of sins. To assume that pagans were in view because of this theme and not Jews relegates the universality of the new covenant. Certainly this argument alone does not necessarily rule out pagan addressees,80 but neither does it argue against a Jewish audience. In fact, one would be more inclined to see this as more indicative of a Jewish audience in view of the

80 The combined force of the arguments presented above and below, however, do.
fact that the Jews were conscious of their sinful standing before God and their need for forgiveness.

3. Historical Context of the Dialogue

Nilson also claims that while the Dialogue is showing the superiority of Christianity over Judaism, it also formulating a response to a common pagan objection to Christianity, that is, that it was a religion without roots in antiquity that would commend it to Gentiles. Justin is thus doing in the Dialogue what he had done already in the First Apology. He is showing the antiquity of Christianity by appropriating for it the antiquity of Judaism.

The problems with this line of argument are similar to the problems with the theme of forgiveness argument—it does not necessarily argue for a pagan readership. It would make perfect sense, in a dialogue with a Jew, for Justin to argue the connection of Christianity with Judaism. Throughout the Dialogue Justin maintains his respect and historical connection with Judaism through his dependence on the Prophets. He desires to maintain this link with Judaism as the common ground upon which he may pursue the discussion. If Justin was aiming this line of argument at the pagans then why would he make a point, at the outset of his discussion with Trypho, of maintaining that the Jews and Christians worship the same God? The whole point here is that this is the foundation upon which Justin’s argument for the superiority of Christianity over Judaism progresses. Therefore, the Jews are not expected to forsake the God of their fathers, but only to recognize the difference between the old and new covenants.

---

81 Dial. 11.
4. Tertullian’s Adversus Judaeos

A final argument presented by Nilson is based on what he calls the scholarly consensus that the Dialogue with Trypho was a source for Tertullian’s Adversus Judaeos.82 Tertullian’s work is a reconstruction of a dispute between a Christian and a Jewish proselyte, whom Tertullian describes as “a man from the Gentiles and not from the race of the Jews of Israel.”83 The intended audience of Tertullian’s treatise was not the Jewish community at Carthage but sympathetic pagans who might be confronted and confused by missionaries from both religions. Nilson thus reasons, in light of Tertullian’s audience, a document which had been composed earlier for a similar audience for a similar purpose would naturally commend itself to him as a source.

Cosgrove points out the problem here of the disputability of Nilson’s first two “ifs”.84 But even if these two “ifs” may be granted, it only allows for the possibility that this may have been addressed to pagans, not a probability. Could Tertullian not have made use of any sources which he found helpful, regardless of their original purposes? Just because one document uses another as a source, does not mean that they both had the same target audience in mind.

Based on the examination and criticisms above of the arguments for a pagan address of the Dialogue the hypothesis must be rejected. This leaves us to the task of offering a better hypothesis. The two obvious choices, therefore, are a Christian audience,85 or a Jewish audience.86

83 Tertullian, Adversus Judaeos 1.2. homo ex gentibus nec de prosapia Israelitum Judaeus
84 The first “if” is if Tertullian did rely on Justin’s work. The second “if” is if Justin’s Dialogue is aimed at pagans who are confused between missionaries from both religions. See Cosgrove, “Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon,” 215.
85 Cosgrove, “Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon”.
II. Christian Destination

Cosgrove also concludes that a pagan destination for the Dialogue is uncompelling. In its place he offers 3 main reasons why he would offer an exclusively Christian destination. Because these arguments are best understood and criticized as a whole I will delineate all three and then offer criticisms.

A. The Address to Gentiles in Dialogue 24.3 and 29.1

It was understood above that these two passages are undoubtedly references to Gentiles. Cosgrove believes that because these verses suggest the necessity of positing at least a partly Christian audience, the Jewish hypothesis is obviated by the fact that the Dialogue's preoccupation with issues of the Jewish/Christian debate is adequately explained by an exclusive Christian audience.

B. The Liturgical Styling of Dialogue 24.3 and 29.1

Again, using the same passages as above, Cosgrove argues that because Dialogue 24.3 and 29.1 are liturgical fragments inserted by Justin that this would make it very awkward for Jewish readers.

C. Justin's Portrayal of Jews

Here Cosgrove argues that Justin portrays Trypho and Jews in general in such a derogatory way that it is difficult to conceive of his Dialogue as an evangelistic

---

66 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law. It should be noted that Cosgrove correctly points out that Stylianopoulos's position is that the Dialogue is addressed to Christians and Jews. But this is maintained by Stylianopoulos because he believes that any document written within the Christian community, no matter who the addressees were, would naturally commend itself to other Christians (p. 32).


88 See above, pp. 283-286.

89 Cosgrove, "Justin Martyr and the Emerging Christian Canon," 217.

90 See Gill, "A Liturgical Fragment in Justin Martyr," 98-100; Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 184.

appeal to Jews. At points Trypho and his companions are cast in an extremely unfavorable light. 92

D. Criticism's of Cosgrove's Position

There is no difficulty with positing an address to Christians in Dialogue 24.3 and 29.1. However, Cosgrove makes quite a leap from these two references to Christians to his claim that they virtually rule out a Jewish audience. The inconsistency in this argument is immediately seen when one examines the references to a Jewish audience. 93 Cosgrove bases his argument here on a number of points that makes an exclusively Christian audience the "least problematic." 94 But Stylianopoulos has, in a similar vein, argued that a combined Jewish/Christian audience can also be described as "least problematic." 95 Stylianopoulos delineates items of specifically Jewish concern in the Dialogue. In this light, Cosgrove's contention that the Jewish hypothesis is obviated by its preoccupation with issues of the Jewish/Christian debate being adequately explained by an exclusive Christian audience is called into question.

Cosgrove's contention that the insertion of the liturgical fragments at Dial. 24.3 and 29.1 would make it awkward for Jewish readers is not a very strong evidence for an exclusively Christian audience. The simple insertion here of a liturgical fragment does not necessarily rule out a Jewish audience for the entire work. In fact, the insertion of these calls to Christian worship do fit in with the actual context of an appeal to Jews.

Dial. 24 follows directly after a lengthy presentation by Justin concerning the inadequacy of the Mosaic Law. 96 Therein Justin speaks of the true meaning of the

---

92 Dial. 14.2; 134.2; 30.2.
93 See e.g., Dial. 9.1; 11.1; 16.4; 17.1; 19.2; 21; 22; etc.
95 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 32-44. Stylianopoulos's arguments will be presented below.
96 Dial. 11-23.
precepts that the Jews were to follow. Thus, the rite circumcision was necessary only for the Jews, to mark them off. But since circumcision was not necessary for salvation, the Jews are in need of the true Christian circumcision. In the same manner, sacrifices to God were instituted so that this weak people (the Jews) would not fall into idolatry, and the sabbaths so that they would remember God.

A similar line of argument is followed by Justin in *Dial. 20-23* with regard to dietary laws, the Sabbath, sacrifices and oblations. Justin’s reason for the lengthy discussion on these Jewish rites is summed up in *Dial. 23* where he states, “Therefore, we must conclude that God, who is immutable, ordered these and similar things to be done only because of sinful men...” This emphasizes Justin’s point that they have no salvific value but are only instituted temporarily.

*Dial. 24* follows directly after this lengthy argument, and is indeed dependent on it. As confirmation of this, Justin clearly states what he means, “this blood of circumcision has been rendered useless, and we have now come to trust in the blood of salvation, [there is] now another covenant, and another law has come out of Zion.” Here circumcision is presented as representing the entire discussion on the Jewish rites which preceded. The thrust is upon the old covenant being made obsolete by a new covenant. Thus, the circumcision of Christ is to preferred over the circumcision of Moses, and those who receive this circumcision will become a righteous nation. Here is where the liturgical fragment is inserted. It is most

---

97 *Dial. 19.2.*
98 *Dial. 19.3.*
99 *Dial. 19.6.*
100 *Dial. 23.2.* &i αιτίαν δὲ τὴν τῶν ἁμαρτωλῶν ἀνθρώπων τῶν αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐντετάλεια ὁμολογεῖν
101 *Dial. 23.2.* &i αἰτίαν δὲ τὴν τῶν ἁμαρτωλῶν ἀνθρώπων τῶν αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐντετάλεια ὁμολογεῖν
102 *Dial. 24.2.* The allusion here to Christians being the true Israel cannot be missed.
certainly a call for those who have received the circumcision of Christ to worship. And in the context it fits perfectly with Justin’s line of argument.

Rather than appearing here as an awkward insertion, I would argue that Justin is simply showing here that true worship of God is only possible by those who have made the realization that the old Law is abolished. The call to worship is made to those who can truly worship God. In light of the preceeding context Justin is assuming that they would understand this. There is no awkwardness here for a Jewish readership. Justin cannot call Jews to true worship. So, in calling Christians to true worship he is building on the previous discussion that only they, and not the Jews, can worship. It is an appeal that must be understood in its context. The call to worship in Dial. 29.1 is made on the same grounds.

Cosgrove also argues for an exclusively Christian audience on the basis of his belief that the Jews are presented in an extremely unfavorable light. But this argument cannot explain passages where Justin is especially conciliatory. Certainly there are passages where Justin is especially harsh with Trypho and his friends. But the Dialogue is not totally defined by polemics against the Jews. As Stylianopoulos points out, when compared with the ancient literature of Adversus Judaeos from Barnabas to Chrysostom’s homilies against the Jews, the amazing thing about Justin’s Dialogue is its distinct effort to be conciliatory, not its uncompromising spirit. In this regard, it is quite significant that the Dialogue does not conclude with the conversion of Trypho and his companions. This state of affairs does not result in

---

104 Dial. 14.2; 134.2; 30.2.
105 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 35.
106 See e.g., the many occasions where Justin refers to Trypho and his companions as “friends” (Dial. 8.4; 10.1; 68.2; 72.1; 85.7; 142.1). Justin even addresses them as “brothers” (58.3; 137.1). Justin also wishes to sustain the dialogue even when Trypho, at times, seems to tax Justin’s patience by reclaiming points already conceded (67.7, 11; cf. 38.2; 44.1; 64.2). Further, in 79.2, when Trypho is ready to break off the discussion, Justin accommodates to his anger.
denunciation by a “cascade of polemics”\textsuperscript{107} against Trypho. The door is left open.

When this is considered in light of Tertullian’s \textit{Adversus Judaeos}, which was written for Christians as a sort of handbook to refute the Jews, the conciliatory tone of the \textit{Dialogue} suggests that the author is writing not only for the benefit of those who are on his side, the Christians, but also for those to whom he ostensibly appeals to, the Jews.\textsuperscript{108}

### III. Other Arguments for a Jewish Audience

With the pagan destination well refuted and Cosgrove’s confident assertion of an exclusively Christian audience cast in doubt we now examine the final reasons for asserting a Jewish/Christian audience.

#### A. Jewish-Christian Polemics

The shared respect by both Trypho and Justin of the OT scriptures has an important corollary. The very existence of \textit{Adversus Judaeos} literature, combined with the fact that the adversary in such works was sketched as a Jew implies that Christians were bothered by Jewish questions and that the Jewish community was not totally indifferent to the Jewish-Christian debate.

With respect to Justin’s \textit{Dialogue}, two reasons make this argument stronger.\textsuperscript{109} First, Justin shows a remarkable acquaintance with post-biblical Judaism. It has been shown by W. Shotwell that Justin uses post-biblical haggadic material not simply in order to refute it but also incorporated it into his own argument much like a rabbinic teacher would.\textsuperscript{110} Of itself, this fact does not necessarily imply that Justin wrote the \textit{Dialogue} for the Jews. But it does show Justin’s unusual proximity to the faith which he as an apologist attempts to refute, as well as indicating a genuine interest at a real

\textsuperscript{107} Stylianopoulos, \textit{Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law}, 35.
\textsuperscript{108} Stylianopoulos, \textit{Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law}, 36.
\textsuperscript{110} W. A. Shotwell, \textit{The Biblical Exegesis of Justin Martyr} (London: SPCK, 1965) 88-89.
discussion with his opponents. Again, it may be reiterated that the amazing thing here is not the polemics against the Jews, but the effort to walk on as much of the opponents ground as Justin seems to do.

Second, Justin is a strong testimony to a variegated Jewish Christian community in his time, and he hints that successful missionary activity was occurring between Christians and Jews, and between Jewish Christians and Gentile Christians. The setting of the *Dialogue* is a proselytic encounter between a Christian and a Jew. Not only does Justin call for Trypho’s conversion throughout the *Dialogue*, but Trypho also shows interest in Justin converting to Judaism. Justin is aware of Jewish and Jewish Christian attempts to convince Gentile Christians to observe the Mosaic Law. In this respect he seems to assume that some of these attempts were successful. So, in Justin’s time, there are traces of actual proselytizing activity not only between Jews and Christians, but also between Jewish Christians and Gentile Christians. The setting of the *Dialogue* as a literary genre seems to presuppose a concrete situation, where this proselytizing was occurring. If this was the case, it may be possible that the *Dialogue with Trypho* was Justin’s contribution to this mission field, i.e., as a writing addressed to Jews, as well as to Christians.

Stylianopoulos has pointed out that *Dial. 47* would find interest among a variety of Jews and Christians: (1) Jews who were receptive to the Christian faith; (2) Christians who wanted to defend their rejection of the Mosaic Law; (3) Gentile Christians who doubted the legitimacy of rejecting the Mosaic Law; (4) Jewish

---

111 *Dial. 47.2ff.*
112 *Dial. 8.2, 4.*
113 *Dial. 8.4; 47.1.*
114 *Dial. 47.1-3.*
115 *Dial. 47.4.*
116 Stylianopoulos, *Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law*, 38, footnote #73.
Christians who lived within the Gentile church but still practiced the Law; (5) Jewish Christians who lived apart from the gentile church and tried to induce Gentile Christians to observe the Mosaic Law.

B. Eschatological Remnant of Jews

Perhaps the strongest evidence for a Jewish audience is Justin’s conviction that a remnant of the Jews, according to God’s plan, remains yet to be saved.\textsuperscript{117} According to Stylianopoulos, even though this receives explicit formulation several times in the Dialogue, it has gone largely unnoticed but explains both Justin’s persistence in trying to convert Trypho as well as his hope of success in such efforts.

The significant passages in this respect are Dial. 32.2; 55.3; 64.2-3.

1. Dial. 32.2

But now I am bringing all my proofs by all the words that I adduce from the passages of scripture, which are held by you to be holy and to belong to the prophets, because I hope that some of you can be found to belong to [the seed] which, according to the grace given by the Lord of Sabaoth is left over unto eternal salvation.\textsuperscript{118}

Here there are two very important indications regarding the purpose and intent of the Dialogue. Justin indicates here that the purpose of the Dialogue is to demonstrate the truth of Christian claims using the same scripture which the Jews accept. The intent is likewise to convince some of the Jews of the truth of these claims. Justin’s repeated calls for Trypho’s conversion is explicitly based on the idea of the remnant as is Justin’s application of this theme to the Jews of his time.

According to Justin, not all Jews will accept the Christian interpretation of scripture, but only those Jews who according to God’s plan included in the eschatological remnant.

\textsuperscript{117} Stylianopoulos, \textit{Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law}, 39-44.

\textsuperscript{118} \textit{Dial. 32.2}, νῦν δὲ διὰ πάντων τῶν λόγων ἀπὸ τῶν παρ᾽ ἡμῖν ἄγιων καὶ προφητικῶν γραφῶν τὰς πάσας ἀποδείξεις ποιοῦμαι ἐλπίζων τινὰ ἐξ ἡμῶν δίκαιος εὐχεθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ κύρου Σαβαώθ περιεισβέντος εἰς τὴν αἰώνιον σωτηρίαν.
2. Dial. 55.3

God, because of your iniquity, hid from you the ability to perceive the wisdom that there is in his words, with the exception of them who, after the grace of his abundant kindness, “He left,” as Isaiah said, “a seed” for salvation, in order that your race should not perish completely, like the men of Sodom and Gomorrah.\(^\text{119}\)

Here, after explaining that God has hidden the true meaning of scripture from the Jews because of their iniquity, Justin explains that a small number of Jews will be given understanding through God’s grace. This is based on the Prophet Isaiah’s promise that of an eschatological remnant from Judaism will remain so that Israel may not be totally lost.

3. Dial. 64.2-3

Trypho, if I were fond of strife and superficial like you, I should not continue to join in this discussion with you... But now, since I fear the judgment of God, I am in no hurry to express my opinion about any one of your race, whether he is not of those who can be saved in accordance with the grace of the Lord of Sabaoth. Therefore even though you act maliciously, I will continue answering... That therefore they from your race who are saved by this man, and are in his portion, you would, if you had paid attention to the passages from the scriptures which I have cited, have already understood.\(^\text{120}\)

This passage virtually summarizes Justin’s intentions in the Dialogue. First, Justin is convinced that the scriptures proclaim salvation through Jesus alone, even for Jews. Second, Justin believes he is in no position to judge who is and who is not to be included in the eschatological remnant. Thus, Trypho and his companions, or any other Jew for that matter, may still be converted according to God’s plan for the

\(^{119}\) Dial. 55.3. ἐὰν τὴν ὕμετέραν κακίαν ἀπέκρυψεν ὁ θεὸς ἀφ’ ὑμῶν τὸ δύνασθαι νοεῖν τὴν σοφίαν τὴν ἐν τοῖς λόγοις αὐτοῦ, πλὴρη τιμων, ὅταν κατὰ χάριν τὴς παλαιστράγης αὐτοῦ, ὡς ἔφη Ἰσαάκ, ἐγκατέλειπε σπέρμα εἰς σωτηρίαν, ἵνα μὴ ὡς ζωδιαίτων καὶ Γομορραίων τέλεον καὶ τὸ ὕμετερον γένος ἀπόληται.

\(^{120}\) Dial. 64.2-3. Ἡ Τρύφω, εἰ ἄμοιος ὑμῖν φιλόστοσος καὶ κενὸς ὑπήρχον, οὐκ ἂν ἦτο προσέλεμεν κοινοῖς ὑμῶν τῶν λόγων... νῦν δὲ, ἐπεὶ κρίσιν θεοῦ δέδοικα, οὐ φάνοις ἀποφαίνεσθαι περὶ οὐδενὸς τῶν ἀπὸ κυρίου Σαβαώθ σωθῆναι δυναμένων. διὸ κἂν ἢμεῖς πονηρεύσατε, προσέλεμεν... ἀποκρυμένους... τῆς σωτηρίας τοῦ ὕμετερου διὰ τοῦτο σώζεται καὶ ἐν τῇ τούτῳ μερίδι εἰς τοῖς προσελεγμένοις ὑπ’ ἐμῶν ἀπὸ τῶν γραφῶν εἰ προσεχθήκετε, ἐνενοήκετε ἢν ἦν.
eschatological remnant. Third, the zeal and patience of Justin is according to the same conviction concerning the remnant.

Justin's seriousness concerning the matter of the eschatological remnant cannot be doubted. He makes several references to his responsibility to communicate the truth and to the fact that he will be accountable for it in the day of judgement. 121 Indeed, as Stylianopoulos claims, 122 the Dialogue may have been written by Justin as an expression of his conviction about the eschatological remnant and his desire to do his part for the rescue of the remnant according to God's will.

IV. Conclusion

The conclusion concerning the intended audience of the Dialogue with Trypho should be clear from the preceding discussion. The arguments for a pagan audience have been well-criticized and refuted. Cosgrove's assertion of an exclusively Christian audience is plausible on the face of it, but his contention that it is least problematic fails to convince—especially in light of Stylianopoulos's important contributions concerning the non-polemic tone of the Dialogue and the eschatological remnant.

In this light, I agree with Stylianopoulos's hypothesis that the Dialogue was written for a Jewish audience in the context of missionary activity between Jews and Christians. But because the Dialogue was written within the Christian community it would naturally commend itself to a Christian audience. Justin, realizing this, may have had Jewish Christians as well as Gentile Christians in mind. It has been shown that the Dialogue answers issues that would be a concern to each of these groups. Therefore, even though the Dialogue has primarily a Jewish audience in mind, a combined Jewish/Christian audience can reasonably be posited.

121 Dial. 38.2; 44.1; 68.1.
122 Stylianopoulos, Justin Martyr and the Mosaic Law, 44.
I. Greek Text

II. English Translations


III. Secondary Sources


Bishop, E.F.F., "Some Reflections on Justin Martyr and the Nativity
Bibliography


Bokser, B.Z., "Justin Martyr and the Jews," *JQR 64* (1973-74) 97-122; 204-211.


Credner, C.A., Beiträge zur Einleitung in die biblischen Schriften. Halle, 1832.


Dölger, F.J., Sphragis. Eine altchristliche Taufbezeichnung in ihren
Bibliography

Beziehungen zur profanen und religiösen Kultur des Altertums. Studien zur Geschichte und Kultur des Altertums; Paderborn: Druck und Verlag von Ferdinand Schöningh, 1911.


Bibliography


Bibliography


______, "Die Altercatio Simonis Judaei et Thophili Christiani nebst Untersuchungen über die antijüdische Polemik in der alten Kirche," TU 1; Leipzig, 1883.


Henrichs, A., "Philosophy, the Handmaiden of Theology," *Greek, Roman and Byzantine Studies* 9 (1968) 437-450.
Bibliography


Hilgenfeld, A., Kristische Untersuchungen über die Evangelien Justin's, der Clementinischen Homilien und Marcion's. Halle, 1850.


Hulen, A.B., "The 'Dialogues with the Jews' as Sources for the Early Jewish Argument Against Christianity," JBL 51 (1932) 58-71.


_____., “The Date of the Apology of Justin Martyr,” *The Academy* 49 (1896) 98.


Lippelt, E., *Quae fuerint Justini Martyris APOMNHMONEUMATA quaque ratione cum forma Evangeliorum syro-latina cohacserint.* Halle, 1901.

Bibliography


Nilson, J., "To Whom is Justin's Dialogue with Trypho Addressed?" *TS* 38 (1977) 538-546.


Norris, R.A., *God and World in Early Christian Theology: A Study in Justin*
Bibliography


Bibliography


——, *Justin der Märtyrer*. 2 Vols.; Breslau 1840-1842.


Bibliography


Tate, J., “On the History of Allegorism,” CQ 28 (1934) 105-114.

Tate, J., “Plato and Allegorical Interpretation,” CQ 23 (1929) 142-154; 24 (1930) 1-10.


Weiss, P.R., "Some Samaritanisms of Justin Martyr," *JTS* 45 (1944) 199-205.


Zahn, J.C., "Ist Ammon oder Tatian Verfasser der ins Lateinische, Altfrankische und Arabische übersetzten Evangelien-Harmonie? Und was hat Tatian bei seinem bekannten Diatessaron oder Diapente vor sich gahabt und


———, “Studien zu Justin III,” ZKG 8 (1885-1886) 56-61.